English Vocabulary in Use

pre-intermediate & intermediate

Stuart Redman

100 units of vocabulary reference and practice

self-study and classroom use

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

English Vocabulary in Use

pre-intermediate and intermediate

Stuart Redman

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge CB2 1RP, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, United Kingdom
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011–4211, USA
10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, Melbourne 3166, Australia

© Cambridge University Press 1997

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997
Third printing 1997

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 521 55737 2

Contents

Introduction 4

Learning

Examples

1 Learning and revising with this book
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook
3 Using a dictionary
4 English language words — uncountable noun, prefix, main stress
5 Problems with pronunciation — rough, through, island, necessary
6 Classroom language — board pen, swap places, rub sth. out

Word formation

7 Prefixes — un-, in-, dis-, im-, re-
8 Noun suffixes — -tion, -ity, -ness, -ment
9 Adjective suffixes — -ive, -y, -able, -ful, -less
10 Zero affixation — to stay / a stay; a look / to look
11 Compound nouns — alarm clock; credit card; baby-sitter
12 Compound adjectives — easy-going, good-looking, well-paid

Phrase building

13 Collocation (word partners) — a strong accent, miss the bus
14 Verb or adjective + preposition — listen (to), keen (on), good (at)
15 Preposition + noun — on holiday, by mistake, on TV
16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning — lie down, get over sth., take off
17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style — put on, get by, make sth. up
18 Idioms and fixed expressions — never mind, take a short cut, What's up?
19 Make, do, have, take — make progress, do homework, have a rest
20 Give, keep, break, catch, see — keep a record, break the law, catch a bus
21 Get: uses and expressions — get a job, get married, get up
22 Go: uses and expressions — go deaf, go for a drink, have a go
23 Apologies, excuses and thanks — sorry I'm late, I got held up, thanks a lot
24 Requests, invitations and suggestions — could you ...?, I'd love to, how about ...?
25 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing — what do you think of ...? personally, according to
26 Specific situations and special occasions — hi, good luck, nice to meet you, happy birthday

Parts of speech (special problems)

27 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns — information (U), trousers (*pl*)
28 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive — enjoy, can't stand, refuse
29 Verb patterns — verb + object, verb + 'that' clause
30 Adjectives — big vs. huge, boring vs. bored
31 Prepositions: place — on the table, next to the church
32 Adverbs: frequency and degree — hardly ever, quite, almost

Connecting and linking

33	Time and sequence	when, while, after, first of all, finally
34	Addition and contrast	in addition, although, in spite of
35	Similarities, differences and conditions	similar to, compared with/to, unless
36	Reason, purpose and result	as, so, because (of), as a result

Topics

The world around us

37	The physical world	oceans, mountains, deserts, hurricane
38	Weather	showers, cloudy, fog, pour with rain
39	Using the land	plants, agriculture, mining, gold
40	Animals and insects	lion, wild, spider, rabbit
41	Countries, nationalities and language	Sweden, Swiss, Arabic

People

42	The body and what it does	bend your knees, bite your nails
43	Describing people's appearance	tall and blond with broad shoulders
44	Describing character	shy, friendly, unpleasant
45	Human feelings and actions	pride, jealous (of), stare, whisper
46	Family and friends	niece, relatives, surname, best friend
47	Ages and stages	teenager, grow up, adult, pregnant

Daily life

48	Daily routines	get up, leave home, go to sleep
49	Homes and buildings	flat, on the ground floor, roof
50	Around the home 1	lounge, on the sofa, food mixer
51	Around the home 2	washbasin, tidy, hoover, polish
52	Everyday problems	it's not working, drop, break
53	Money	coins, borrow, I can't afford it
54	Health: illness and disease	flu, sore throat, sneezing
55	Health: injuries	twist my ankle, bleeding, bruise
56	Clothes	shirt, trousers, take off, get dressed
57	Shops and shopping	chemist, shop assistant, I'm being served
58	Food	carrot, peach, lamb
59	Cooking and restaurants	fry, salty, main course, book a table
60	Town and country	suburbs, noisy, fields
61	On the road	turn left, traffic lights, accident
62	Transport	coach, bus stop, platform, get off

Work

63	Work: duties, conditions and pay	What do you do?, salary, do overtime
64	Jobs	dentist, lawyer, plumber
65	The career ladder	be promoted, resign, unemployed
66	In the office and in the factory	show sb. around, assembly line, goods
67	Business and finance	turnover, make a profit, rise and fall
68	Sales and marketing	market share, competitors, image

Leisure and entertainment

69	Hobbies	photography, play cards, spare time
70	Sport 1: games, people and places	tennis court, racket, goal, referee
71	Sport 2: winning, losing and scoring	win, draw, latest score, half-time
72	Cinema and theatre	audience, actor, a thriller
73	Music, art and literature	orchestra, composer, painting, novelist

Communication and technology

74 Newspapers — journalist, headline, article
75 Television — programme, turn on, soap opera
76 On the phone — engaged, operator, Is that ...?
77 Computers — screen, software, save, data

Social concerns

78 Education: school — primary school, subject, term
79 Education: university — do a degree, do research, lecture
80 Law and order — court, trial, arrest, guilty
81 Crime — murder, commit a crime, steal
82 Politics — political party, democracy, elect
83 Bureaucracy — fill in a form, driving licence, signature
84 War and peace — peace talks, attack, terrorism, invade
85 Pollution and the environment — protect, destroy, recycle, waste

Tourism

86 Air travel — flight, take off, passport control
87 Hotels — bill, single room, book, in advance
88 A sightseeing holiday — guidebook, castle, souvenir, take photos
89 On the beach and in the country — sand, sunbathe, hiking, picnic

Notional concepts

90 Time — for ages, at, on , during, last, recently
91 Numbers — two and a half, divide, nought point six
92 Distance and dimension — is it far? a long way, deep, width
93 Shapes, colours and patterns — round, square, pattern, grey, greenish
94 Partitives — piece of cake, group of people
95 The senses — smells fresh, tastes like ..., see vs. watch

Varieties of English

96 Notices and warnings — mind your head, beware of pickpockets
97 Vague language — sort of ..., things, stuff
98 American English — sidewalk, vacation, elevator
99 Formal and informal English — purchase/buy, children/kids
100 Abbreviations and abbreviated words — MP, UN, VAT, phone, bike, fridge

Answer key 206

Phonetic symbols 246
Pronunciation problems 247
Index 248
Acknowledgements 266

Introduction

Who is this book for?

English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate and intermediate) has been written to help learners at this level to improve their English. It has been designed for students who are studying on their own, but it can also be used by a teacher in the classroom with groups of students.

How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. The left-hand page explains new words and expressions (most units contain approximately 25 new words or phrases), and the right-hand page gives you a chance to check your understanding through a series of exercises which practise the new vocabulary. In a very limited number of units e.g. Units 18 and 71, the right-hand page also includes a few new words and phrases which are not explained on the left-hand page.

There is an answer key at the back of the book. This not only gives *correct* answers to exercises with 'right' or 'wrong' solutions, but also *possible answers* and *sample answers* for exercises which do not have 'right' or 'wrong' solutions.

There is also an index at the back of the book. This lists all the new words and phrases introduced in the book and refers you to the unit or units where these words appear. The index also includes a phonemic transcription for many of the words, and on page 247 you are given special help with the pronunciation of approximately 200 words which present particular problems for many learners of English.

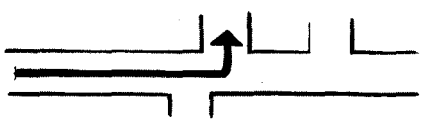
The left-hand page

This is the page that introduces the new vocabulary for each topic or area of language. First of all, the vocabulary is divided into a number of sections (A, B, C, etc.) with simple clear titles; and then within each section, new words are explained using a number of different techniques:

- A short definition. The definition follows directly after the word, or comes at the end of the phrase or sentence; it is in brackets and introduced by the symbol =.
  e.g. **unemployed** (= without a job); **feel like** (= want or desire *infml*)
  The abbreviations *fml* or *infml* tell you if a word is either 'formal' or 'informal'.
- A short explanation. This will be a complete sentence which often includes the new word, e.g. **effective**. (If something is **effective**, it works well and produces good results.)
- A synonym or opposite, e.g. **terrific** (= fantastic); **dirty** (≠ clean)
- In a situation. Some words are difficult to define and it is easier to see their meaning when they are put in context. The following is from a text about a motoring accident.
  e.g. 'The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured**, and both cars were **badly damaged**.'
- A picture or diagram. This seems the obvious way to explain a large number of concrete nouns and verbs.

e.g.

carrot



go along here and **turn left**.

For many of the new words there are also sentence examples which show the words in context in order to consolidate their meaning and illustrate any special syntactic features.

My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.
The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.
He **admitted** stealing the woman's money. (admit + -ing)
We were very busy but we **managed** to finish by 6 o'clock. (manage + inf.)

Finally, a big effort has been made to introduce new words alongside other words that often appear with them (this is called 'collocation').
e.g. miss the bus; a strong accent; the car broke down; it's vitally important; fasten your seat belt; go on holiday; give someone a hand; to a certain extent, a terrible pain, etc.

The right-hand page

This page contains the exercises to practise the new vocabulary presented on the left-hand page. In general the first exercise practises the form of some of the new words, and then there are further exercises which focus on the meaning. In most units there is at least one exercise which gives learners a chance to think about and practise new vocabulary in relation to their own lives, and/or a task which invites learners to do something with the vocabulary outside of the book (e.g. 11.4, 14.4, etc.). And in every unit, there is a range of exercise types to help maintain your interest.

Using the book

The first five units (or first six units if you go to an English class) teach you some important vocabulary, but they also help you with with useful ideas and techniques for vocabulary learning. Do these units first, and then work through the book studying the units which interest you.

Summary of abbreviations and symbols used in the book

n	noun
v	verb
adj	adjective
infml	informal word or expression
fml	formal word or expression
pl	word only used in the plural
(U)	uncountable word
(C)	countable word
≠	opposite
AmEng	American English word or expression

[NOT ~~I lost the bus~~] indicates that a word or expression is wrong

Learning and revising with this book

Look at Exercise 1 on the next page before you read this page.

A Establish a routine

A **routine** means doing certain things regularly in the same way. And if you are using this book for **self-study** (= to study alone), it helps to have a routine. Decide how much time you can spend on the book each day or each week. If you are studying a unit for the first time, try to give yourself **at least** (= a minimum of) half an hour or forty-five minutes; if you are **revising** (= looking through a unit a second or third time), five or ten minutes each time is very useful. So, plan longer periods for new units, and shorter periods for **revision**.

B Working through the book

Do different things to **maintain your interest**.(= keep your interest high). For example:

- Don't work through the units **in sequence** (= in the order they appear in the book): look through the units and choose ones that interest you.
- When you do a unit, you can:
  read the whole of the left-hand page, then do the exercises.
  read part of the left-hand page, then do one or two exercises.
  try the exercises first, then use the left-hand page when you have a problem.
- Be <u>active</u> when you are learning. For example:
  While you are reading the left-hand page, use a highlighter pen to mark new or interesting vocabulary.
  Practise saying the words **silently** in your head (= without a noise), and also **out loud** (= making a noise, so it is possible for others to hear), to see if you can pronounce them.
  Put new words in your own notebook using some of the ideas from Unit 2 to do it **effectively**. (If something is **effective**, it works well and produces good results.)

C Revision

It is common to learn a word one day, then find you cannot remember it a day later. If you revise regularly (just for short periods), it helps you to remember words and make them part of your 'active' vocabulary. Here are some ideas for revising with this book.

- Do exercises in pencil. Check your answers when you have finished, then **rub them out** (= remove them using a rubber/eraser). Later, come back and do the exercises again, and just use the left-hand page if you cannot remember something.
- When you read a left-hand page for a second time, have a piece of card with you. When you reach a new word in **bold** which has a definition/explanation after it in **brackets** ( ), cover the definition quickly and try to say what it is. Then uncover it to see if you were right.
- Revise for short periods but do it often. Five minutes a day is probably better than half an hour a week; but half an hour a week is probably better than two hours a month.
- As with learning, be <u>active</u> when you revise. Look for different ways to revise: test yourself, create games for yourself; **set goals/targets** (= decide on things you want to be able to do by a particular time); decide when to work on something, e.g. meaning on Sunday, pronunciation on Monday, etc.

Exercises

1.1 **Think about these questions. On the opposite page you will find some answers. Do you agree with them?**

1 Is it better to plan regular self-study, or is it better just to study when you think you've got some free time?
2 Do you think you should work through the units in the same order as they appear in the book?
3 Do you think it's a good idea to write down new words in a notebook while you are studying a unit?
4 Is it necessary to revise vocabulary?
5 Is it better to revise vocabulary occasionally for long periods of time, or is it better to revise regularly for short periods of time?

1.2 **Finding your way round the book.**

Turn to the Topic units in the Contents on pages 1–3. Take a blank piece of paper and cover the right-hand side of the page giving the examples. Now read down the list of unit titles. For each one, try to write down your own examples – one or two for each unit. Are there any unit titles you don't understand? Are there any units where you can't think of examples? If so, turn to that unit and find out what it is about.

You could use similar titles in your own vocabulary notebook. (See Unit 2)

1.3 ***True* or *False*? If the sentence is *false*, rewrite it to make it *true*. Write your answers in pencil.**

1 In this book, new words are often shown in **bold** print.
2 Definitions/explanations of new words are often in **brackets** after the word.
3 A **routine** means doing certain things in a different way each time.
4 If you **maintain** something at a level, it means you keep it at the same level.
5 If something, e.g. a way of learning, is **effective**, it doesn't work very well.
6 **At least** 50 people means a maximum of 50 people.
7 If you write something then **rub it out**, you remove it from the page.
8 If you do something **silently**, you do it without making a noise.
9 **Revision** means studying something for the first time.
10 If you have a **goal** or **target**, you have something you want to be able to do or achieve by a particular point in the future.

Now check your answers on the opposite page and look at any wrong answers carefully. Then rub out your answers and come back to this exercise again tomorrow or within the next two or three days. Find out how much you can remember.

1.4 **Planning your self-study.**

Now start making your own plans to use this book. Decide how much time you can spend each week, plan some longer periods to study units for the first time, but also some shorter periods for revision. The first five units will teach you some important vocabulary; give you ideas on keeping a notebook; and give you help with pronunciation. After that, continue with the units that interest you most.
Good luck.

2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook

A Organising your notebook

Give each page or double page a title, e.g. sport, education, phrasal verbs, etc. Then, as you learn new words, record each one on a suitable page. You could also have a general index in the back of your book, with a space for each letter Then, as you learn new words, you enter them alphabetically with the title of the topic in brackets.

B What do I need to record?

These things are important but you won't need to record all of them for every word.

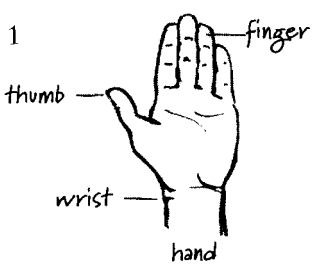
What?	*How?*	*Example*
Meaning	a translation	**lembrar** = to remember (Portuguese)
	b definition/explanation	A **pond** is an area of water smaller than a lake.
	c synonym or opposite	**awful** (= terrible); **ugly** (≠ beautiful)
	d picture	**saucepan**
	e example sentences	My hands were cold so I **put on** my **gloves**.
Pronunciation	phonetic symbols	**ache** /eɪk/
	or your own system	ache (like 'make')
Part of speech	(n), (v), (adj), etc.	gloves (n); remember (v); careful (adj), ache (n, v)
Grammar	make a note + example sentence	**enjoy** + -ing form; I enjoy going to parties. **weather** (U); We had lovely **weather** in Italy.
Common partners	phrase or sentence	**make** a **mistake**; **make** a **decision**; **make** a **mess**
Special style	make a note	purchase (*fml*); kids (*infml*)

Note: You won't learn everything about a word when you first record it, so always leave space in your notebook, then you can come back and add more information later.

C Organising words on the page

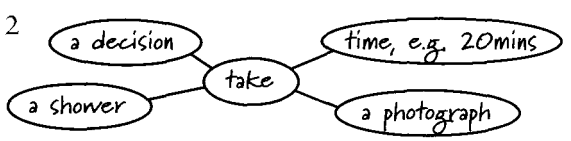
Certain words often appear together (common partners), so it is a good idea to record them together, and not just write lists of words on their own. You can do this in different ways:

1



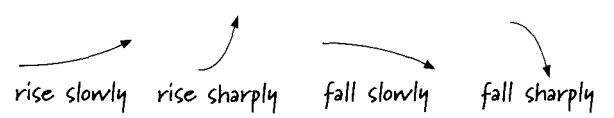
don't pronounce the 'w' in wrist or the 'b' in thumb

2



3 smile (v, n)
e.g. She smiled at me yesterday.
He gave me a big smile.
She's got a lovely smile.

4



Note both verbs are irregular: rise/rose/risen; fall/fell/fallen

Exercises

2.1 **Organise this list of words into three groups and give each one a title.**

tie put on fare blouse homeless train get on
painful scarf jumper jacket journey careful station
helpful jeans platform thoughtless ticket useless

Find the units in this book which may include these words and add more examples.

2.2 **Underline the correct answer or answers.**

1 A pond is:
a) bigger than a lake b) smaller than a lake c) the same size
2 I really enjoy:
a) play tennis b) to play tennis c) playing tennis
3 When we were on holiday we had:
a) lovely weathers b) lovely weather c) a lovely weather
4 The underlined letters in **ache** are pronounced the same as in:
a) machine b) catch c) chemist
5 She gave me a ..... smile.
a) strong b) big c) large
6 The past tense of **fall** is:
a) fell b) felt c) falled
7 You can **put on:**
a) gloves b) a decision c) shoes
8 **Rise sharply** means:

a) b) c)

2.3 **Look again at the list a–e in B. Which would be the best way(s) to record the meaning of each word in the list below? What other information would be useful to record with this word (e.g. pronunciation, part of speech, grammar, common partners, etc.)? Use a dictionary to help you.**

dream concentrate beard nearly
empty forget rescue knife

2.4 **Fill the gaps with common partners for these verbs, then start a page in your own notebook for more examples. Turn to Unit 19 to help you.**

take	a picture	make	a mistake
	.....		.....
	.....		.....
do	your homework	have	a rest
	.....		.....
	.....		.....

3 Using a dictionary

A What dictionaries do I need?

If possible, you should buy two dictionaries: a good bilingual dictionary and a good English–English dictionary. The bilingual dictionary is quicker and easier for you to understand; the English–English dictionary may give you more information about a word or phrase, and it is also a good idea for you to work in English as much as possible. Here are some current recommended English–English dictionaries:

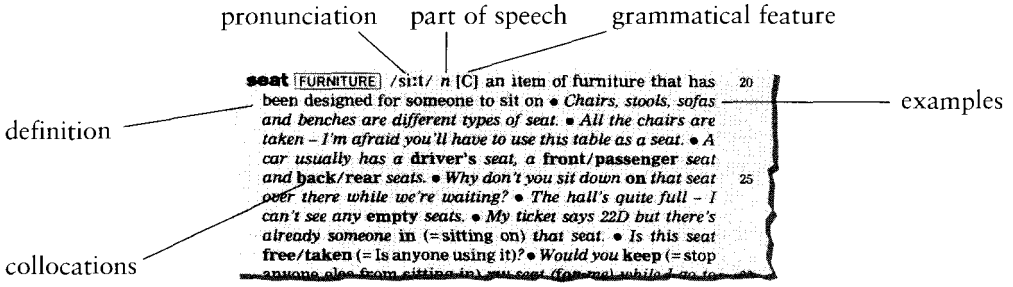
Large dictionaries
Cambridge International Dictionary of English
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
Collins COBUILD English Dictionary
Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary

Medium-sized dictionaries
Collins COBUILD Essential Dictionary
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
Longman Active Study Dictionary

B What information does a dictionary give me?

- the meaning, e.g. **homesick** = unhappy when you are away from home for a long time
- the pronunciation, e.g. **chaos** /keɪɒs/, **dreadful** /dredfʊl/, **island** /aɪlənd/
- the part of speech, e.g. **dirty** *adj* (= adjective), **lose** *v* (= verb), **law** *n* (= noun)
- any special grammatical features, e.g. **advice** (U) (= uncountable)
- common collocations (word partners), e.g. you **do homework** [NOT ~~you make homework~~]
- example phrases or sentences, e.g. It was such a big menu, I didn't know what to **choose**.
- opposites (where they exist), e.g. **polite** (≠ **impolite/rude**)

Note: In most English–English dictionaries for foreign learners, collocations are usually shown in **bold** or *italics*, or they are included in the examples given after the definition.


pronunciation
part of speech
grammatical feature
definition
collocations
examples
seat FURNITURE /siːt/ *n* [C] an item of furniture that has been designed for someone to sit on • *Chairs, stools, sofas and benches are different types of seat.* • *All the chairs are taken – I'm afraid you'll have to use this table as a seat.* • *A car usually has a* **driver's** *seat, a* **front/passenger** *seat and* **back/rear** *seats.* • *Why don't you sit down* **on** *that seat over there while we're waiting?* • *The hall's quite full – I can't see any* **empty** *seats.* • *My ticket says 22D but there's already someone* **in** (= sitting on) *that seat.* • *Is this seat* **free/taken** (= Is anyone using it)? • *Would you* **keep** (= stop

C How should I use my dictionary?

Here are some ideas to help you.

- When you look up a word, put a ✓ next to it. Each time you return to a page with a ✓ look at it quickly to check that you remember the word.
- If you see an English word in a text, first try to guess the meaning, and carry on reading to see if your guess seems correct. Use your dictionary to check the meaning.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get several different words in your own language, look up the word in your monolingual dictionary. This should help you to decide which word in your own language is the nearest translation in this context.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning, and the first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. Read through the different meanings.

Exercises

If you find these exercises difficult, it may mean that you need to practise using a dictionary more often, or you need to buy yourself a better dictionary.

3.1 **Use a dictionary to find/check the answers to these questions. (They are all based on words from the opposite page.)**

1 What does **dreadful** mean?
2 How do you pronounce **lose**? (Is it the same as 'choose' or 'chose'?)
3 What part of speech is **choose**?
4 What part of speech is **homesick**?
5 **Homework** and **chaos** are both nouns, but what type of noun are they?
6 What adjectives are often used before **chaos**? (Give two.)
7 What two prepositions are often used after **choose**?
8 Write down a sentence example of **choose** used with a preposition.

3.2 **When you look up a word, you can also use your dictionary to increase your vocabulary by learning related words and phrases. Find out if your dictionary helps you to answer these questions, also about words from the opposite page.**

1 **Choose** is a verb, but what is the noun with the same meaning?
2 **Advice** is a noun, but what is the verb with the same meaning?
3 **Advice** is also uncountable, but you can make it countable using another word. Can you complete this sentence: 'He gave me a very useful ..... of advice.'
4 What adjective is formed from **chaos**?
5 What is the opposite of **dirty**?
6 What is the difference between **homework** and **housework**?
7 What is the opposite of **lose a game**?
8 What is the opposite of **lose weight**?
9 **Law** often appears in the phrase **law and** ..... What is the missing word?
10 If you want to sit at a table in a cafe and you see that one person is sitting there already, but another **seat** is empty, what can you say to the person sitting down?

3.3 **In the word 'island' /aɪlənd/, the letter 's' is silent (= not pronounced). Use the pronunciation guide in your dictionary to find the silent letters in each of these words. (Do not include the letter 'e' at the end of a word.)**

knife bomb psychology receipt castle doubt wrist calm

Note: Students often ask if the letter 't' is pronounced in 'often'. Some people pronounce it, others don't. What does your dictionary say?

3.4 **Look at the entry for *suit* on the right, then match the definitions with the sentences on the left.**

1 I'm afraid black doesn't **suit** me – my hair is the wrong colour.
2 A: I'm not going, so don't ask me again.
B: OK. **Suit** yourself.
3 If we have the meeting this afternoon, would 2.30 **suit** you?

suit[2] *v* [T] **1** to be acceptable or CONVENIENT for a particular person or in a particular situation: *Finding a date that suits us all is very difficult.* | *Buy a database program to suit your needs.* | **suit sb (fine)** *spoken* (=be completely acceptable) *"Eight o'clock?" "That suits me fine."* | **suit sb down to the ground** (=be exactly right for someone) *Yup, this little car suits me down to the ground.* **2** [not in passive] to make someone look attractive: *That coat really suits Paul.* | *Red suits you.* —see FIT[1] (USAGE) **3 well/best/ideally suited** to have the right qualities to do something: *Dirk would be ideally suited to the job.* **4 suit yourself** *spoken* used to tell someone they can do whatever they want to, even though it annoys you: *"I don't really feel like going out after all." "Suit yourself."* **5 suit sb's book** *BrE informal* to fit well into someone's

4 English language words

A Parts of speech

nouns	e.g. chair, information, happiness
verbs	e.g. choose, tell, complain
adjectives	e.g. happy, tall, dangerous
adverbs	e.g. slowly, carefully, often
prepositions	e.g. in, at, on
pronouns	e.g. me, you, him, we, it, she
articles	e.g. definite article (the); indefinite article (a/an)

B Special terms

Uncountable noun: (U) a noun which has no plural form and cannot be used with the indefinite article, e.g. information. See Unit 27.

Plural noun: (*pl*) a noun which only has a plural form and cannot be used with the indefinite article, e.g. trousers. See Unit 27.

Infinitive: the base form of a verb, e.g. (to) work, (to) stop, (to) be.

Phrasal verb: a verb + adverb and/or preposition, e.g. turn on (verb + adverb), look after (verb + preposition), give up (verb + adverb), put up with (verb + adverb + preposition). See Units 16 and 17.

Idiom: a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, e.g. never mind, hang on, a short cut, keep an eye on something.

Transitive verb: a verb which needs a **direct object**, e.g. Police caught the man ('the man' is the direct object of the verb 'caught'). See Unit 17.

Intransitive verb: a verb which does not need a direct object, e.g. The books arrived on time. (There is no direct object after arrive.) See Unit 17.

C Word building

In the word *uncomfortable, un-* is a **prefix**, *comfort* is a **root**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include: *re-, in-*, and *dis-*; common suffixes include: *-ity, -ment*, and *-ive*. Many words also have **synonyms**, which are words with the same meaning. For example, 'big' is a synonym of 'large'. The **opposite** is 'small'.

D Pronunciation

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonetic symbols**, e.g. book /bʊk/, before /bɪ'fɔ:/, cinema /'sɪnəmə/, and so on.

Each word contains one or more **syllables**: 'book' has one syllable; 'before' has two syllables (be-fore); 'cinema' has three syllables (ci-ne-ma); 'education' has four syllables (e-du-ca-tion); and so on.

For pronunciation, it is important to know which syllable has the main **stress**. On 'before' it is the second syllable (be<u>fore</u>); on 'cinema' it is the first (<u>ci</u>nema); and on 'education' it is the third (edu<u>ca</u>tion).

Note: Dictionaries mark stress in different ways: in bold (re**turn**); or a ' before the main syllable (re'turn). Make sure you understand how your dictionary shows it.

E Punctuation

full stop . comma , brackets ( ) hyphen - question mark ?

Exercises

4.1 **There is one word missing in each line of this text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? And what type of word is it (noun, verb, etc.)? Look at the example first.**

Last year I went to for my holiday. I spent the first	Spain (noun)
week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and	.....
then I took a train to Barcelona where spent another	.....
ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous	.....
time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but	.....
I didn't mind spending a lot money because it is a	.....
wonderful and also very convenient. My brother was	.....
the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot	.....
and he stays anywhere else.	.....

4.2 **In the dialogue below, can you find at least one example of the following: an uncountable noun; a plural noun; a phrasal verb; an idiom?**

A: What's the time?
B: 8 o'clock, so we'd better get a move on if we're going to meet your sister at the airport.
A: That's alright. Her flight doesn't arrive until 8.30.
B: Yeah, but it'll take us an hour to get there – you know what the traffic is like.
A: OK. I'll just go and get changed.
B: What's wrong with those shorts?
A: I don't like driving in shorts. I'm going to put some jeans on.

4.3 **Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Which are transitive, which are intransitive?**

1 She broke her leg.
2 I got up at seven thirty.
3 We arrived late.
4 Take off your jacket.
5 She doesn't like Chinese food.
6 He told me to sit down.

4.4 **How many syllables are there in each of the words in the box?**

English	noun	informal	education
understand	adjective	decide	pronunciation
before	opposite	preposition	comfortable

Now mark the main stress on each of the above words.

4.5 **Look at these words, then answer the questions below.**

happy correct lucky sure possible

1 What part of speech are these words?
2 Change each one into an adverb.
3 Can you write down a synonym for at least three of the words?
4 Which prefix do you need to form the opposite of each word? (three different ones)
5 Which word has the main stress on the second syllable?

5 Problems with pronunciation

A Phonetics

With many languages you can look at a word and know (more or less) how to pronounce it. With English this is not true: it is often very difficult to know the pronunciation from looking at a word. For example:
cough (pronounced like 'off') enough (like 'stuff') through (like 'too') and dough (like 'so')

The only way you can be sure about the pronunciation is to learn some phonetic symbols which tell you the pronunciation. Dictionaries use them, and there is a table of phonetic symbols, with examples, on page 246. Phonetic symbols are used next to many words in the index, and there is a special list of words on page 247, which cause pronunciation problems for speakers from different countries.

B Word stress

When a word has two or more syllables, one of them has the main stress. In these examples, the main stress follows the symbol ':

'accent pre'fer edu'cation 'necessary Ja'pan Japa'nese

If you put the stress on the wrong syllable, it may be difficult for listeners to understand what you are saying.

C /ə/

Probably the most important sound in English because it is often the pronunciation of the letters 'a', 'o' and 'e' if they are not part of a stressed syllable.

ma'chine /mə'ʃi:n/ 'mother /'mʌðə/ po'tato /pə'teɪtəʊ/ 'cinema /'sɪnəmə/

D Key letters and sounds

A common problem is that a single letter or combination of letters has more than one pronunciation, e.g. **-ough** in section A. Here are some more examples:

the letter 'o' is often /ɒ/, e.g. hot; or /ʌ/, e.g. some; or /əʊ/, e.g. no
the letter 'a' is often /æ/, e.g. hat; or /eɪ/, e.g. same; or /a:/, e.g. fast
the letter 'u' is often /ʌ/, e.g. run; or /ʊ/, e.g. put
the letter 'i' is often /ɪ/, e.g. sit; or /aɪ/, e.g. side

E Silent letters and short syllables

There are many words in English where a letter is not pronounced:

fasten plumber calm knee wrong comb

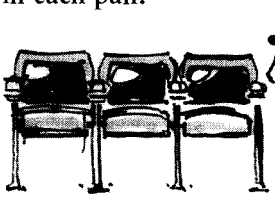
There are also many words where we almost 'eat' one of the syllables, and as a result a vowel sound almost disappears and a word, for example, with three written syllables may be two (or two and a half) in spoken English. For example:

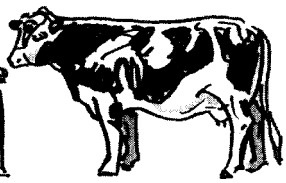
interested /ɪntrəstɪd/ fattening /fætnɪŋ/ vegetable /vedʒtəbl/

Note: The exercises on the next page practise some words with difficult pronunciation.

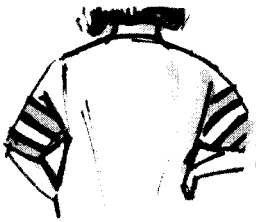
Exercises

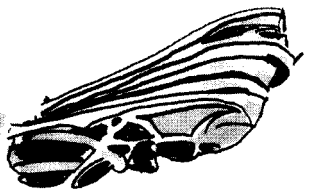
5.1 Try using some phonetic symbols. Using your dictionary or the index, fill in the pronunciation of these words (put the symbols between the / /). Then practise saying the words and make sure you can see and hear the difference in the pronunciation of the words in each pair.



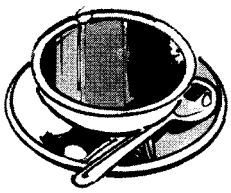


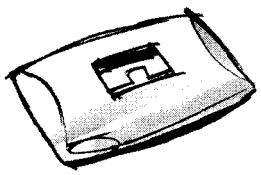
1 row / / cow / /



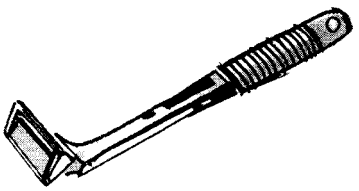


2 back / / bacon / /





3 soup / / soap / /



4 vase / / razor / /

5.2 Look at the underlined letters in these words. Which one is the odd one out in each case?

1 bread dream spread dead
2 spoon room flood choose
3 fast phrase blame sunbathe
4 cousin wound (n) rough trouble
5 virus pilot diet since
6 hyphen symptom type psychology

5.3 Which syllable has the main stress in these words? Put them in the correct column.

cathedral policy palace
opposite police understand
advertisement desert (n)
competition organise
assistance education

first	*second*	*third*

Now look at the words again. How many examples of the /ə/ sound can you find?

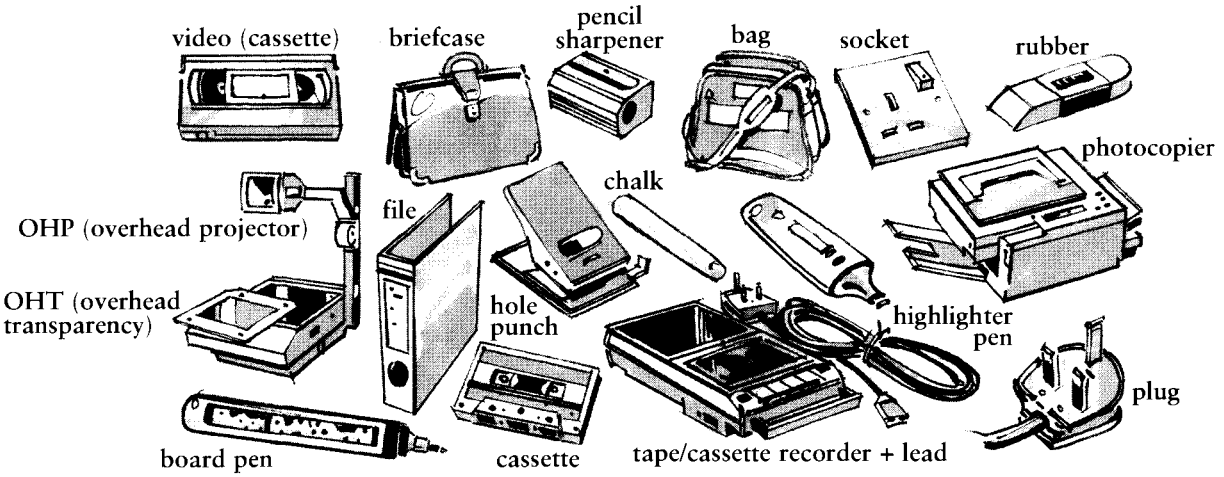
5.4 Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different?

know / knife
island / Islam
listen / western
aisle / Christmas
hand / handsome
muscle / scissors
climb / bomb
honest / hope
wrong / wrist
calf / calm

6 Classroom language

A Equipment

These are some of the things you may use in your classroom or school.



Note: We can use some of these nouns as verbs with little or no change: **to video** (= to record a programme on video), to **photocopy** (= to use the photocopier), to **highlight** and to **file** (= to put things in a file)

B Classroom activities

Here are some classroom activities. Look carefully at the verbs in bold.

Things you do in the classroom:

Look up a word if you don't understand it. (= find the meaning of a word in a dictionary)
Borrow someone's dictionary or rubber. (= use it and then return it)
Rub out mistakes in your notebook. (= erase mistakes / remove them using a rubber)

Things the teacher may do in the classroom:

Plug in the tape recorder. (= put the plug in the socket and turn on the electricity)
Turn up the tape recorder (= increase the volume) if the students can't hear it.
Rub things **off** the board. (= remove writing from the board)
Correct students' English. (= give the correct English if students make mistakes)

Things your teacher may ask you to do in the classroom:

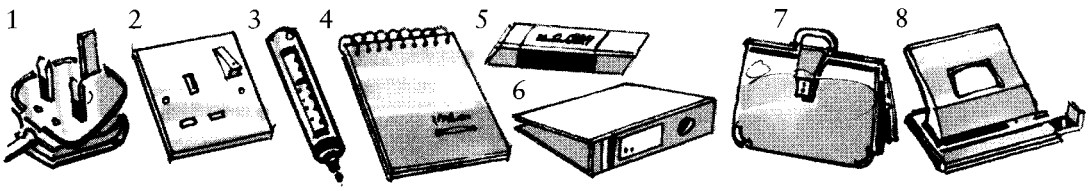
Could you **clean** the board, Carlos? (= remove all the writing from the board)
Write these words **down**. (= write these words on a piece of paper / in a notebook)
Enrique, could you **swap** places (= exchange places) with Lorena?
Repeat this sentence (= say it again) after me.

C Questions about vocabulary

What does X mean? [NOT ~~what means X?~~]
How do you pronounce it?
How do you spell 'bicycle'?
How do you use 'anyway' in a sentence?
What's the difference between X and Y?

Exercises

6.1 Label these pictures then check your answers on the opposite page.



6.2 Answer these questions.

1 What do you rub off the board?
2 What do you put in a tape recorder?
3 What do you put on an OHP?
4 What do you keep in a file?
5 What do you put in a briefcase?
6 What do you put in a socket?
7 What do you use a dictionary for?
8 What do you use a rubber for?
9 What do you use a photocopier for?
10 Why do you turn up a tape recorder?

6.3 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right.

1 clean	places
2 turn up	a word
3 borrow	mistakes
4 swap	the board
5 video	a dictionary
6 do	the OHP
7 correct	the tape recorder
8 look up	a programme
9 plug in	an exercise

6.4 Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things?

clean the board	swap places with someone
use a rubber	look up a word
borrow something	make a mistake
watch a video	write something down in a notebook

6.5 Here are some answers. What are the possible questions?

A: .....? B: It means to exchange places.
A: .....? B: /swɒp/ Like 'cop' or 'stop'.
A: .....? B: S-W-A-P.
A: .....? B: I can't see the board from here. Will you swap places with me?

7 Prefixes

A With the meaning 'not'

Prefixes (**un-**, **in-**, **il-**, **ir-**, and **dis-**) are often used to give adjectives (and some verbs and nouns) a negative meaning. Here are common examples:

happy	**un**happy	like (v)	**dis**like (v)
possible	**im**possible	legal	**il**legal (= against the law)
correct	**in**correct	regular	**ir**regular, e.g. irregular verbs

un- is used with many different words, e.g. **unfriendly**, **unable**, **unemployed** (= without a job), **untidy** (= not in order; **in a mess**)

im- is used before some words beginning with **m** or **p**, e.g. **impolite** (= **rude**), **impatient** (somebody who is **impatient** wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things)

il- is used before some words beginning with **l**, e.g. **illegible** (= cannot be read because the writing is very bad)

ir- is only used before some words beginning with **r**, e.g. **irresponsible**

dis- is used before some adjectives, e.g. **dis**honest, and a few verbs, e.g. **dis**like, **dis**agree

in- is used before a limited number of words, e.g. **invisible** (= cannot be seen)

Note: A prefix does not normally change word stress, e.g. happy/unhappy; possible/impossible. But the stress may change if you want to emphasise the negative or opposite:

A: Was he happy about the change?

B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

B Verb prefixes: un- and dis-

These prefixes have two meanings: they can have a negative meaning (as above), but they can also mean 'the opposite of an action' or 'to reverse an action'. This meaning is used with certain verbs.

I **locked** the door when I left, but I lost the key, so I couldn't it **unlock** it when I got back.

I had to **pack** my suitcase (= put everything in it) very quickly, so when I **unpacked** (= took everything out) at the hotel, most of my clothes looked terrible.

The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.

In the morning you **get dressed** (= put on your clothes); when you go to bed you **get undressed** (= take off your clothes).

C Other verb prefixes with specific meanings

re- (= again)	My homework was terrible, so I had to **redo** it.
	The shop closed down but will **reopen** next month.
	I failed my exam but I can **retake** (or **redo**/**resit**) it next year.
over- (= too much)	I think my boss is **overdoing** it at the moment. (= working too hard; also **overwork**)
	I went to bed very late and I **overslept** (= slept too long) this morning.
	The shop assistant **overcharged** me. (= asked me for too much money)
mis- (= badly or incorrectly)	I'm afraid I **misunderstood** what he said.
	Two of the students **misread** the first question.

Exercises

7.1 **Which prefix forms the opposite of these words? (The bottom line are all verbs, the rest are adjectives.)**

.....happy	.....patient	.....polite	.....legal
.....correct	.....regular	.....visible	.....possible
.....legible	.....friendly	.....employed	.....honest
.....pack	.....lock	.....agree	.....like

7.2 **Agree with these statements, using words from the left-hand page which have the same meaning as the underlined words.**

Example: A: He doesn't have a job, does he?
B: No, ...he's unemployed.....

1 It's against the law, isn't it?
Oh yes, ...
2 His room is always in a mess, isn't it?
Yes, ...
3 He took off his clothes!
Yes, ...
4 This handwriting is impossible to read.
Yes I know, ...
5 She can never wait for five minutes, can she?
No, ...
6 I thought it was rude, didn't you?
Yes, it was very .....

7.3 **Complete the verbs in these sentences.**

1 I'm sorry, I mis..... her message completely.
2 We un..... as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
3 She was here a minute ago, but then she dis..... I'm afraid I don't know where she is now.
4 We normally have similar opinions but I dis..... with him totally on the subject of drugs.
5 My homework was so bad that I'll have to re..... it.
6 Apparently her alarm clock didn't ring and she over.....
7 She finally managed to un..... the door and we were able to go inside.
8 I dis..... the film, but the others enjoyed it.
9 I don't think I'll pass the exam, but I can always re..... it in September.
10 The post office shuts for lunch but it should re..... at 2.00 p.m.
11 She's over..... at the moment. She really needs a holiday and a complete break from her job.
12 My sister wrapped up my present so well that it took me about five minutes to un..... it.

7.4 **Keep several pages in your notebook for verbs or adjectives which combine with these prefixes. Each time you add a new word, read through your list of words with that prefix, then close your book and see how many you can remember.**

8 Noun suffixes

A Verb + suffix

Many nouns are formed in this way.

Verb	*Suffix*	*Noun*
improve (= get better)	-ment	improvement
manage (e.g. a shop or business)	-ment	management
elect (= choose somebody by voting)	-ion	election
discuss (= talk about something seriously)	-ion	discussion
inform (= tell someone something)	-ation	information
organise	-ation	organisation
jog (= running to keep fit or for pleasure)	-ing	jogging
spell (e.g. S-P-E-L-L)	-ing	spelling

Note: Sometimes there is a spelling change. The most common is the omission of the final 'e' before the suffix **-ion** or **-ation**: translate/translation; organise/organisation

B Adjective + suffix

Nouns are also formed by adding a suffix to an adjective. Two suffixes often added to adjectives to form nouns are **-ness** and **-ity**.

Adjective	*Suffix*	*Noun*
weak (≠ strong)	-ness	weakness
happy	-ness	happiness
dark (e.g. at night, when you can't see)	-ness	darkness
stupid (≠ intelligent, clever)	-ity	stupidity
punctual (= always arrives at the right time)	-ity	punctuality
similar (= almost the same; ≠ different)	-ity	similarity

C Pronunciation

The addition of these suffixes may change the pronunciation.

Nouns ending **-ion** or **-ity** have the main stress on the syllable before, so the pronunciation may be different from the verb or adjective:

Verb	*Noun*	*Adjective*	*Noun*
educate	education	similar	similarity
translate	translation	stupid	stupidity
discuss	discussion	punctual	punctuality

D -er/-or and -ist

These are common noun suffixes added to existing nouns or verbs, and they describe people and their jobs.

-er	-er	-or	-ist
dancer	driver	actor	artist
singer	manager	director	economist
murderer	footballer	translator	psychologist
farmer	employer	operator	journalist

Note: Notice the common spelling changes:
translate/translator, operate/operator, economy/economist, psychology/psychologist.

Exercises

8.1 Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

Verb	*Noun*
educate	
improve	
jog	
govern	
spell	
hesitate	
arrange	

Adjective	*Noun*
stupid	
dark	
weak	
similar	
punctual	
sad	
popular	

8.2 Combine the suffixes on the right with the verbs or adjectives on the left, and then complete the text below. (Remember you may need to make a small spelling change.)

improve	televise	elect
educate	weak	manage
govern	stupid	

-ment	-ity	-ion	-ation	-ness

In his first broadcast on (1) _____ since he won the (2) _____ last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and (3) _____ two of his top priorities. And in a strong attack on the previous (4) _____, he said that the present (5) _____ of the British economy was caused entirely by their (6) _____ and bad (7) _____. He said he would act immediately and he hoped the British people would be able to see clear signs of an (8) _____ in the economy by the end of the year.

8.3 Write down the name of the person who does these things.

Example: farm ..farmer.....

1 act	.....	4 sing	.....	7 economics	.....
2 employ	.....	5 murder	.....	8 translate	.....
3 football	.....	6 psychology	.....	9 manage	.....

8.4 Look at the two examples and then complete the rest of the definitions.

Example: An actor is a person who ...acts in films, plays and on TV.....
A murderer is a person who ...murders someone.....

1 A journalist is a person who .....
2 A ballet dancer is a person who .....
3 A film director is a person who .....
4 A bank manager is a person who .....
5 An employer is a person who .....
6 A pop singer is a person who .....
7 A translator is a person who .....
8 A lorry driver is a person who .....
9 A photographer is a person who .....
10 An artist is a person who .....

9 Adjective suffixes

Suffixes change word class, e.g. from verb to noun or noun to adjective, but they can also change meaning (see sections B and C below).

A Noun or verb + suffix

Noun or *Verb*	*Suffix*	*Adjectives*
danger, fame	-ous	dangerous, famous (= well-known)
music, politics	-al	musical, political, industrial,
industry, economics		economical (= saves you money)
cloud, fog, sun, dirt	-y	cloudy, foggy, sunny, dirty (≠ clean)
attract, create	-ive	attractive (= pretty, nice to look at); creative (= able to produce new ideas; with imagination)

Note: Sometimes there is a spelling change. Here are common examples:
double the consonant, e.g. sun/sunny, fog/foggy
leave out the final 'e', e.g. create/creative, fame/famous
leave out the final 's' before 'al', e.g. politics/political; economics/economical
change 'y' to 'i' before 'al', e.g. industry/industrial

B -able /əbl/

This suffix (also **-ible** in some words) is used to form many adjectives from nouns or verbs:

enjoyable, comfortable, knowledgeable (= knows a lot), **suitable** (= right/correct for a particular situation).

Quite often, **-able** (and **-ible**) has the meaning 'can be done'. For example, something that is **washable** 'can be washed'. Other examples include:

drinkable, comprehensible (= can be comprehended or understood), **reliable** (= can be relied on or trusted, e.g. a car or other machine that never goes wrong or breaks down).

Words ending **-able** quite often express the opposite meaning by adding the prefix **un-**:

undrinkable, unreliable, unbreakable (= cannot be broken), **unsuitable, uncomfortable**

Words ending **-ible** add the prefix **in-**:

incomprehensible, inflexible (somebody who is **inflexible** has a fixed idea about something and cannot change quickly or easily; an **inflexible** timetable cannot be changed easily); **inedible** (= cannot be eaten).

C -ful and -less

The suffix **-ful** often means 'full of' + the meaning of the adjective: **careful**, you are full of care; if you are **helpful** you are full of help. Other examples are: **painful** (= hurts a lot), **useful**, and **thoughtful** (= someone who is **thoughtful** is kind and always thinks about others; a **thoughtful** action shows care for others)

The suffix **-less** means 'without' + the meaning of the adjective: if you are **careless**, you do something 'without care'. Other examples are: **painless, useless** (= has no use or function) **thoughtless, jobless** and **homeless** (= with nowhere to live)

Note: You can see that **-ful** and **-less** are often used with the same words to form opposites. This is not always true: a person with a home is NOT ~~homeful~~.

Exercises

9.1 **Write down an adjective (or adjectives) formed from these nouns or verbs. Cover the opposite page first.**

thought	dirt	pain	comfort
attract	care	knowledge	fame
create	danger	suit	rely
fog	politics	sun	wash
home	enjoy	music	break
use			

9.2 **Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives from the opposite page.**

1 You must be very ..... when you drive in wet weather.
2 It was so ..... this morning that I couldn't see more than twenty metres in front of me.
3 Everyone in my country has heard of her; she's very .....
4 The people in the tourist information office were very ..... and answered all our questions without any problems.
5 This is a very ..... road; there were at least three serious accidents on it last year.
6 It was very ..... when I hit my leg against the corner of the table.
7 This bag is very ..... because I can use it for work or when I go on holiday.
8 We've never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very .....
9 The factory is in the middle of the ..... part of the city, surrounded by other factories.
10 I made some coffee but it was horrible. In fact, my sister said it was .....
11 I'm afraid my working hours are very .....; I have to start at exactly the same time every day and finish at the same time every day.
12 It seems terrible to me that there are so many ..... people living in a city with thousands of empty houses.

9.3 **How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix -less?**

painful wonderful useful careful
beautiful tactful awful thoughtful

Can you think of words which mean the opposite of the other words (the ones without -less)?

9.4 **From the adjectives on this page and the opposite page, choose three which could describe each of these people or things. (You can use the same adjective more than once.)**

1 the weather .....
2 someone who is a very bad driver .....
3 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart .....
4 a large city .....
5 Albert Einstein .....
6 a new car .....
7 a speech .....
8 yourself .....

10 Zero affixation

A What is zero affixation?

Many words in English can function as a noun and verb, or noun and adjective, or verb and adjective, with no change in form. The meaning is not always the same, but this unit looks at examples where the words do have the same meaning.

What's the **answer**? (noun)
Answer the question. (verb)

I don't like the **cold**. (noun)
I don't like **cold** weather. (adjective)

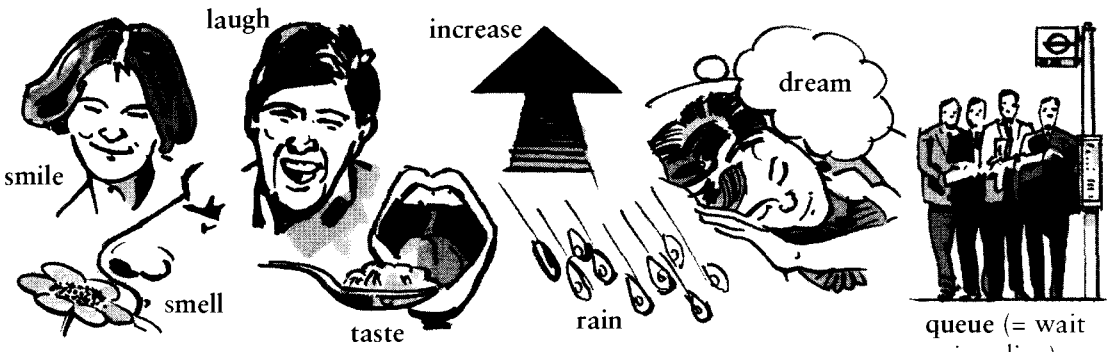
I must **clean** my room. (verb)
It's a **clean** room. (adjective)

I didn't **reply** to the letter. (verb)
I wrote a **reply** to the letter. (noun)

Note: Other examples in the book are marked like this: ache (n, v), damage (n, v), dry (v, adj). Keep a record of them in your notebook.

B Noun and verb

You may know these words in one form but not the other. (The definitions are for the verb.)



brake (= stop a car using the **brake** on the floor)
diet (= eat less and lose weight)
guess (= give an answer without knowing the facts)
ring (= phone)
push (≠ **pull**)
murder (= kill someone)

Note: Other words in this group include: **stay**, **drink**, **rest**, **look**, **cost**, and **wait**. Use a dictionary if you need to check the meaning. Here are a few examples:

We **queued** for half an hour.
This orange **smells/tastes** strange.
I didn't know the answer, so I **guessed**.

We waited in **a queue** for half an hour.
This orange has got **a** strange **smell/taste**.
I didn't know the answer, so I **had a guess**.

C Which verb?

When you use these words as nouns, you need to choose the correct verb to use with it.

Verb	*Noun*
We stayed in Paris for a short time.	We **had** a short stay in Paris.
We rested for a while.	We **had** a short rest.
She braked quickly.	She **put on** the brakes quickly.
He needs to diet.	He needs to **go on** a diet.
I'm going to ring him.	I'm going to **give** him a ring.
I looked in the paper.	I **had** a look in the paper.
He pushed me.	He **gave** me a push.
I dreamt about you last night.	I **had** a dream about you last night.

Exercises

10.1 **Rewrite these sentences using the underlined nouns as verbs. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.**

Example: There was a lot of rain yesterday.
It rained a lot yesterday.

1 We had a long wait.
.....

2 I had a dream about you last night.
.....

3 We waited in the queue for half an hour.
.....

4 The cost of the holiday was about £500.
.....

5 I wrote a reply to his letter yesterday.
.....

10.2 **Now rewrite these sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. The meaning must stay the same.**

1 I'll ring him this evening.
.....

2 I diet if I put on weight.
.....

3 It was very hot, so we rested for a while after lunch.
.....

4 I braked but I still couldn't stop in time.
.....

5 He pushed me.
.....

6 Did you look in the paper?
.....

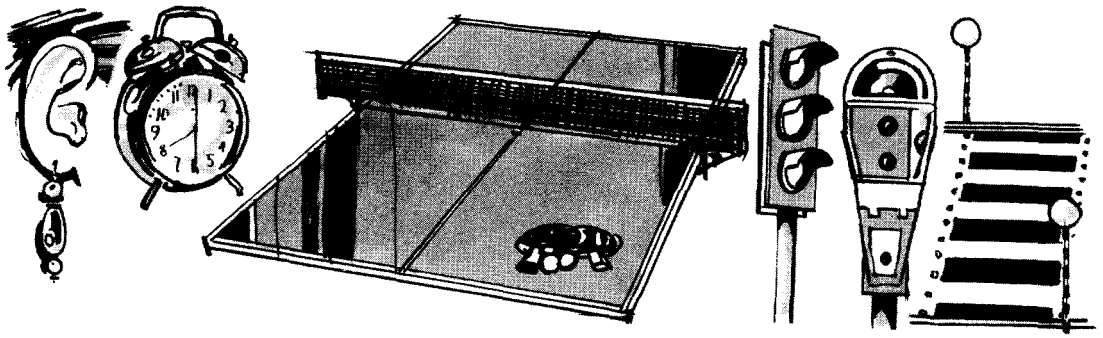
10.3 **Sometimes the same word form can be a verb and noun but with a very different meaning. Read these pairs of sentences. Does the verb have the same meaning as the noun, a similar meaning, or a completely different meaning?**

1 We had a long wait for the bus.
If we wait any longer, we may miss the train.
2 Could we have another bottle of water, please?
I asked her to water the garden.
3 I gave him the book.
Did you book the table in the restaurant?
4 They always take a break after an hour's work.
Did he break his arm skiing?
5 I go for a run most mornings.
I was late so I had to run to get to school on time.

11 Compound nouns

A Formation

A compound noun is formed from two nouns, or an adjective and a noun. Here are some common examples.



alarm clock	dining room (= the room where you eat meals)
credit card	film star (e.g. Tom Cruise, Jodie Foster)
table tennis	brother-in-law (= your sister's husband, your husband's brother)
T-shirt	income tax (= the tax you pay on your salary)
earring	writing paper (= paper for writing letters)
sunglasses	washing machine (= the machine for washing clothes)
traffic lights	cheque book (= a book which has cheques)
tin opener	baby-sitter (= he/she looks after children when parents are out)
parking meter	*mother tongue (= your first language)
*first aid	*science fiction (= stories about the future)
*pedestrian crossing	*box office (= where you buy tickets in cinemas and theatres)

B One word or two?

Compound nouns are usually written as two words (e.g. credit card), but sometimes they are joined by a hyphen (e.g. baby-sitter), or written as one word (e.g. sunglasses). Unfortunately there is no rule for this, so you may need to check in a dictionary.

C Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part (e.g. parking meter) but sometimes it is on both parts (e.g. mother tongue). In A, the compounds marked *all have the stress on both parts. Some dictionaries show the stress on compounds.

D Forming new compounds

Quite often, one part of a compound forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

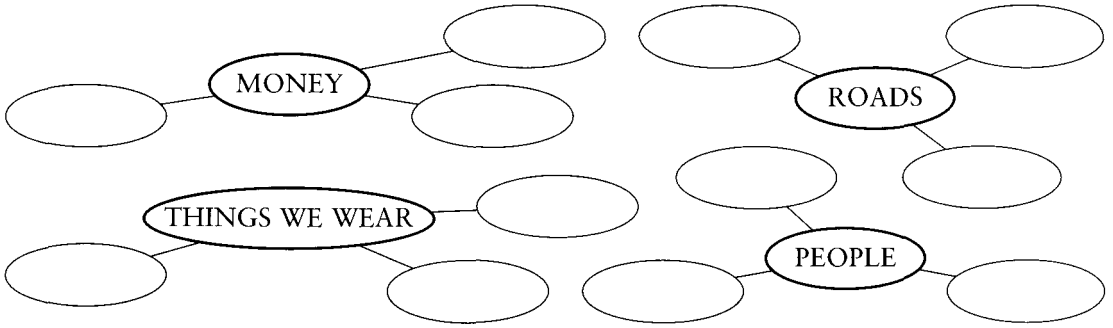
post/ticket/box office traffic lights/warden/jam film/pop/rock star

brother/sister/father/mother -in-law dining/sitting/waiting room

Note: A **traffic jam** is a long line of cars which are moving slowly because the road is busy; and **traffic wardens** patrol the streets to make sure you are not parked in the wrong place illegally. You buy theatre tickets at the **box office** and train tickets at the **ticket office**.

Exercises

11.1 **Find compound nouns on the opposite page connected with each of these topics.**



11.2 **Complete these sentences with suitable compound nouns, then see if you can find them on the opposite page.**

1 I'm late because there was a terrible ..... in the centre of town.
2 Humphrey Bogart was a famous ..... in the forties and fifties.
3 My ..... didn't ring this morning and I didn't wake up until 9.30.
4 When I got to the surgery, I had to sit in the ..... for forty minutes before I could see the dentist.
5 Mary really wanted to see the film but she couldn't find a ..... for the children, so she had to stay at home.
6 When I'm driving I always wear ..... if it's very bright and sunny.
7 You have to pay ..... on your salary in Britain; the amount depends on how much you earn.
8 I often have the same problem: I park the car next to a ....., and then I discover that I don't have the right money.
9 In some countries you have to have a ..... box in your car for minor injuries and illnesses.
10 My brother loves ....., but I prefer true stories about the present or the past.

11.3 **Take one word (the first part or the second part) from each compound and create a new compound. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.**

Examples: brother-in-law ...mother-in-law.....
table tennis ...table leg.....

dining room	.....	traffic lights	.....
film star	.....	sunglasses	.....
credit card	.....	post office	.....
toothpaste	.....	hairdryer	.....

Now mark the main stress on each of the compound nouns you have created.

11.4 **Try creating your own compound nouns. Choose two or three common words and then try to form compound nouns from them. When you have two or three possibilities, check in a dictionary to see if your words exist. Start with these.**

..... book *or* book .....
..... card

12 Compound adjectives

A Formation and pronunciation

A compound adjective is formed from two different words, and occasionally three. They are usually written with a hyphen (e.g. good-looking, well-known), and the stress is usually the same on both parts of the compound.

B Describing people

Many compound adjectives describe a person's appearance, character, and situation.

This is William. He isn't **well-known** (= famous), he isn't **well-off** (= rich), and I've never heard anyone say he was **good-looking** (= handsome/attractive). But he's a very nice man – kind, friendly and very **easy-going** (= relaxed). In this picture he's wearing a **short-sleeved** shirt and a **brand-new** (= completely new) hat.

C 'Well' and 'badly'

These adverbs combine with many past participles to form compound adjectives. You can use 'well' or 'badly' in front of the adjective (except **well-known**, which has no opposite).

a well-directed film
a well-made pair of shoes
a well-written story

a badly-paid job (= a low salary)
a badly-behaved child (= acting in a bad way)
a badly-dressed young man (= wearing horrible clothes)

D A 'five-minute' walk

It is common to combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective.

It's a **fifteen-minute drive** to the centre. (= a drive of fifteen minutes)
He works in a **four-star** hotel. (= a hotel with a rating of four stars)
I gave her a **five-pound** note. (= a note with a value of five pounds)
The winner was a **ten-year-old** girl. (= a girl who is ten years old)
There was a **two-hour** delay on our flight. (= the plane was two hours' late)

E Common compounds

She had a **full-time** job in a bank, but after the baby was born she changed to a **part-time** job and just worked in the mornings.
The hotel is **north-west** of here, about ten miles away. (also **north-east**, **south-east**, and **south-west**)
Most of the population are **right-handed**, but about 10% are **left-handed**.
On trains and planes you can buy a **first-class** ticket if you are happy to pay a lot more.
Mary bought a **second-hand** BMW. (= the car was not **brand-new**, but was a new car for her)

Note: As with compound nouns, you can often combine different words with one part and form many different compound adjectives.

Exercises

12.1 **Match words from the box on the left with words from the box on the right to form 12 compound adjectives.**

good	well
easy	north
ten	short
brand	badly
part	left
first	second

new	known
written	class
looking	sleeved
hand	handed
going	east
time	pound

12.2 **For each word below, find two words which will combine with it to form different compound adjectives. Cover the left-hand page first.**

.....	.....	.....
well	badly	handed
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	
time	east	
.....	.....	

12.3 **Complete the compound adjectives in these sentences.**

1 They were both wearing short-..... shirts.
2 We stayed in a five-..... hotel.
3 There is a shop in London which sells things for left-..... people.
4 He's just bought a brand-..... car.
5 The airport is about ten miles south-..... of the city centre.
6 One little girl was very badly-.....; she kept shouting during lunch and then threw food all over the floor.
7 She's just got a .....-time job; she works three hours a day on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.
8 It was a very badly-..... article: I noticed several punctuation mistakes and lots of spelling mistakes.
9 They're very well-....., so they can afford to go to expensive restaurants.
10 It's a twenty-..... walk to the house, but it takes much less than that in the car.
11 She's got a little stall in the market where she sells second-..... things.
12 When I saw her last night, she was dancing with a very good-..... young man in a white suit.
13 I was astonished when the man at the next table gave the waiter a ten-..... note as a tip.
14 Have you ever met a well-..... actor or politician?
15 I had a nice time with my cousin – he's good company and very easy-.....

12.4 **Write ten sentences about yourself and use a different compound adjective from the opposite page in each one. You can describe yourself, your personality, your family, your clothes, the place where you live, the journeys you make, etc. Try to do this exercise with a friend and see who can finish first.**

13 Collocation (word partners)

A What is collocation?

If you want to use a word naturally, you need to learn the other words that often go with it (word partners). These can be very different from language to language. For example, in English we say:

I **missed the bus** (= I didn't **catch the bus**) [NOT ~~I lost the bus~~]
She **made a mistake** [NOT ~~she did a mistake~~]
A **heavy smoker** (= someone who smokes a lot) [NOT ~~a strong smoker~~ *or* ~~a big smoker~~]
It was a **serious illness** [NOT ~~a big illness~~ *or* ~~a strong illness~~]

B Verb + noun

The meaning of many of these examples may be clear, but did you know these verbs and nouns go together? Is it the same or different in your language?

start the car (= turn on the engine)
start a family (= think about having your first child)
tell a story
tell the truth (≠ tell a lie)
tell a joke
run a shop/company (= manage/control it)
get on a bus (≠ get off)
get in(to) a car (≠ get out (of) a car)
miss a person (= be unhappy because that person is not there)
miss a lesson (= when you don't come to a lesson)

C Adjective + noun

Common adjectives often combine with a wide range of nouns.

a soft drink (= non-alcoholic drink)
a soft voice (≠ a loud voice)
dry wine (≠ sweet wine)
dry weather (≠ wet weather)
strong coffee (≠ weak coffee)
a strong accent (≠ a slight accent)
hard work (= hard physically or mentally)
a great success (= very successful)
heavy traffic (= a lot of cars)
heavy rain (= raining a lot)

Look at some of these phrases in example sentences.

I can't understand his English because he has such a **strong accent**.
It was **hard work** organising the conference, but I think it was a **great success**.
You always get **heavy traffic** during the rush hour.

D Adverb + adjective

In these examples, all the adverbs mean **very**, but we choose to use them with certain adjectives. (You could still use **very** in all of these examples if you wish.)

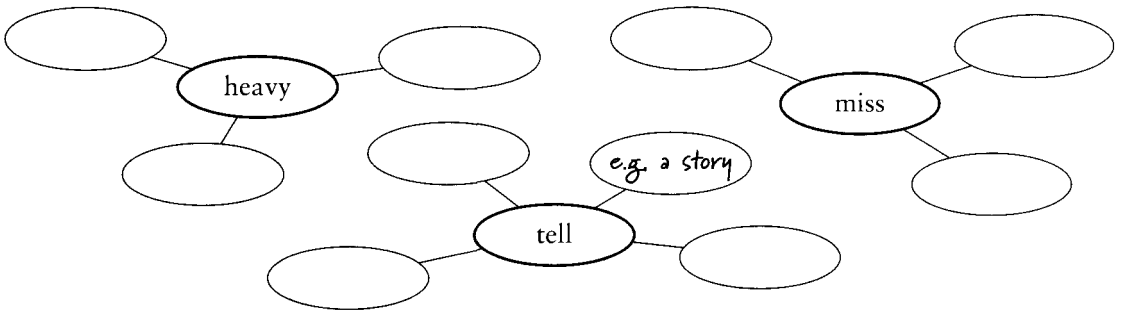
I was **terribly sorry** to hear about your accident.
He's **highly unlikely** to come now. (= I'm almost sure he will not come)
She is **fully aware** of the problem. (= she knows all about the problem)
It is **vitally important** that you make a note of common collocations in your notebook.

E Collocation in dictionaries

All good dictionaries now include examples of common collocations but they do it in different ways: sometimes they are in **bold print** after the definition; sometimes in *italics* after the definition; and sometimes in the definition and examples. (See Unit 3, Section B.)

Exercises

13.1 **You can keep a record of common collocations by using 'spidergrams'. These are very clear on the page and you can add to them. Complete these.**



13.2 **Write the opposite of these phrases and expressions.**

1 sweet wine
2 a strong accent
3 strong coffee
4 a soft voice
5 get on the bus
6 tell the truth
7 catch the bus
8 get in the car

13.3 **Find a suitable adjective, verb or adverb from the opposite page to complete these sentences.**

1 I'm ..... sorry I'm late, but I ..... the bus and had to wait ages for another one.
2 He ..... everyone the same joke, and nobody laughed.
3 We had lots of snow in the night and I had a problem ..... the car this morning.
4 Michael is the owner, but his brother John ..... the company, and he has about 50 employees working for him.
5 I think they want to get married and ..... a family.
6 That's the third mistake she's ..... today.
7 It's ..... important that we finish this work by the end of the week.
8 If this ..... rain continues, I think he's ..... unlikely to come.
9 I don't drink ..... coffee at night because it keeps me awake.
10 I really ..... my family when I stayed in Australia on my own last year.

13.4 **The adjectives on the left can all mean 'very big', but we often use them specifically with the nouns on the right. Use a good dictionary to find the correct collocations, and then complete the sentences below.**

wide	large
broad	vast

shoulders	range
majority	size

1 I used to be medium but I need a .... now because I've put on weight.
2 Fortunately the shop I go to has a .... of shirts and jumpers to choose from.
3 I've also got very ...., but my waist is quite small.
4 A few men can't find clothes to fit them, but the .... are small, medium or large.

14 Verb or adjective + preposition

A Verb (+ preposition)

Here are some common examples of verbs which are usually followed by a particular preposition. You will probably know most of these verbs, but do you always get the preposition right? Pay special attention to any that are different in your language.

I often **listen to** the radio.
My brother never **agrees with** me. (= he never has the same views/opinion as me)
I may go to the match; it really **depends on** the weather. (= the weather will decide for me)
He **suffers from** (= has the unpleasant/bad experience of) a type of diabetes.
He **got married to** a girl he met in France.
I'm going to **apologise** (= say sorry) **for** the mistakes we made.
She has **applied** (= made a written request) **for** a new job.
They were **waiting for** me when I arrived.
Don't **worry** (= be nervous) **about** your exam; it'll be OK.
She **complained** (= said she was not satisfied) **to** the waiter **about** the food. (You complain **to** someone a**bout** something.)
He **spends** a lot of money **on** clothes and discos.
That dictionary **belongs to** Rolf. (= it is Rolf's dictionary)

B Changes of meaning

Sometimes a verb may be followed by different prepositions, and the meaning changes.

He **threw** the ball **to** me. (= for me to catch it)

He **threw** the ball **at** me. (= in order to hit me; perhaps he was angry)

He **shouted to** me. (= in order to communicate with me)
He **shouted at** me. (= he was angry with me)

C Adjective (+ preposition)

I was never very **good at** mathematics.
She is **afraid of** (= frightened of) flying.
I'm very **keen on** Italian food. (= I like Italian food very much)
She is **similar to** (= almost the same as) her older sister, but very **different from** her brother.
He's very **interested in** antique furniture.
I was **surprised at** (or **by**) the weather; it rained nearly every day.
I think she is **aware of** (= knows about) the problems in her class.
I'm **tired of** studying foreign languages. (= I've had enough and I want to stop)
The streets are **full of** rubbish. (= there is rubbish everywhere in the streets)
There is something **wrong with** this TV. (= the TV is not working/functioning correctly)

Exercises

14.1 **Finish these questions with the correct preposition, then write a short answer for each one.**

1 A: What exactly is she worried .....? B: .....
2 A: What subjects is she good .....? B: .....
3 A: Who is she waiting .....? B: .....
4 A: What job is she applying .....? B: .....
5 A: What programme is she listening .....? B: .....
6 A: What did she complain .....? B: .....
7 A: What did she apologise .....? B: .....
8 A: Who does this car belong .....? B: .....
9 A: I know she was angry but who was she shouting .....? B: .....
10 A: What kind of films is she interested .....? B: .....
11 A: What will the decision depend .....? B: .....
12 A: What is she afraid .....? B: .....

14.2 **Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.**

1 He suffers	a at me, but it missed.
2 She wasn't aware	b for a job in Australia.
3 He threw the book	c from a rare illness.
4 She complained	d to the man across the lake.
5 She said it was similar	e for the mistake.
6 She applied	f at his choice.
7 She shouted	g of clothes.
8 He said it depends	h to the one she has.
9 The suitcase was full	i of working at weekends.
10 She's tired	j of her mistakes.
11 She apologised	k on me.
12 I was very surprised	l about the bad service.

14.3 **Complete these sentences in a way that is logical and grammatically correct. If possible, compare your answers with someone who has also done this exercise.**

1 My steak was overcooked, so I complained .....
2 When I was a child I sometimes wore clothes that belonged .....
3 I want to help poor people, so I have decided to apply .....
4 I work quite hard but I'm not very good .....
5 In the summer a lot of people suffer .....
6 I've always been interested .....
7 I'm very keen .....
8 A lot of people are afraid .....
9 People in my country are very different .....
10 When I went to ....., I was very surprised .....

14.4 **A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition. Sometimes the preposition is shown after the verb or adjective; sometimes it is illustrated in the example sentences. Use a dictionary to find the preposition that often follows these words.**

fond (adj) concentrate (v) responsible (adj) rely (v)

15 Preposition + noun

A Common patterns

There are many expressions formed by a preposition + noun, and sometimes a preposition is used with a particular meaning in a number of expressions, so they are very common.

A book **by** Stephen King, a film **by** Steven Spielberg, a song **by** Elton John.
You can go **for** a walk, **for** a drive, **for** a run, for a swim.
You can go **in** the morning, **in** the afternoon, **in** the evening (but **at night**).
You can travel **by** car, **by** plane, **by** bus, **by** coach, **by** train, **by** taxi (but **on foot**).
I heard it **on** the radio; I saw it **on TV**; I spoke to her **on the phone** (but I read it **in the newspaper**, **in a magazine**).
The man **in** the dark suit (= wearing the dark suit); the woman **in** the red dress.

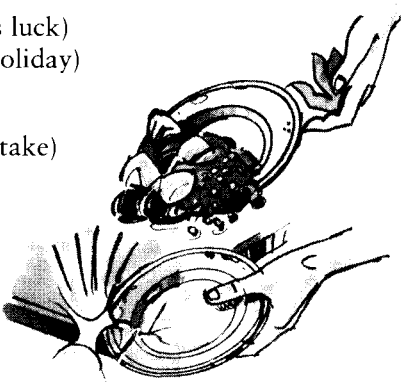
B Fixed expressions

Sometimes it is difficult to know why a particular preposition is used, and you must learn these as fixed expressions.

I took his pen **by mistake.** (= I thought it was my pen)
I did all the work **by myself.** (= **on my own**; without help from others)
The shoes are made **by hand.** (= not by machine)
The workers are **on strike.** (= they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.)
I met them **by chance.** (= it wasn't planned – it was luck)
The children are **on holiday.** (= they are having a holiday)

He broke the plate **by accident.**
(= he did not want to do it – it was an error/mistake)

He broke the plate **on purpose.**
(= he wanted to do it and intended to do it)



There are two million **out of work.** (= without a job)
There were **at least** fifty people at the party. (= a minimum of 50)

C In time or on time?

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always arrive **on time.** (= at 8.30)
Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always get there **in time.** (= before 8.30; I'm not late)

In the end we went home. (= finally, after a long period)
At the end of the book they get married.

The two men are **in business.** (= they are businessmen)
The two men are in Germany **on business.** (= they are there for work and not for a holiday)

I'll see you **in a moment.** (= very soon)
I can't speak to you **at the moment.** (= right now)

Exercises

15.1 **Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Cover the opposite page first.**

1 I saw it ..... TV.
2 They came ..... car.
3 They are all ..... strike.
4 He is here ..... business.
5 I did it ..... my own.
6 It was written ..... Goethe.
7 We went ..... a walk.
8 I read it ..... a magazine.
9 He's ..... holiday this week.
10 She took it ..... mistake.
11 I went ..... the afternoon.
12 He came ..... foot.
13 The clothes are made ..... hand.
14 She broke it ..... accident.
15 He did it ..... purpose.
16 I'll see you ..... a moment.
17 I'm very busy ..... the moment.
18 It's very quiet ..... night.
19 We met ..... chance.
20 She's ..... least 25 years old.

15.2 **Replace the underlined words with a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.**

Example: The meeting was planned for 11 a.m. and we got here <u>at 11 a.m.</u> on time

1 I wrote the reports <u>without any help from anyone else</u>.
2 Did you get to the cinema <u>before the film started</u>?
3 Thousands of people are <u>without jobs</u> in my town.
4 She's <u>making a phone call</u>.
5 I saw the advertisement <u>when I was watching TV</u> last night.
6 He opened her letter <u>because he thought it was addressed to him</u>.
7 It was a very long journey but <u>finally</u> we got there.
8 He gets killed <u>in the last scene</u> of the film.
9 I'm afraid I'm very busy <u>right now</u>.
10 I saw her yesterday <u>but I didn't plan to see her</u>.

15.3 **Respond to these questions with a negative answer and a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.**

Example: Was it the man wearing the blue shirt?
No, the man in the white shirt.

1 Did she hit him on purpose?
.....
2 Did they go by car?
.....
3 Are they here on holiday?
.....
4 Did you read about the accident in the newspaper?
.....
5 Did the others help him?
.....
6 Do you want to sit down and have a rest?
.....

15.4 **Look at the prepositional phrases on the opposite page again, and make a list of the ones which are not exact translations from your own language. Put the list in your pocket and carry it around with you. Test yourself as often as possible by thinking of a translation and/or explanation and/or example sentence for each one.**

16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning

A Formation

A phrasal verb is a verb combined with an adverb or preposition, and occasionally with an adverb and preposition.

The price of petrol may **go up** (= increase) again next week.
He **fell over** (= fell to the ground) when he was running for the bus.
She's promised to **find out** (= learn/discover) the name of that new hotel.
Who is going to **look after** (= take care of) the children when she goes into hospital?
If you don't understand the meaning, you can **look it up** (= find the meaning in a book – in this case a dictionary).
He doesn't **get on with** (= have a good relationship with) his parents. (verb + adv + prep)

B Meaning

Sometimes the meaning of a phrasal verb is very similar to the base verb, and the adverb just emphasises the meaning of the base verb, e.g. **stand up, wake up, save up, hurry up, sit down, lie down** and **send off** (e.g. a letter). On other occasions, the adverb adds the idea of completing the action of the verb, e.g. **drink up** (= finish your drink), **eat up** (= finish eating), **finish off**.

But more often, the meaning of a phrasal verb is very different from the base verb, e.g. **go up** doesn't mean the same as **go**; **look after** is different from **look**; and **look after** is also quite different from **look up**. An adverb or preposition can therefore change the meaning of a verb a great deal.

Here are some more examples of this type of phrasal verb.

It took her a long time to **get over** (= get better / recover from) her illness.
He told me to **carry on** (= continue) as far as the traffic lights.
I persuaded my wife to **give up** (= stop) smoking.
I can't make any sandwiches because we've **run out of** bread. (= the bread is finished / all used, so we have no bread)
In the end my next-door neighbour had to come and **put out** (= extinguish/stop) the fire.

C Multiple meaning

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning, so you must be careful when you see a phrasal verb you think you know, or look up the meaning in a dictionary. In the examples marked *, the phrasal verb is much more natural than the explanation in brackets.

It was hot so I decided to ***take off** (= remove) my jacket.
I am always nervous when the plane ***takes off** (= leaves the ground).

I don't think I'll **get through** (= finish) this report before five o'clock.
I think she'll **get through** (= pass) the exam.

I ***picked up** the rubbish (= took it from the ground or a low place) and put it in the bin.
I had to go to the shop to **pick up** (= collect) my photos.

My alarm clock didn't **go off** (= ring) this morning.
The bomb could **go off** (= explode) at any minute.
The fish will ***go off** (= go bad) if you don't put it in the fridge.

Exercises

16.1 Fill the gaps to complete the phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 We went round the school and ..... **up** all the rubbish.
2 I don't think they ever ..... **out** how the man escaped.
3 This milk smells horrible; I think it has ..... **off**.
4 Do you think they'll ..... **through** the exam next week?
5 They had a bad relationship at first, but she ..... **on** very well **with** him now.
6 The price has ..... **up** three times this year.
7 I agreed to ..... **after** my sister's cat when she goes to France.
8 We can ..... **on** until the teacher tells us to stop.
9 Why didn't your alarm clock ..... **off** this morning?
10 I'm afraid this photocopier has ..... **out of** paper, but you can use the other one in my office.

16.2 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1 It will take her a long time to get over .....
2 I'm afraid we've run out of .....
3 He had to look it up .....
4 I don't really get on with .....
5 She came in and took off .....
6 I had to put out .....
7 Who is going to look after .....
8 I went to the garage to pick up .....
9 The plane took off .....
10 My rent is going up .....

16.3 Look at the dictionary entry for *pick up*, and match the meanings with the sentences below.

pick up *v adv* **1** [T] **(pick** sbdy./sthg.↔ **up)** to take hold of and lift up: *Pick up the box by the handles.* –see picture on page 669 **2** [T] **(pick** sthg.↔ **up)** to gather together; collect: *Please pick up all your toys when you've finished playing.* **3** [I] to improve: *Trade is picking up again.* **4** [T] **(pick** sthg.↔ **up)** to gain; get: *Where did you pick up that book/your excellent English?* **5** [I;T **(pick** sthg.↔ **up)**] to (cause to) start again: *to pick up (the conversation) where we left off* **6** [T] **(pick** sbdy./sthg.↔ **up)** to collect; arrange to go and get: *Pick me up at the hotel.|I'm going to pick up my coat from the cleaner's.* **7** [T] **(pick** sbdy./sthg.↔ **up)** to collect in a vehicle **8** [T] **(pick** sbdy.↔ **up)**

1 I said I would pick her up at the airport.
2 I picked up most of the rubbish that was on the floor.
3 Where did he pick up that strange accent?
4 Business was bad at the beginning of the year but it's picking up now.
5 I hurt my back when I tried to pick up that chair.

16.4 Write two sentences for each of these phrasal verbs to show their different meanings.

pick up take off go off get through

17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style

Look at Unit 16 on the form and meaning of phrasal verbs before you do this unit.

A Grammar: intransitive verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive and do not need a direct object.

The children are **growing up**. (= getting older and more mature)
The doctor told me to **lie down** on the bed.
Don't wait out there. Please **come in**. (= enter)
I'm going to stay **in** (= stay at home) this evening.

With these verbs, you cannot put another word between the verb and adverb.

B Grammar: transitive verbs

But many phrasal verbs are transitive and do need a direct object. With some of these, you can put the object between the verb and adverb:

Put on your shoes ✓ **Turn** on the TV ✓
Put your shoes **on** ✓ **Turn** the TV **on** ✓

If the object is a pronoun, it must go between verb and adverb.

Put them **on** ✓ [NOT ~~Put on them~~] **Turn** it **on** ✓ [NOT ~~Turn on it~~]

Note: A dictionary will show you if you can put a word between the verb and adverb:

turn *(obj)* SWITCH /tɜːn, tɜːrn/ *v* [always + adv/prep] to use a control to switch (a piece of equipment) on or off or to increase or reduce what it is producing • *Turn* **off/out** *the light.* [M] • *Who turned the telly* **on**? [M] • *I asked him to turn* **down** *the heating.* [M] • *Turn the sound* **up** *– I can't hear what they're saying.* [M] • *This programme's boring – shall I turn* **over** (= change the station) *to BBC?* [I] • *This sort of heater turns* **off** (= can be switched off) *at the mains.* [I] •

C Style: formal or informal

Some phrasal verbs can be used equally in written or spoken English. Sometimes this is because there is no other easy way to express the meaning of the phrasal verb.

I always **wake up** early, even at weekends.
The car **broke down** (= went wrong; stopped working) on the motorway.
The plane couldn't **take off** because of bad weather.
Thieves **broke into** (= entered by force and illegally) the house and took money, credit cards and all my jewellery.

D Informal phrasal verbs

But most phrasal verbs are informal and are more common in spoken English. In written English there is often a more formal word with the same meaning.

We had to **make up** a story. (= invent/create from our imagination)
I can usually **get by** on about £200 a week. (= manage)
You can **leave out** question 7. (= omit, i.e. you don't need to do question 7)
They've got a problem and they asked me to **sort it out**. (= resolve (it) / find a solution / do something about it)

Exercises

These exercises also practise and test some of the phrasal verbs from Unit 16.

17.1 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1 I'm not very good at making up .....
2 Could you lie down .....?
3 She asked me to turn on .....
4 Two men tried to break into .....
5 We have asked an engineer to come and sort out .....
6 Are you going to stay in .....?
7 Why did you leave out .....?
8 I'm afraid we broke down .....
9 Can you get by .....?
10 I grew up .....

17.2 Is it possible to separate the two parts of the phrasal verb in the sentences below? Look at the examples first, and use a dictionary to check your answers. (You can also check your answers in the answer key.)

Examples: I forgot to **get off** the bus. NO (get the bus off ✗)
Why did he **take off** his trousers? YES (take his trousers off ✓)

1 She decided to **carry on** working.
2 He had to **put out** the fire.
3 Could you **turn on** the radio?
4 I had to **lie down** for a few minutes.
5 Could you **go** to the shop for me? We've just **run out** of coffee.
6 I think she **made up** that story.
7 I can't **get by** on the money my parents give me.
8 Children **grow up** very quickly these days.
9 I **turned off** the light when I went to bed.
10 Can we **leave out** this question?

17.3 Make these texts more informal by changing some of the verbs to phrasal verbs with the same meaning. (There are three in each text.)

1 The cost of living is increasing all the time and I find it quite difficult to manage on my salary. But I think I can probably continue for a few months.
2 She told us to enter, but then we had to remove our shoes and I had to extinguish my cigarette.
3 The teacher told the class to invent a story to go with the picture in their books, and then continue with exercise 4. She said they could all omit exercise 5.

17.4 There are many phrasal verbs in other units. Can you find:

1 three phrasal verbs in Unit 21 on page 46?
2 three phrasal verbs in Unit 47 on page 98?
3 three phrasal verbs in Unit 48 on page 100?
4 three phrasal verbs in Unit 56 on page 116?
5 three phrasal verbs in Unit 62 on page 128?
6 three phrasal verbs in Unit 75 on page 154?

18 Idioms and fixed expressions

A What is an idiom?

An idiom is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, and often difficult to understand from the individual words. Many of the phrasal verbs in Units 16 and 17 were idiomatic. Here are some more common idioms.

The teacher told us to **get a move on.** (= hurry; be quick)
My wife and I **take it in turns** to cook. (= I cook one day, she cooks the next, etc.)
I don't know the answer **off-hand.** (= without looking it up or asking someone)
It's not far. We can take **a short cut** (= a quick way) through the park.
I'm not very good at **small talk.** (= social talk; not about serious things)
I'm sorry I can't **make it** (= come) on Friday.
I asked her to **keep an** eye **on** (= watch / look after) my suitcase while I went to the toilet.

B Fixed expressions

There are also expressions in English where the meaning is easy to understand, but the same idea in your language may need a completely different expression. In other words, if you just translate from your language, you may say something in English which is completely wrong. For this reason, you need to learn some expressions as idioms. For example:

A: What was wrong with the hotel?
B: Well, **for a start** it was next to a motorway and very noisy. And **to make matters worse,** there were factories on the other side of the road, which stayed open 24 hours a day.

It's not a problem **in the short term** (= at the moment) but **in the long term** (= for the longer future) we will need to think about it and probably spend some money on it.

C Using idioms

Idioms are important but they can be difficult to use correctly.

- With many idioms, if you make just a small mistake, it can sound strange, funny, or badly wrong. For example: get a move; a small talk; put an eye on, off-hands, etc.
- Idioms often have special features: they may be informal or funny or ironic; they may only be used by certain people (e.g. young children, or teenagers, or elderly people); they may only appear in limited contexts; they have special grammar. For these reasons, you can often 'learn' the meaning of an idiom but then use it incorrectly. For example: After her husband died she was **down in the dumps.** (This idiom means 'sad and depressed' but is completely wrong here: the situation is too serious and the idiom is too informal.)

D Easy idioms to use

Some idiomatic expressions are used on their own, or with just one or two other words. These are often the easiest to use.

A: Are you coming?
B: Yes, **hang on.** (= wait)

A: **What's up?** (= what's the matter?)
B: Nothing.

A: Can I borrow your dictionary?
B: Sure, **go ahead.** (= help yourself; take it; do it)

A: I don't know which one to choose.
B: Well, **make up your mind.** (= make a decision)

A: I'm really sorry but I've forgotten to bring the book you lent me.
B: That's OK. **Never mind.** (= it's OK, don't worry; it's not important)

Exercises

18.1 **It can be difficult to guess the meaning of an idiom, especially if you do not have the full context. Look at these examples (they are not presented on the opposite page).**

1 I **feel like** a drink.
2 They've gone **for good.**
3 I'm **tied-up** all afternoon.
4 She was **pulling my leg** when she said that.
5 I can probably **make do** with a smaller flat.

Here is a fuller context for each of the above idioms. Can you guess the meaning now?

1 A: Are you hungry?
B: No, but I feel like a drink.
2 A: Do you think they'll ever come back to England?
B: No, they've gone for good.
3 A: Do you have a lot of clients to see?
B: Yes, I'm tied-up all afternoon.
4 A: Did she tell you there were no bathrooms in the hotel?
B: Yes. I think she was pulling my leg when she said that.
5 A: Do you really need a large flat?
B: Well, it's nice to have a big place, but I can probably make do with a smaller flat.

18.2 **Replace the underlined words in each dialogue with a suitable idiomatic expression from the opposite page. (But try to answer the questions before looking at the opposite page.) Can you think of similar expressions in your own language?**

1 A: Is Rebecca here?
B: Yes, wait a minute. I'll get her.
2 A: Does it take long to get there?
B: No, I know a quick way.
3 A: Could I borrow this for a minute?
B: Yes, take it.
4 A: Sorry I can't come on Thursday.
B: That's OK. Don't worry.
5 A: What's the matter?
B: Nothing. Why?
6 A: Look after my things for a minute?
B: Yeah, sure.
7 A: Do we have to go now?
B: Yes, hurry up, otherwise we'll be late.
8 A: You'll have to decide soon.
B: Yes I know, but it's very difficult.

18.3 **Complete the expressions in these sentences.**

1 It wasn't a very successful holiday. **For a** ..... the beach was a long way from our hotel; then **to make** ..... **worse,** the car broke down on the third day and we had to walk to the beach. the rest of the time.
2 We **take it in** ..... to look after the dog.
3 She asked me about the times of the trains but I couldn't tell her **off-**.....
4 I don't enjoy parties where you just stand around and make ..... **talk** with lots of people you don't know.
5 We can probably **make** ..... with a three-roomed flat for the moment, but **in the long** ..... we will have to think about moving into a bigger place.

18.4 **Can you find at least three idiomatic expressions in this text. What do they mean?**

I went to stay with my cousin last week. We are the same age but have very little in common: he loves sport and I hate it; I'm mad about music and he's not interested in it. As you can imagine, we didn't have a very good time together, and by about Thursday we were really getting on each other's nerves, so I decided to come home.

19 Make, do, have, take

There are many common expressions with these verbs, and often they are different in other languages, so you need to learn them.

A Things we make

a mistake (= an error)	He **made** a few **mistakes** in the exam.
a meal (= prepare and cook something to eat)	I had to **make** my own **dinner** last night.
money (= become rich)	He **made** a lot of **money** when he worked in America.
friends	It's not always easy to **make friends** in a foreign country.
a decision	We can have the red ones or the green ones, but we must **make a decision** (choose the red or green) before 6 p.m.
a noise	I can't work when the children **make** a lot of **noise**.
progress (U) (= improvement)	Her English is good now; she has **made** a lot of **progress**.

B Things we do

homework (U)	I forgot to **do** my English **homework** last night.
the housework (U) (= cleaning)	My mother **does** all **the housework** in our house.
subjects (= study subjects)	Did you **do English** at school?
a course	I **did a** one-week **course** in word processing.
the shopping (= buy food)	I always **do the shopping** at the weekend.
research (U) (= detailed study in one subject)	He's **doing research** in physics at Rome University.
(someone) a favour (= do something to help someone)	I don't have any coffee. Could you **do me a favour** and lend me some?
something/anything/nothing	I didn't **do anything** last night. That boy has **done nothing** all day

C Things we have

a rest (= relax / do nothing)	They **had a** long **rest** after the game.
food (= eat food) and drink	I **had steak** but Paul just **had a cup of tea**.
a drink (= drink something)	Let's **have a drink** before dinner.
a bath/shower	I always **have a bath** when I get up.
a party	I'm **having a party** for my birthday.
a baby (= be pregnant or give birth)	Mary is **having a baby** next month.
a (nice/great/terrible) time	We **had a very nice time** in Switzerland last year.

D Things we take

an exam (also 'do an exam')	I'm going to **take** four **exams** next month.
a photo	She **took lots of photos** on holiday.
a decision (also 'make')	I'm not very good at **taking decisions**.
a shower (also 'have')	I'm just going to **take a shower** before lunch.
a bus/train/plane/taxi	We were late, so we **took a taxi** to the airport.

Note: Notice the use of **be + adjective** [NOT ~~have + noun~~] in these expressions:

She **was lucky** **I'm hungry** (= I want to eat) **I'm thirsty** (= I want a drink)

Exercises

19.1 **Cross out the incorrect verbs in these sentences. Both verbs may be correct.**

1 I couldn't do/make the homework last night.
2 She's going to make/have a party for her birthday.
3 Did he do/make many mistakes?
4 I often make/do the housework.
5 Did you make/take many photos?
6 When do you take/do your next exam?
7 I want to do/make a course in English.
8 We must take/make a decision soon.
9 He is doing/making research in chemistry.
10 They did/made a lot of noise during the party.

19.2 **Replace the underlined word(s) with a suitable word or expression from the opposite page.**

Example: I want to eat something. *I'm hungry*

1 Let's drink something.
2 I'm going to prepare lunch tomorrow.
3 I'll clean the house at the weekend.
4 I ate a pizza in the restaurant.
5 I want a drink.
6 I usually buy my food on Saturday morning.
7 They both want to become rich.
8 When are they going to decide?
9 I think she enjoyed herself last night.
10 She is definitely improving. How many driving lessons has she had now?

19.3 **Look at the four split pictures. Describe what happened using at least two expressions from the opposite page in each one. Look at the example first.**

Last Friday evening I *had a party but the next-door neighbour complained and said we were making too much noise.*

1

2

3

19.4 **Test yourself. Without looking at the opposite page, write down six things you can:**

Examples:
make ..*a mistake*... do ..*the housework*... have ..*a rest*...

20 Give, keep, break, catch, see

These common verbs have many different meanings (some of them in other parts of this book). This unit looks at some important meanings of these verbs, and in some cases they combine with specific nouns, e.g. give someone a ring, break the law, etc. You can learn these as expressions.

A Give

I'll **give** you a **ring** this evening. (= phone you this evening)
Could you **give** me a **hand**? (= help me)
Please **give my regards to** Paul. (= please say 'hello' to him from me) *or*
If you see Paul, please **give him my regards**.

B Keep

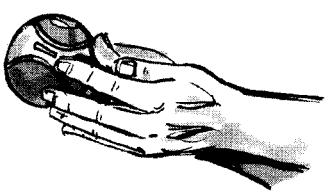
The coat will **keep** you **dry**; the gloves will **keep** your hands **warm**. (= the coat/gloves will help you to stay dry/warm) [keep + noun/pronoun + adjective]
I **keep** losing my glasses; I **keep** getting backache. (= I lose my glasses / get backache again and again) [keep + -ing]
Please **keep in touch**. (= don't forget to stay in contact, e.g. phone or write to me sometimes)
The school **keeps a record** (= clear written information) of the number of times that students are absent.

C Break

He **broke the world record** again. (= created a new record, e.g. He ran the 100 metres in 9.85 seconds, which is 0.1 seconds faster than anyone else.)
Most people **break the law** at some point in their life. (= do something wrong / against the law)
In my first lesson with a new class, I usually do something to **break the ice**. (= to make people feel more relaxed when they first meet strangers)

D Catch

We can **catch a bus** down the road. (= take a bus/travel by bus)
How did you **catch that cold**? (= get that cold/virus)
Catch the ball and throw it to James.



E See

A: This part of the picture doesn't look right compared with the other part.
B: Yes, **I see what you mean**. (= I understand what you are saying)
A: Do you think we need to hire a car?
B: I don't know. **I'll see** (= I'll ask and find out) what the others say.
I don't/can't see the point of practising six hours a day. (= I don't understand the reason for practising six hours a day; I think it's crazy)

Exercises

20.1 **Match the nouns on the right with the verbs on the left to form common word partnerships. (There is one noun you need to use twice.)**

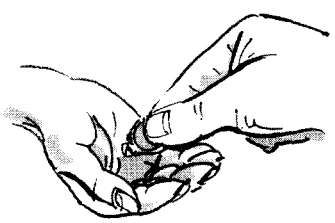
break (2)	keep (2)
catch (3)	give (2)

the ball	the law	a cold
me a hand	a bus	in touch
a record	my regards to ...	

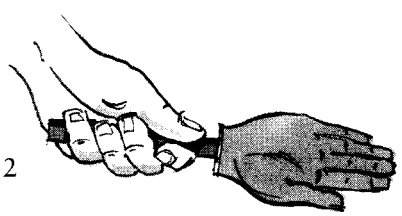
20.2 **Fill the gaps with the correct verb in these sentences.**

1 I don't ..... the point of spending a lot of money on tickets when we can watch the concert on television.
2 These boots should ..... your feet warm and dry.
3 Please ..... my regards to your mother when you go back home.
4 Before we make a decision, let's ..... what Patricia says.
5 If it's too far to walk, we can ..... a bus.
6 I don't know what the problem is, but I ..... getting headaches.
7 When I meet people on holiday I always promise to ..... in touch, but I never do.
8 I didn't really enjoy the holiday because I ..... a cold on the second day and spent most of the week sneezing and blowing my nose.
9 When you organise a conference or a course, I think you need something to ..... the ice, otherwise people are a bit nervous of each other.
10 I don't ..... the point of spending a lot of money on children's clothes because they only last for a few months and then they're too small.

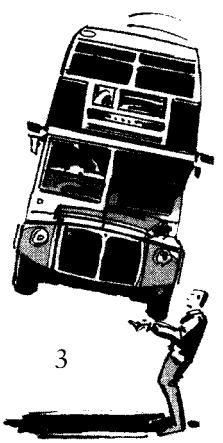
20.3 **What expressions are represented by these pictures? Can you complete the sentences below? Look at the example first.**



Example: I'll ...give you a ring.....

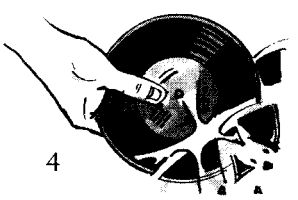


2



3

1



4

1 How did you .....?
2 He agreed to .....
3 I decided to .....
4 He finally .....

20.4 **Look through the key expressions in bold on the opposite page again. Can you translate these expressions into your own language? If so, do you use the same verb in your own language? Concentrate on the ones that are different.**

21 Get: uses and expressions

A Meanings

Get is an informal word, so it is more common in spoken English than written English. It has many meanings. Here are some of the basic ones.

receive	I got a letter this morning. You get a certificate at the end of the course.
obtain (sometimes = buy)	She's trying to get a new job. Where did you get those shoes?
become (= a change in state)	It gets dark very early at this time of year. My hands are getting cold.
arrive	When did you get here? I'll phone when I get home.
fetch	Could you get the books from the cupboard? She went to get the children from school.

B 'Get' + past participle

We sometimes use the more informal 'get' + past participle:

get married (= marry)	She got married in France.
get divorced (= divorce)	They got divorced last year. (= the marriage has ended officially)
get dressed (= dress)	I got dressed quickly and went out.
get undressed (= undress)	He got undressed and got into bed.
get changed (= change clothes)	When I got home I went to my room and got changed.
get lost (= lose one's way)	I got lost on my way to the station.

C Common collocations

Get is so common with certain words (often describing a change of state) that it is a good idea to learn them as expressions.

It's getting	I'm getting
hot/cold	hot/cold
dark/light	tired
late	better/worse
better/worse	hungry
busy	ready (= preparing)

Note: The expression **getting better at** something can describe an improvement in your ability to do something, e.g. I'm getting better at English/swimming; it also describes an improvement in your health, e.g. She was very ill but she's **getting better** now. (≠ **getting worse**)

D Phrasal verbs and special expressions with 'get'

I **get on** very well **with** my sister. (= I have a very good relationship with my sister)
How are you **getting on**? (a) (= a general question: how is life?)
(b) (= what progress are you making, e.g. with your English?)
It's difficult to **get to know** people in a foreign country. (= meet people and make friends)
I want to **get rid of** all my old records. (= sell them or throw them away or give them away)
My alarm wakes me up at 7 a.m., but I don't usually **get up** (= get out of bed) until 7.15.

Exercises

21.1 Write a synonym for *get* in each of these sentences.

1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
2 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute.
3 What time did they get here last night?
4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
5 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full.
6 We normally get five weeks' holiday.
7 This book is getting quite interesting.
8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
9 He sent the letter last week but I didn't get it until yesterday.
10 Do they often get here early?

21.2 Write appropriate sentences using *I'm getting + adjective* or *it's getting + adjective.*

1 A: .....
B: Yes it is. I'll turn on the heating.
2 A: .....
B: OK, let's have something to eat, then.
3 A: .....
B: Yes me too. I'll open the window.
4 A: .....
B: Yes it is. I think I'll go to bed.
5 A: .....
B: Yes. I'll put the lights on.
6 A: .....
B: No you're not. You're getting much better. You understand a lot now.

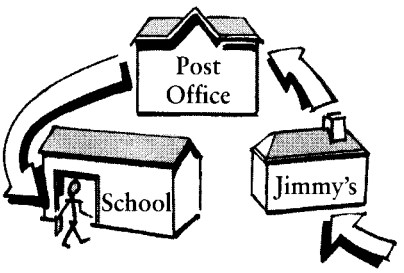
21.3 Rewrite each of these sentences using an expression with *get.* The meaning must stay the same.

1 They're preparing to go out.
They're .....
2 I had to put on my clothes very quickly.
I had to .....
3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?
How do you .....?
4 I have a good relationship with my boss.
I .....
5 We're going to throw away most of these chairs.
We're going to .....
6 Someone told me you're doing a new course. How's it going?
Someone told me you're doing a new course. .....?

21.4 Write down examples of 'get' that you see or hear, then try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to get (= obtain) an idea of the ways in which this important word is used in English.

22 Go: uses and expressions

A Come vs. go



Go usually expresses a movement away from the position the speaker is in now; **come** expresses a movement towards the speaker.

Imagine you are at school. The time is 9.30 a.m.

I had to **go** to Jimmy's to pick up some books; then I **went** to the post office before I **came** to school.

Sometimes the speaker is in one place but imagines that they are already in another place. When Thomas meets Marta in Spain, he invites her to Switzerland. He says:

'Would you like to **come** and visit me in Bern?' (He imagines he is there and so her movement is towards him.)

We can also imagine that the listener is in a different place. Talking to Marta, Thomas says:

'I'll come to your flat at 7.30 p.m.' (She will be at home, so his movement is towards her.)

Note: It is a similar difference between **bring** and **take**:
I think I'll **take** my bike to the match and Peter can **bring** it back here tomorrow.

B Different meanings of 'go'

- When you leave a place in order to do an activity, you often express it either with **go + -ing noun** or **go (out) + for a + noun**. Here are some common examples:

We could go	shopping.	She wants to go (out)	for a walk.
	riding (on horses).		(out) for a drink.
They went	sightseeing.	Let's go	(out) for a drive.
	swimming (also 'for a swim').		(out) for a meal.

- Go is followed by certain adjectives to describe a change in state (usually to a worse state) with the meaning 'become' (**get** is also used with some adjectives).

  My brother's hair is **going grey**, and my father is **going bald**. (= losing all his hair)
  The company **went bankrupt** last year. (= lost all its money and had to stop operating)
  My grandmother is **going deaf**. (deaf = cannot hear)
  He'll go **mad** (= get very angry *infml*) if you wear his jacket.

- It is often used to describe the speed something is travelling (also **do**):

  We were **going** about 80 kph when the accident happened.

- When you want to say/ask if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere:

  Does this bus **go** to (= take me to) the National Gallery?
  I don't think this road **goes** to (= leads to) the station.

C Expressions

I've never tried bungee jumping but I'd love to **have a go**. (= try it)

How's it going? (= How are you? *infml*) And you can use the same question if you want to know if something is easy, difficult, enjoyable, etc. For example, if you are doing an exercise in class, your teacher may ask: **How's it going?** (also **How are you getting on?**)

It's my **go** (also it's **my turn**). This expression is used in games such as chess or monopoly where you move from one player to another, then back.

Exercises

22.1 **Complete the dialogue with suitable forms of these verbs: *come, go, bring, take.* (There are two verbs that can be used in one of the answers.)**

A: What time are you (1)..... to Jim's party this evening?
B: I'm not sure because Christopher is (2)..... here first, and then we'll (3)..... together.
A: Right. Do you know what's happening about the music?
B: Yeah. I'm going to (4)..... some CDs, and Sue is (5)..... her guitar. I'll probably leave quite early though, so do you think you could (6)..... my CDs back here tomorrow?
A: Yeah sure. What time.
B: Well, I want to (7)..... to the shops in the morning. Could you (8)..... before ten?
A: No problem.

22.2 **Replace the underlined words and expressions. The meaning must stay the same.**

1 It's hard to say exactly but I think the lorry was going about 60 kph.
2 Some people aren't interested in scuba diving but I've always wanted to have a go.
3 Come on John, it's your go.
4 Hi Sue. How's it going?
5 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station?
6 A: How's it going?
B: Not bad. We've nearly finished the first exercise.

22.3 **Complete these sentences with an *-ing noun* (e.g. riding), or *for a + noun* (e.g. for a walk).**

1 I went ..... this morning and bought some books and clothes.
2 We didn't have much food in the house so we decided to go out .....
3 Why don't we go ..... in that nice new bar near the square?
4 I wanted to go ..... because I had never been to Venice before, but the others wanted to hire a car and go ..... in the countryside.
5 The pool was at the end of the road , so we decided to go .....
6 There are some stables near where we live with about a dozen horses, and we go ..... most weekends.

22.4 **Complete these sentences with a suitable word. Use a dictionary to help you.**

1 You can wear a hearing aid if you go .....
2 If business doesn't improve they could go .....
3 You can dye (= change the colour of) your hair if you start going .....
4 And you can wear a wig if you go .....
5 If she sees the dog destroying her flowers, she'll go .....

22.5 **Look back at the different meanings of *go* (as verb and noun) on the opposite page. Translate these meanings into your own language. How many meanings use the word for *go* in your language? How many are expressed with a different word or in a different way? Compare with someone who speaks the same language if possible.**

22.6 **Now look up *go* in a good English dictionary. You will find many meanings (including phrasal verbs and idioms), but just concentrate on two or three that you think may be useful to you. Try to learn them. Write down the meanings with example sentences in your notebook. Write a translation as well if you want.**

23 Apologies, excuses, and thanks

A Apologies (= saying sorry)

We can **apologise** (= say sorry) in different ways in different situations:

	Situation
(I'm) sorry. I beg your pardon (*fml*).	A general apology, e.g. you close the door in someone's face, interrupt someone, etc.
I'm very/terribly/so/awfully sorry.	A stronger apology, e.g. you step on someone's foot or take their coat by mistake.
I'm very/really sorry I'm late.	When you are late for an appointment.
Sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long. (= I will talk to you soon)	Someone is waiting to see you and you are busy, e.g. with someone else.

Note: In formal situations (especially in writing), we often use **apologise** and **apology**:
I must **apologise for** (being late). I would like to **apologise for** (the delay. Unfortunately, ...)
Please accept **our apologies** for the mistakes in your order. We tried to ...

B Excuses and promises

If the situation is quite important we usually add an explanation or **excuse** after the apology. An **excuse** is the reason for the apology, which may or may not be true. (If it is not true, it should still be a reason that people will believe.) Here are some common excuses:

I'm sorry I'm late but I **was delayed/held up** at the airport.
I'm sorry I'm late, but my train was **cancelled**. (= the train was timetabled but did not run)

Note: **To be/get delayed** or **be/get held up** (*infml*) both mean to be late because of a problem that is out of your control.

If you are responsible for a problem, you can offer or promise to do something about it.

I'm sorry **about** the mess in here. **I'll clear it up**. (= I'll tidy it up)
I'm sorry about the confusion, but **I'll sort it out**. (= I will solve the problems)

C Reassuring people

When people apologise to us, it is very common to say something to **reassure** them (= tell them that 'everything is OK'), and that we are not angry. These are all common expressions. Note that we often use two of them to emphasise the fact that 'it's OK'.

A: I'm sorry I'm late. B: **That's OK. Don't worry.** *or* **Never mind. It doesn't matter.** *or* **That's OK. No problem.**

D Thanks

These are the most common ways of thanking people in everyday situations:

A: Here's your pen. B: Oh, **thank you / thanks** (very **much**).
A: I'll answer that. B: Oh, **thanks a lot** (*infml*).
A: I'll post those letters for you. B: Oh, thank you. **That's very kind of you.**

If you go to someone's house for dinner, or stay with people in an English-speaking country, you will need to thank them for their **hospitality** (= when people are kind and friendly towards their guests). You could say something like this:

Thank you very much for inviting me. It's been a lovely evening.
Thank you very much for everything. You've been very kind.

Exercises

23.1 **The opposite page includes a number of expressions, or groups of words that often appear together. How many can you remember? Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.**

1 A: I'm ..... sorry.
  B: That's OK.
2 A: I'm sorry ..... late. I'm afraid I got ..... up.
  B: That's OK. No .....
3 A: Sorry to ..... you waiting.
  B: That's OK. Never .....
4 A: I'll carry your bags for you.
  B: Oh, thank you. That's very ..... of you.
5 A: I must ..... for missing the meeting.
  B: That's OK. It doesn't .....
6 A: I'm busy right now but I won't be .....
  B: ..... mind. I'll come back later.
7 A: I ..... your pardon.
  B: It's OK. Don't .....
8 A: I think the boss has got a real problem.
  B: Yes, but don't worry, he'll ..... it out.

23.2 **What could you say in these situations? (If it is an apology, give an explanation/excuse if you think it is necessary.)**

1 You get on a bus at the same time as another person and he/she almost falls over.

.....

2 You arrange to meet some friends in the centre of town but you are twenty minutes late.

.....

3 You are pushing your car into a side road and a stranger offers to help you.

.....

4 A friend borrows a pen from you and then loses it. When they apologise, you want to reassure them.

.....

5 Some English friends invite you to dinner. How could you thank them as you leave their house at the end of the evening?

.....

6 A colleague at work tells you that a number of files are in a mess: papers are all in the wrong order and he doesn't know what to do. When he apologises to you for this mess, how can you reassure him, and what offer can you make?

.....

7 You are unable to go to a meeting you arranged with a client at their office, and now you must write to them to explain.

.....

8 Your company promised to send some information about new products to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and must now write to explain.

.....

23.3 **Do you apologise, reassure, explain and thank people in similar ways in your own language? Read the left-hand page again and think about any differences between English and your language.**

24 Requests, invitations and suggestions

A Requests and replies

We use different expressions to introduce a request – it depends who we are talking to, and the 'size' of the request ('big' or 'small'). These are some of the most common (the 'small' requests first), with suitable positive and negative replies.

A: **Could you** pass me the salt?
B: Yes, **sure.**

A: **Could I (possibly)** borrow your dictionary?
B: Yes, **of course.** *or* Yes, **help yourself** (= yes, take it) *or* **Go ahead.**

A: Do you think you could possibly lend me two or three pounds?
B: Yes sure *or* I'm afraid I can't.
I'm afraid not.
I wish I could but, / I'm sorry but, | I haven't any money on me at all.

A: **I was wondering if I could (possibly)** leave work half an hour early today. *or* **Would you mind if I left** work ...
B: Yeah, **no problem.** *or* Well **I'd rather you didn't (actually)**, because ...

B Invitations and replies

A: **Would you like to** go out this evening?
B: Yeah **great / lovely / I'd love to** *or* **I'm sorry I can't.**

A: We're going to a restaurant and **we were wondering if you'd like to** come with us?
B: **I'd love to, but I'm afraid** I can't.
Oh, **I'm afraid** I have to look after my younger sister.

C Suggestions and replies

Here are some common ways of asking for and making **suggestions** (= ideas for things to do/say/make, etc.) and suitable replies.

Asking for suggestions
What shall we do tonight? **Where shall we go** this evening?

Making suggestions
How about (or **what about**) **going** to the cinema? (*Note:* How/What about + -ing)
We could go to the leisure centre and watch the basketball.
Why don't we try that new club in the main square?

Responding
Yeah, **great / fine / OK / that's a good idea.**
Yeah, **if you like.** (= if you want to go, then I am happy to go)
Yes, **I don't mind.** (= I have no preference)
I think **I'd rather** (= **I would prefer to**) go out for a meal.

Note: In this situation, learners often say 'it's the same for me'. We don't use this expression in English; we say **I don't mind.**

Exercises

24.1 **Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.**

A: Do you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about go to see a film?
B: No, actually I think I'd rather to stay at home and do my homework.
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?
B: Yeah good.
A: Great. What film shall we go to?
B: For me it's the same.

24.2 **Complete these dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.**

1 A: Could you ..... open that window? It's very hot in here.
B: Yeah, ...
2 A: Clive and Sally are here at the moment and we were ..... if you'd like to come over and join us for a meal this evening?
B: Yes, I'd .....
3 A: What ..... we do this evening?
B: I don't know really. Any ideas?
A: Why ..... go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.
B: Yeah, that's a .....
4 A: OK. Where ..... we go on Saturday?
B: ..... going to the beach if the weather is good?
A: Yeah. Or we ..... try that new sports centre just outside town.
B: Mmm. I think I'd ..... go to the beach.
A: Yeah OK, if you .....
5 A: What ..... you like to do this weekend?
B: I don't ..... You decide.

24.3 **Here are eight requests, invitations or suggestions. Respond to each one as fast as you can with a suitable reply. If possible, do this activity with someone else: one of you asks the questions, the other answers.**

1 Could I borrow a pen for a minute?
2 Do you think you could post a letter for me?
3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me?
4 Would you like to go out this evening?
5 I've got some tickets for a concert of classical music and I was wondering if you'd like to go with me?
6 How about going to a football match at the weekend?
7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English for an hour?
8 We could invite some other people from our English class to meet us as well.

24.4 **There will be many situations when you make requests, invitations and suggestions in your own language, and respond to the requests, invitations and suggestions of others. Try using English expressions in place of your first language. If your friends don't understand, you can teach them a bit of English.**

25 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

A Asking someone for their opinion

What do you think of his new book?
How do you feel about working with the others?
What are your feelings (*pl*) about the change in the timetable?
What's your honest opinion of that painting?

B Giving your opinion

I think Charles had the best idea.
I don't think he knew very much about the subject.
Personally, I think his first book is terrible.
In my opinion we should sell the old car and buy a new one.
As far as I'm concerned the whole evening was a waste of time.

Note:

- If you want to say something isn't a good idea you make 'think' negative: I **don't think** it's a good idea. [NOT ~~I think it's not a good idea.~~]
- **Personally** and **As far as I'm concerned** are more common in spoken English.
- **As far as I'm concerned** can mean, 'this is my opinion and I don't care what others think'.

C Giving the opinion of others

According to one of the journalists on television (= in the opinion of this journalist), the Prime Minister knew nothing about it.
The newspaper says that the Prime Minister knew weeks ago. (*Note:* we still use the verb say when referring to a written opinion)

D Agreeing with someone

We often agree by continuing with the same opinion or adding to it.

A: I think we should concentrate on this one project.
B: Yes, it's better to do one thing well than two things badly.

But if we want to make it clear we agree, we can use these expressions:

Yes, I agree (with you). (*Note:* **agree** is a verb in English. [NOT ~~I am agree~~])
Yes, I think you're right.

E Disagreeing with someone

It is very common in English to begin with a short expression of agreement, and then give a different opinion. Here are some expressions used to introduce the disagreement:

Yes,	perhaps / maybe / possibly,	but don't you think ...
	that's true,	but I'm not sure that ...
	you could be right,	but don't forget ...

If you disagree strongly with someone you can say: I'm afraid I totally disagree (with you).

Note: When we want to disagree but not completely, we can use these phrases:

Yes, I partly agree (with you), but ...
I agree to some extent / a certain extent, but ...

Exercises

25.1 **Complete these sentences in at least three different ways to ask people their opinion.**

1 ..... the proposed changes?
2 ..... the new building?
3 ..... the transport system?
4 ..... the new divorce law?
5 ..... the government's decision to make parents responsible?

25.2 **Fill the gaps with the correct word. (One word only.)**

1 A: What did you think ..... it?
B: Well, ... I didn't like it.
2 ..... to the radio, we won't know the result until tomorrow morning.
3 I agreed with him to a certain .....
4 As far as I'm ....., we need to buy a new photocopier immediately.
5 I'm afraid I ..... disagree with you.

25.3 **Rewrite these sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. The meaning must stay the same.**

1 <u>In my opinion</u> you can't learn a language in three months.
.....
2 <u>I think</u> the club needs to buy new players.
.....
3 Yes, I <u>think you're right</u>.
.....
4 <u>According to</u> the newspaper, terrorists started the fire.
.....
5 I agree with her <u>to some extent</u>.
.....

25.4 **Continue these short conversations. You can either agree with the point of view and add to the argument; or introduce a different point of view. If you introduce a different point of view, remember to start with a short expression of agreement first.**

1 A: A lot of women are quite happy to stay at home and be housewives.
B: .....
2 A: The state shouldn't give money to people who don't want to work.
B: .....
3 A: People from developing countries need all the help we can give them.
B: .....
4 A: We should think about legalising cannabis.
B: .....
5 A: It can be very dangerous if people become too nationalistic.
B: .....

26 Specific situations and special occasions

You will know many of these expressions but may not be sure exactly how they are used.

A Greetings: 'hello'

Hi/Hello. How are you?	This is the normal greeting when you meet someone you know. (also: **How's it going?** *infml*) The usual reply is: **Fine thanks. And you?** Or possibly, **Not bad. How about you?**
Good morning, good afternoon, good evening	These expressions are used at different times of the day (most people say **Good morning** until lunchtime). British people do not usually say **Good day**, but Australians do.
How do you do?	For formal situations when you meet someone for the first time. The reply can be the same (How do you do?) or **Pleased/nice to meet you.**

B Farewells: 'goodbye'

Nice to meet you. (Nice to have met you.)	For formal situations, when you say goodbye to someone you have just met for the first time.
Bye. See you later.	If you plan to see someone you know later the same day.
Bye. See you soon.	When you know you will see them again, but have no specific plans to meet them.
Goodnight	When you say goodbye to someone late at night, or if you (or they) are going to bed.
A: Have a nice weekend. B: Yes. Same to you.	The statement and reply when you say goodbye to a colleague/friend at work, school or college on Friday afternoon.

C Happy occasions and celebrations

Happy Birthday	To someone on his/her birthday. You can also say **Many Happy Returns**, and write either expression in a birthday card.
Happy/Merry Christmas	To someone just before or on Christmas Day. You also write this in a card.
Happy New Year	To someone at the beginning of the year.
Congratulations	To someone who has just done something, e.g. passed an exam or got a job. In many situations we can also say **Well done.**

D Special conventions

Excuse me	(a) To get someone's attention (b) When you want to get past, e.g. in a crowded place (c) To tell others you are going to leave the room.
Sorry	(a) To say **sorry**, e.g. you stand on someone's foot. You could also say **I beg your pardon** in this situation. And (b) When you want someone to repeat what they said.
Cheers	To express good wishes when you have a drink with other people. Informally it can also mean 'goodbye' (also **cheerio**) and 'thank you'.
Good luck	To wish someone well before a difficult situation, e.g. a job interview, an exam, a driving test, etc.
Bless you	To someone when they sneeze. They can reply by saying **Thank you.**

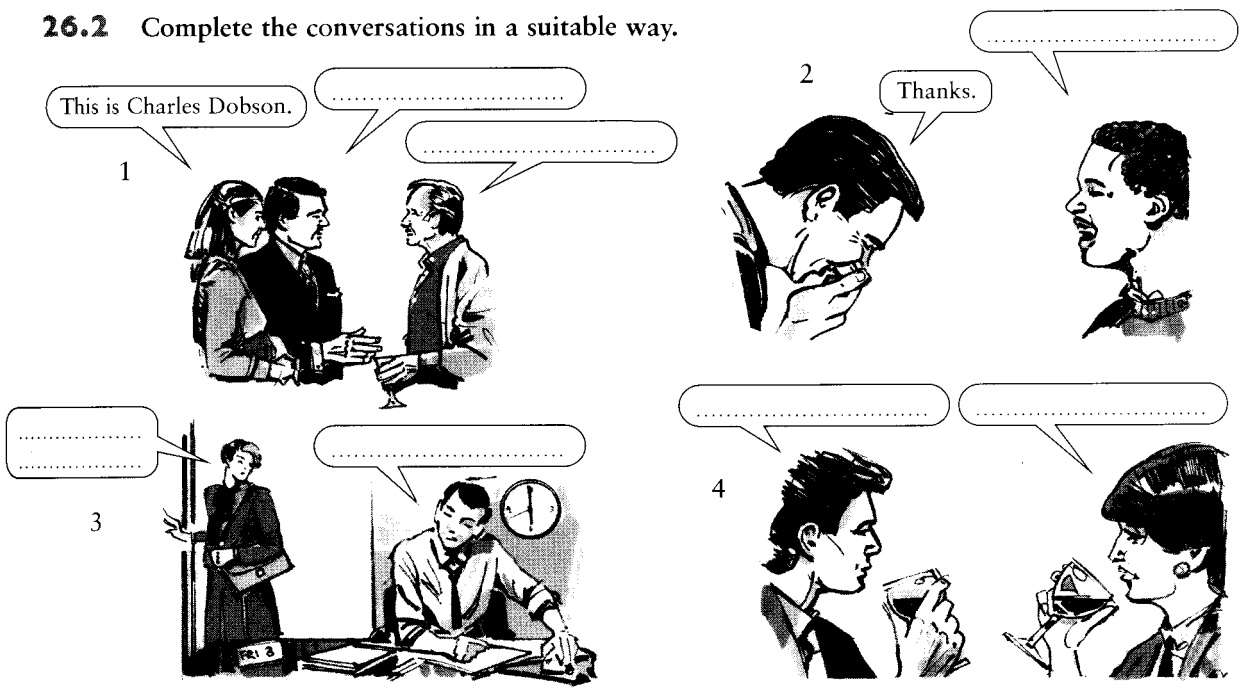
Note: In English there is no special expression when people start eating. If you want to say something, you can use the French expression **Bon appetit**, but it is not common.

Exercises

26.1 **What message could you say on the phone or write in a card to these people?**

1 A friend. Next week is 25 December.
2 A friend who is 21 tomorrow.
3 A friend on January 1st or soon after.
4 A very good friend who has just passed some important exams.
5 A friend who is going to take his driving test in three days' time.
6 A friend you know you are going to meet in the next few days/weeks.

26.2 **Complete the conversations in a suitable way.**



26.3 **What could you say in these situations?**

1 You are in a meeting. Someone enters the room and says you have an important telephone call. What do you say as you leave?
2 Someone says something to you but you didn't hear all of it. What do you say?
3 You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say?
4 You are in a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them?
5 You are staying with some English friends. What do you say to them when you leave the room in the evening to go to bed?
6 You are in the street. A woman walks past you and at the same time something falls out of her bag. She has her back to you. What do you say?
7 A friend tells you they have just won a competition.
8 Another friend is going for a job interview this afternoon.

26.4 **Here are some more special expressions. When do we use them and do you have equivalent expressions in your own language?**

hard luck say 'cheese' watch out I've no idea

27 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns

A Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns (e.g. information):

- don't have a plural form (informations);
- are used with a singular verb (the information ~~are~~ is);
- cannot be used with the indefinite article 'a/an'. (I want ~~an~~ some information)

These uncountable nouns are often countable in other languages. Look at them carefully.

He refused to give me more **information** about the hotel.
She gave me lots of **advice** about the best dictionary to buy.
We are going to sell all the **furniture**. (= tables, chairs, armchairs, desks, etc.)
My **knowledge** of German is very limited.
You need a lot of **equipment** for camping (e.g. tent, sleeping bag, things for cooking, etc.)
She is making good **progress** in her English. (= her English is improving / getting better)
We had fabulous **weather** in Italy.
The teacher gave us a lot of **homework** last night.
I never take much **luggage** (= bags and suitcases) when I go on holiday.

B In dictionaries

Countable nouns are usually shown with a (C) after them; uncountable nouns have (U) after them; and some nouns can be countable with one meaning and uncountable in another.

book (C)	The books are on the table.
housework (U)	I did a lot of housework this morning.
hair (U)	My hair is getting very long and untidy. I need to get it cut.
hair (C)	There is a hair on my dinner plate.

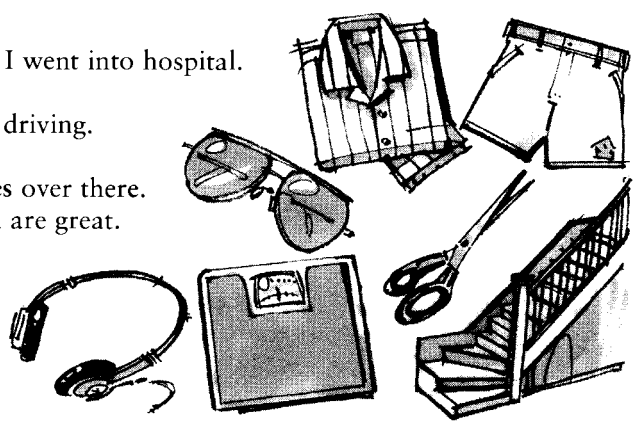
C Plural nouns

Plural nouns (e.g. trousers):

- only have a plural form and cannot be used with 'a/an' (~~a trouser~~ trousers)
- usually have a plural verb (the trousers ~~is~~ are ...)
- some plural nouns can be made singular using **a pair of**, e.g. a pair of trousers/sunglasses

Other words which are usually plural include:

I bought a pair of **jeans** yesterday.
These **shorts** are too long.
I bought a new pair of **pyjamas** when I went into hospital.
The **scissors** are on the table.
When it's sunny I wear **sunglasses** for driving.
These **stairs** are dangerous.
You can weigh yourself on those **scales** over there.
The **headphones** on my new walkman are great.



Exercises

27.1 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1 I need some informations.
2 We had a lovely weather.
3 The furnitures are very old.
4 I'm looking for a new jeans.
5 Your hairs are getting very long.
6 Do you have a scissors?
7 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday.
8 Do you think she's making a progress with her English?
9 These trousers is too small.
10 She gave me some good advices.

27.2 **Are these nouns countable, uncountable, or countable with one meaning and uncountable with another? Use a dictionary to help you. If they can be countable and uncountable, write sentence examples to show the difference.**

butter	cup	housework	insurance
spaghetti	coffee	grape	money
television	coin	work	travel

27.3 **Complete these dialogues using a suitable plural noun or uncountable noun from the opposite page. Make sure the form of each word is correct. Look at the example first.**

Example: A: It's too hot for jeans.
B: You need a pair of shorts.

1 A: I have to cut this paper into three pieces.
B: You need .....
2 A: I can't see because the sun is in my eyes.
B: You need .....
3 A: I don't know what to do when I leave school.
B: You need .....
4 A: My room looks so empty.
B: You need .....
5 A: I want to find out how much I weigh.
B: You need .....
6 A: I can't play my music loud because my mother always complains.
B: You need .....
7 A: I'm starting to feel cold in bed.
B: You need .....
8 A: My teacher said my English wasn't getting any better.
B: You need .....

27.4 **Read this text from a radio broadcast. Can you find two more uncountable nouns and two more plural nouns? (These words are not included on the opposite page.)**

> Traffic has been bad throughout the day because of roadworks on the A40 at Uxbridge which are causing long delays for motorists heading into London. The authorities are advising drivers to avoid the area if at all possible, and we will, of course, keep you informed of the situation with the latest news every half hour, so don't go away.

28 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive

A Verb + -ing form

Some verbs are followed by an **-ing** form if the next word is a verb:

enjoy **finish** **imagine**
(don't) **mind** **can't stand** (= hate) **feel like** (= want/desire *infml*)
give up (= stop doing something for the last time)
avoid (If you **avoid** something, you keep away from it; if you **avoid** someone, you stay away from them. You do these things by intention.)
admit (If you **admit** something, you agree it is true, and usually it is something bad.)
deny (= the opposite of admit; in other words, you say something isn't true)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of the more difficult verbs.

I stayed in last night but I feel **like going** out this evening.
At the police station, he **admitted** steal**ing** the woman's money but **denied** hitt**ing** her.
Cigarettes are very expensive, so he's decided to **give up** smok**ing**.
I've lived in New Zealand all my life; I can't **imagine** liv**ing** anywhere else.
Some people **can't stand** work**ing** at the weekend but I **don't mind**. (= it's not a problem)
I always try to **avoid** driv**ing** through the city centre during the rush hour.

B Verb + infinitive

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive if the next word is a verb:

offer **want** **seem** **decide** **hope** **forget**
mean (= intend, plan) **expect** (= think or believe something will happen)
manage (= be able to do something, even when it is difficult)
refuse (= say 'no' when someone asks you for something)
promise (= say you will definitely do something, or that something will definitely happen)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of some of the verbs.

We were very busy but we **managed** to finish before 6 p.m.
It was getting late and there were no buses so I **offered** to take them home in my car.
He hit one of the boys but he didn't **mean** to do it; I **meant** to go but I forgot.
I asked her to carry the suitcases but she **refused** to help.
I don't **expect** to see them before next week.
They **promised** to phone as soon as they arrive.

C Verb + infinitive without 'to'

There are two common verbs followed by an object + infinitive without 'to'. They are: **make** someone do something, and **let** someone do something.

My parents **make** me do my homework every night. (= they **force** me **to do** my homework)
My parents **let** me go out after I've done my homework. (= they **allow**/permit me **to go** out)

D Verb + -ing form or infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an -ing form or infinitive, but the meaning is very similar, e.g. **love**, **like**, **hate**, and **prefer**. But with some verbs there is a difference in meaning:

I **remembered** to buy a present for my brother. (= I <u>didn't forget</u> to buy a present)
I **remember** buying her a present. (= it's in my memory; it happened and I remember)

Exercises

28.1 Cross out the incorrect answers.

1 We decided to work / working during our holiday.
2 She promised to help / helping us.
3 I don't feel like to go / going for a walk at the moment.
4 He forgot to take / taking the cake out of the oven.
5 Do you really hate to drive / driving when it's wet?
6 I can't imagine to eat / eating pasta every day of the week.
7 Most of the time she prefers to work / working on her own.
8 I don't remember to go / going to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
9 He hopes to finish / finishing his thesis by the end of the month.
10 I don't mind to help / helping you if I'm not busy.

28.2 Complete part c) of each number in a suitable way.

1 Most people want:
a) to be rich b) to get married c) .....
2 A lot of people can't stand:
a) getting wet b) getting up early c) .....
3 Most people enjoy:
a) going to parties b) lying on a beach c) .....
4 On hot days most people don't feel like:
a) working b) eating big meals c) .....
5 Most people expect
a) to be happy b) to find a job they will like c) .....
6 A lot of people don't mind:
a) washing-up b) ironing c) .....
7 Some parents make their teenage children:
a) wear certain clothes b) do housework c) .....
8 Other parents let their teenage children:
a) wear what they like b) stay out all night c) .....

Now think about each of the above statements. Are they true, and are they (or were they) true of you? If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

28.3 Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for a hotel, but she must pay for the air fare and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present and pay him back in six months. But first they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

1 What did Julie's father let her do when she was 17? He let .....
2 And what did he offer to do? He offered .....
3 But what did he refuse to do? He refused .....
4 In return what did Julie promise? She promised .....
5 What did the three girls decide? They decided .....

29 Verb patterns

A Verb + object

subject	*verb*	*object*	
She	proposed (= suggested *fml*)	the plan	at the meeting.
The travel agent	confirmed (= said it was sure)	my reservation.	
They	discussed (= talked about)	the film	for hours.

B Verb + object + question word

subject	*verb*	*object*	*question word*	
I	told	them	where	to find it.
She	asked	us	why	we wanted it.
He	showed	everyone	what	to do.

Note: A common mistake is: 'He explained me what to do.' After explain + question word, there is no direct object. We say: 'He explained what to do / what I had to do.'

C Verb + object + infinitive

subject	*verb*	*object*	*infinitive*	
She	asked	everyone	to leave.	
They	told	us	to wait	outside.
The doctor	advised	him	to stay	in bed.
I	wanted	the others	to help	us.
He	persuaded	me	to go	to the party.
She	warned	them	to be	careful.

persuade = make somebody change their mind.
John wanted to get an IBM but I **persuaded** him to buy an Apple Macintosh.
warn = tell someone of a possible danger, and often tell them what they should(n't) do.
She **warned** the children not to swim near the rocks.

D Verb + (object) + (that) clause

subject	*verb*	*object*	*(that) clause*
He	said	–	(that) it was good.
She	suggested	–	(that) we go together.
He	insisted	–	(that) we work until 5 p.m.
They	told	him	(that) it was expensive.
She	warned	me	(that) it was dangerous.

insist = demand something strongly and not accept refusal.
She **insisted** that I stay with them (= she did not want me to stay in another place).
We can also use **-ing** after **suggest**, e.g. She suggested going there together.

E Verb + (object) + preposition

He **insisted on** paying for the hotel. (*Note:* use the -ing form of the verb after a preposition)
They **blamed** the driver **for** the accident. (= they said he was responsible / it was his **fault**)
He **complained** (to the manager) **about** the bad service. (= he said he was not satisified)
The manager **apologised** (to the customer) **for** the bad service. (= the manager said sorry)

Exercises

29.1 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences. (Most are the result of translating from the first language.)**

1 She said me the film was terrible.
2 He told it's not possible.
3 Can you explain me what to do?
4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
5 Can we discuss about my report?
6 I want that he leaves.
7 I need to confirm me the booking.
8 I apologised my mistake.
9 She advised me buy a dictionary.
10 She insisted to pay.

29.2 **What is the missing verb in each of these sentences? (There may be more than one answer.)**

1 I didn't understand how the photocopier worked but she kindly ..... me.
2 She wasn't satisfied with her course, so she went to see the Principal to ..... .
3 It was a terrible thing to say to him, but she refused to ..... .
4 He knew it was dangerous but he didn't ..... me.
5 I didn't want to go at first but she ..... me.
6 She advised them to stay here but they ..... on going.
7 I booked the room by phone but they asked me to ..... it in writing.
8 I don't think it was my fault but they still ..... me.
9 She didn't know the way but I ..... how to get there.
10 They watched the film together and then they ..... it in small groups.

29.3 **Complete these sentences in a logical way.**

1 Some of us were getting hungry so I suggested .....
2 They were making a lot of noise next door and I told .....
3 She went to that new Italian restaurant and said .....
4 We read the book for homework and discussed .....
5 The streets are quite dangerous at night so I insisted .....
6 It was only a few minutes to the beach , but I still couldn't persuade .....
7 She wasn't feeling very well and the teacher advised .....
8 The whole team played badly but most of the newspapers have blamed ....
9 The water there can make you ill and I warned .....
10 If you don't understand the instructions, someone will explain .....

29.4 **When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. So, look at the grammar information about a word in a good dictionary, and always look carefully at the example sentences, then write one or two of your own. Do it for these three examples. What patterns from the opposite page are used after these verbs?**

order recommend prevent

30 Adjectives

A 'Scale' and 'limit' adjectives

(absolutely) terrible awful dreadful	(very) bad	OK	(very) good	(absolutely) marvellous wonderful great terrific

We can use very before 'scale' adjectives e.g. very good, very bad; we can use **absolutely** before 'limit' adjectives e.g. absolutely awful, absolutely great. (You cannot say 'very wonderful'; you cannot say 'absolutely good'.) Here are some more examples.

Scale	*Limit*	*Scale*	*Limit*
big	huge/enormous	hot	boiling
small	tiny	cold	freezing
tired	exhausted	crowded (= full of people)	packed
interesting	fascinating	frightened (= afraid of sth.)	terrified
surprised	astonished	hungry	starving (*infml*)

B Adjectives ending -ing and -ed

There is a large group of adjectives which can have an **-ing** or **-ed** ending. The **-ing** ending is used on adjectives which describe a person or thing or situation; the **-ed** ending is on adjectives which describe the effect this person, thing or situation has on us.

It was such a **boring** party; I was **bored**, and so was everyone else.
I didn't think the film was very **frightening**, but my younger brother was **frightened** by it.
I think the students are **depressed** largely because the weather is so **depressing**.

Other examples of common adjectives ending **-ing** and **-ed** include:

surprising/surprised	exciting/excited
exhausting/exhausted	terrifying/terrified
confusing/confused	tiring/tired
frightening/frightened	fascinating/fascinated
astonishing/astonished	embarrassing/embarrassed
interesting/interested	disappointing/disappointed

Look at these examples to help you with the meaning of some of these words.

John wasn't very good at maths, so I was very **surprised** when he passed the exam. And I was **astonished** when I discovered that he'd got 98%.

In London there are lots of streets with the same name and it's very **confusing** if you are a tourist. Another problem is that it's a huge place. We walked everywhere on our last trip and we were **exhausted** at the end of each day. But it's an **exciting** city, with so much to do.

It's been a terrible week for Greg. He was very **disappointed** last Saturday because he played badly in an important match. Then on Monday, his girlfriend left him for someone else, so he's very **depressed** at the moment.

One of our teachers can never remember our names. It seemed funny at first, but now it's getting a bit **embarrassing**.

Exercises

30.1 Write at least one limit adjective for these scale adjectives. Cover the opposite page before you begin.

big	.....	hot	.....
small	.....	cold	.....
tired	.....	bad	.....
surprised	.....	hungry	.....
interesting	.....	frightened	.....

30.2 Rewrite this postcard using limit adjectives where possible to give a more positive and/or more extreme effect.

Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is good – we've got a big room and the food is nice. It's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else – it's very crowded. But the sea is actually cold – that's because it's the Atlantic coast, I suppose.
Tomorrow we're going to walk to a small seaside village about ten kilometres from here – I imagine I'll be really tired by the time we get back, but it does sound an interesting place and I'm looking forward to it.
I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.
Until then, love, Benita

30.3 Complete these dialogues using the correct limit adjective in the correct form (*-ing* or *-ed*).

1 A: Was it very tiring?
  B: Yes we were absolutely .....
2 A: I was very interested in her talk.
  B: Yes it was absolutely .....
3 A: Maria said it was a frightening film.
  B: Yes it was absolutely .....
4 A: It was a surprising decision, wasn't it?
  B: Yes I was absolutely .....
5 A: Was it very cold?
  B: Oh yes, it was .....

30.4 Can you think of an adjective from the opposite page to describe how the people felt in each of these situations?

1 They walked about ten miles in the morning, then spent the afternoon helping some friends to cut down some trees.
2 From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach.
3 They decided to wear jeans to the party but when they arrived everyone else was wearing formal evening dress.
4 One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station.
5 When they got home there was a new car outside their house. They went inside and there was a new sofa in the lounge and a new dining table in the dining room.

31 Prepositions: place

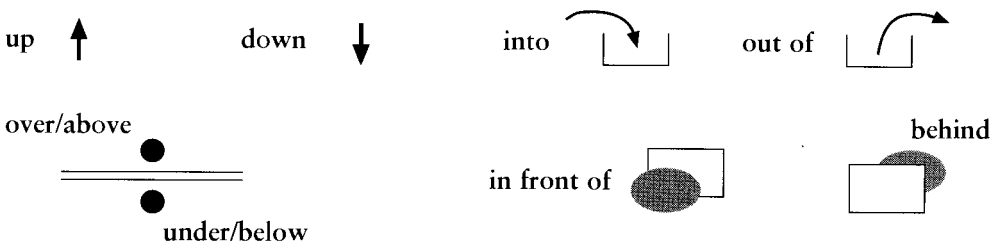
A At, On, In

Learn these rules.

at a point/place	x	e.g. I met her at the bus stop. She lives at 43 Duke Road. He's at work (i.e. not at home). They're at a party tonight.
on a surface	_x_	e.g. The book is on the desk. We sat on the floor.
in an area or space	(x)	e.g. Malawi is a country in Africa. She lives in Milan. He's in the kitchen. The key's in my pocket. Put it in the box.

B Opposites

Some prepositions form pairs of opposites.

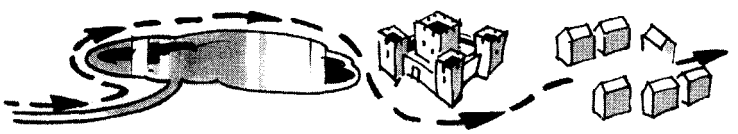


Note: **Over/above** are often synonymous, so are **under/below**, but **over** and **under** sometimes suggest movement.

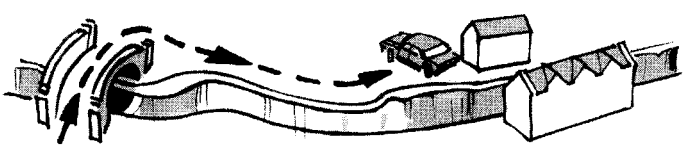
When we flew **over** Paris we couldn't see much because we were **above** the clouds. **Below** us was the river which ran **under** the bridge.

C Here are some more common prepositions of place

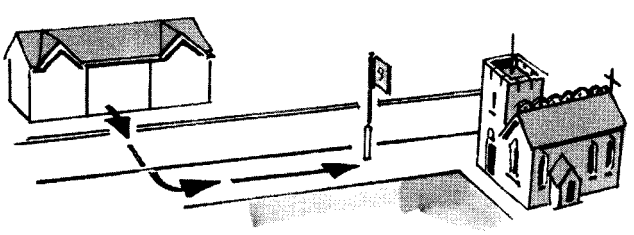
We drove **along** the river, **round** the lake, **past** the old castle, and **through** the village.



We came **over** the bridge, and parked **next to** the house, which was **opposite** the hotel.



Our house is **between** two shops and it is **near** a bus stop; you just go **across** the road and walk **along** the other side **towards** the church.



Exercises

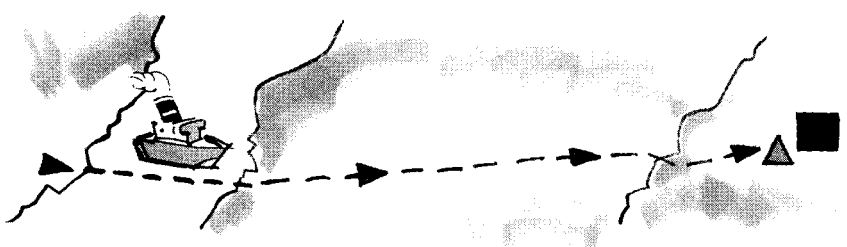
31.1 Fill the gaps with *at*, *on* or *in*.

1 I put the books ..... the table.
2 The butter is ..... the fridge.
3 We saw them ..... the bus stop.
4 I met her ..... a party.
5 She works ..... Barcelona.
6 The dictionary is ..... my desk.
7 I sat ..... the bed and wrote the letter.
8 I left my books ..... school.
9 There was still a lot of snow ..... the ground when I arrived.
10 He lives ..... a very nice area.

31.2 Answer the questions using the opposite preposition.

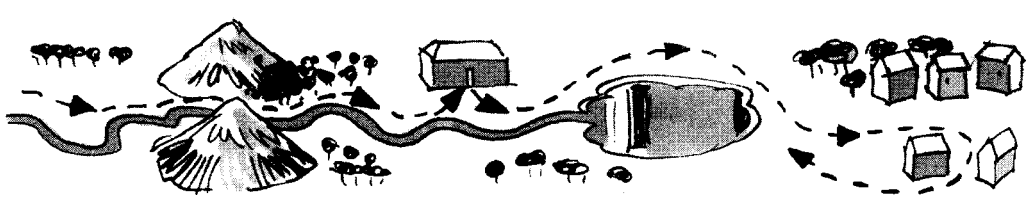
1 Was he standing in front of the picture?
No, ...
2 Is it up the hill to his house?
No, ...
3 Did you climb over the fence?
No, ...
4 Did you see her get into the car?
No, ...
5 Did you fly below the clouds?
No, ...
6 Does she live in the flat above you?
No, ...

31.3 Look at the map and complete the description of the route you took on the first day.



We took the boat (1)..... the channel, then we drove (2)..... France and (3)..... Switzerland, where we spent the first night (4)..... a small town quite (5)..... Lucerne.

Now look at the diagram and complete the description of the second day.



The next morning we walked (6)..... a river which ran (7)..... two mountains. We had lunch (8)..... a small restaurant and then walked (9)..... the lake and (10)..... the small town of Stans, before going back.

32 Adverbs: frequency and degree

A Frequency (= how often)

always — frequently — regularly / quite often — sometimes — occasionally — seldom (*fml.*) / hardly ever / rarely — never

Note:

- Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb with the exception of the verb 'to be':

  I **occasionally** see them. They **hardly ever** go to the cinema now.
  She is **often** late these days. I've **never** tried Korean food.

- **Sometimes, occasionally** and **often** can go at the beginning or end of the sentence:

  They go to the zoo **quite often**. I play tennis **occasionally**.
  Sometimes my parents give me money. **Occasionally** I work at the weekend.

B Degree (= how much)

positive — *OK* — *negative*

extremely / incredibly — very / pretty — rather — quite — fairly — slightly / a bit — fairly — quite — rather — very / pretty — extremely / incredibly

Note:

- **Rather** is more *formal* than the other words and often describes a negative situation:

  We had **rather** bad weather. The food was **rather** expensive.

- For a positive situation, **rather** often indicates that something is better than we expected:

  Her cooking is **rather** good actually. (I didn't expect that, so it was a very nice surprise.

- **Incredibly, pretty** and **a bit** are *informal* and mostly used in spoken English; **a bit** is mostly used before negative adjectives (not positive ones) or adjectives with a negative prefix.

  The food was **pretty** good. (= nearly 'very' good) That Ferrari is **incredibly** expensive.
  The hotel was **a bit** disappointing, actually. I thought she looked **a bit** unhappy.

C Almost/nearly

It's **almost/nearly** five o'clock. (= it is probably about 4.57)
I **almost/nearly** lost the match. (= I won but only just; only by a small amount)

Note: almost the same NOT ~~quite the same~~

D Hardly

Hardly + a positive often has the same meaning as **almost** + a negative:

I **hardly** had **anything** to eat for lunch. (= I had almost nothing)
She could **hardly** walk after her operation. (= she almost couldn't walk)

Note: In the above sentences you can also use **barely** with the same meaning.

Exercises

32.1 **Organise these mixed up words into correct sentences.**

1 brother often us Sunday visits on my
2 me ever phones she hardly
3 have leg my broken never I
4 visit saw I hardly his him during
5 get occasionally I early up
6 always she Monday on early is work for a

32.2 **Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has the same meaning.**

1 She <u>seldom</u> goes to conferences now.
2 I can <u>barely</u> remember the first house we lived in.
3 There were <u>almost</u> fifty people there, you know.
4 I thought it was <u>a bit</u> disappointing, didn't you?
5 I'm afraid I'm <u>extremely</u> busy next week.

32.3 **Respond to these sentences using 'rather' to show surprise. (You can also add 'actually' at the end of the sentence.)**

1 A: Was it a boring evening?
B: No, it .....
2 A: Were the children very noisy?
B: No, they .....
3 A: I've heard it's a very dirty town. Is that true?
B: No, it .....
4 A: Was the weather awful?
B: No, it .....

32.4 **Change the underlined adverbs to make the first two sentences slightly more positive, and the last three sentences slightly less negative.**

1 I thought they were <u>very</u> good.
2 He's been getting <u>quite</u> good marks in his exams.
3 John said the flat was <u>very</u> small.
4 They said it was <u>fairly</u> boring.
5 The clothes were <u>very</u> expensive.

32.5 **Put a frequency adverb into each of these sentences to make a true sentence about yourself. Make sure you put the adverb in the correct place. Compare your answers with someone else if possible.**

1 I buy clothes I don't like.
2 I clean my shoes.
3 I remember my dreams.
4 I give money to people in the street if they ask me for money.
5 I speak to strangers on buses and trains.
6 I'm rude to people who are rude to me.

Now think about each of your answers to the above sentences. Do you think they are:

a) very typical? b) fairly typical? c) slightly unusual? d) extremely unusual?

If you compared your answers with someone else, how would you describe their answers?

33 Time and sequence

A When and as soon as

I'll phone my uncle **when** I get home. / **As soon as** I get home I'll phone my uncle.
When you've finished you can go home. / You can go home **as soon as** you've finished.

Note: The meaning is the same, but **as soon as** suggests it is more *immediate*. Note also that both items can be followed by the present tense or the present perfect (but not *will*).

B Two things happening at the same time

Pat wrote some letters **while** I cooked the dinner. (two actions in the same period of time)
The accident happened **while** I was on my way to work. (Here there is a longer action 'on my way to work' and a shorter action 'the accident'. We can also use **when** or **as** here.)
I saw him (**just**) **as** I came out of the office. (For two very short actions we use **as** (not **while**), and we often use **just as** to emphasise that these two short actions happened at exactly the same moment: He opened the door **just as** I touched the handle.)

C One thing after another

We met the others in the cafe, and **then** we went to the match.
I finished my homework, **after that** I played a couple of computer games.
After my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.
We had something to eat **before** we went out.

Note: We can also follow before and after with an **-ing** form:

After visiting New York, I ... We had something to eat **before** going out.

D A sequence of actions

We had a great holiday. **First of all** we spent a few days in St. Moritz. **Then / After that** we drove down to the Italian Riviera and stayed in Portofino for a week. **Finally**, we went back to Switzerland and visited some old friends in Lucerne.

Note:

- If one action happens soon after the other, we often use **afterwards** in place of **after (that)**: First of all we met the others for a meal, and **afterwards** we went to the disco.
- If you want to say that something happened after a lot of time and/or a lot of problems, you can use **eventually** or **in the end.**

  We took several wrong turnings and the traffic was awful, but **eventually** we got there.

E A sequence of reasons

There are different combinations of words and phrases we can use here:

SON: Why can't we go away this weekend?
DAD: **First(ly)** because I'm busy this weekend. **Second(ly)** you've got a lot of school work to do. And **third(ly)** we're planning to go away next weekend.

Note:

- We can also start with the phrases **to begin with / to start with.**
- In spoken English we can start with **for one thing,** followed by **and for another (thing).**
- For the second or final reason,we sometimes use **(and) besides** or **anyway** (*infml*):

  We can't go to that club because it's too far. And **besides,** I'm not a member.

Exercises

33.1 **Cross out the incorrect answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.**

1 I'll give them your message as soon as I get / will get there.
2 Maria cleaned the kitchen as/while I did the bathroom.
3 We must go to that gallery before leave/leaving.
4 I had a lot of problems at the shop but eventually/finally they agreed to give me a refund.
5 The phone rang while / just as I was leaving the house.
6 The letter arrived while/as we were getting ready.

33.2 **Complete these sentences in a suitable way.**

1 We had a game of squash and afterwards .....
2 I'll meet you as soon as .....
3 I must remember to lock the back door before .....
4 I think I dropped the letter as .....
5 I looked up half of the words in my dictionary while .....
6 We had to wait for hours but eventually .....
7 My car is too big for you to drive. And besides, ...
8 I saw him break the window just as .....

33.3 **Add a final sentence (starting with a suitable link word or phrase) to each of these texts.**

1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening when we could go to Karl's party?
B: Well, for one thing because my ex-boyfriend will be there and I really don't want to see him. .....
2 A: What did you do?
B: First of all we spent a few days in Paris. After that we took the train down to Marseilles and stayed with friends. .....
3 A: Why can't we send one of our staff to the conference?
B: Well, to start with, I don't think that the company should send anyone to the conference. And .....

33.4 **You spent a week at a hotel and had these problems:**

- There was very little variety in the food.
- The service was very slow.
- When you mentioned this to the staff, they were very rude.

The manager was on holiday during your stay, so you have decided to send a letter of complaint. Write the next part of this letter and then look at the model answer for the whole letter in the answer key.

Dear Sir/Madam

I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Malvern Hotel, and I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with the food and service provided in your restaurant.

34 Addition and contrast

A In addition, moreover, etc. (X and Y)

When you add a second piece of information in a sentence to support the first piece of information, you often use **and**, e.g.The food is excellent **and** very good value. When you put this information in two sentences, these link words and phrases are common:

The food is usually very good. **Furthermore**, it is one of the cheapest restaurants in town.
The set menu is £10, which is excellent value. **In addition**, you get a free glass of wine.
The restaurant has a reputation for excellent food. It's **also** very good value.
The food is excellent in that restaurant. It's very good value **as well** (or **too**).
You get very good food in that place. **What's more**, it's excellent value.

Note: The first two examples are more formal and more common in written English. The last two examples are more common in spoken English.

B Although, in spite of, etc. (X but Y)

When you want to contrast two pieces of information in a single sentence and say that the second fact is surprising after the first, you can use these link words:

She still won the game **although / though / even though** she had a bad knee.
They still went for a walk **in spite of the fact that** it was pouring with rain.
The service is worse **despite the fact that** they have more staff.

Note:
In these examples you can also begin the sentence with the link word:

Although she had a bad knee, she still won the game.

It is very common to use **still** in these sentences to emphasise the surprise (as in examples).

In the last two example sentences you can use a noun or -ing form:

They went for a walk **in spite of** the rain. The service is worse **despite** having more staff.

After **although**, you can only have a noun/pronoun + verb (i.e. although she had a bad knee / her knee was bad).

C Whereas

This word is used to connect a fact or opinion about a person, place or thing, with something different about another person, place or thing (you can also use **whilst**). In other words, the second fact is a contrast with the first, but not always a surprise (as in B above).

John is very careful **whereas** Christopher makes lots of mistakes.
The south is hot and dry **whereas** the north gets quite a lot of rain.

D However

You can use **however** to contrast two ideas in two sentences, and say that the second sentence is surprising after the first (as in B); and you can use **however** or **on the other hand** to make a contrast between different people/places or things (as in C above):

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. **However**, he is a good teacher.
We didn't like the hotel at all. **However**, we still enjoyed ourselves.
Marcel thought it was a great film. Joe, **however / on the other hand**, thought it was stupid.
Most big cats, such as tigers and leopards, are very solitary creatures. Lions, **however / on the other hand**, spend much of their time in groups.

Exercises

34.1 **Cross out the incorrect answers. Both answers may be correct.**

1 Although / in spite of we left late, we still got there in time.
2 It was a fantastic evening although / in spite of the terrible food.
3 We have decided to go in spite of / despite the cost of the tickets.
4 They enjoyed the course even though / whereas it was very difficult.
5 I love the sea furthermore/whereas most of my friends prefer the mountains.
6 We found a lovely villa near the lake that we can rent. In addition / Moreover it has its own swimming pool, and we have free use of a car provided by the owners.
7 We both told John the car was too expensive. However / On the other hand, he still decided to buy it.
8 Most people we met tried to help us. They were very friendly too / as well.
9 During the week the town centre is very busy. At the weekend on the other hand / whereas, it is very quiet and almost empty.
10 My uncle is the owner of the factory opposite. He also/however runs the restaurant next door and the car hire company down the road.

34.2 **Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.**

A	B	C
He went to school today	even though	the pay isn't very good.
He always did his best at school	in spite of	he's the most experienced.
He's got the right qualifications.	However	the help I gave him.
He didn't pass the exam	whereas	he didn't feel very well.
He decided to take the job.	What's more	most of his schoolfriends were very lazy.

34.3 **Fill the gaps with a suitable link word or phrase.**

1 ..... taking a map, they still got lost.
2 It took me two hours to do it ..... the others finished in less than an hour.
3 The hotel has a very good reputation. ....., it is one of the cheapest in the area.
4 She managed to get there ..... she had a broken ankle.
5 It's not the best dictionary you can buy; ....., it's better than nothing.
6 She's younger than the others in the group, and she's better than most of them .....

34.4 **Complete these sentences in a logical way.**

1 I was able to follow what she was saying even though .....
2 I was able to follow what she was saying whereas .....
3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of .....
4 If you buy a season ticket, you can go as often as you like. Furthermore, ...
.....
5 The exam was very difficult. However, ...
6 Although it was a very long film, ...

34.5 **Answer the questions and test yourself on these different link words and phrases.**

1 Write down all the link words and phrases from the opposite page that you can remember.
2 Organise them into groups according to their meaning.
3 Write your own examples for each one and keep them on one page in your notebook. In future, you can add more examples as you meet them.

35 Similarities, differences and conditions

A Similarities

These are ways of saying that two or more things are similar, or have something the same.

Peter is **similar to** (= **like**) his brother in many ways. Peter and his brother are very **similar**.
Peter and his brother are quite **alike**.
Maria and Rebecca **both** passed their exams. (= Maria passed and Rebecca passed)
But **neither** wants to go to university. (= Maria doesn't want to go and Rebecca doesn't want to go either)
The two boys **have a lot in common**. (= they have many things e.g. hobbies, interests, beliefs, that are the same or very similar) See also section B.

B Differences

These are ways of saying that two or more things are different.

His early films are **different from** his later ones.
Paula is **quite unlike** (= very different from) her sister.
They **have nothing in common**. (= they have no interests or beliefs that are the same)

C Using 'compare'

We want to **compare** the prices of all the televisions before we decide which one to buy.
They made a **comparison of** average salaries in different parts of the country.
Our new flat is very big **compared with/to** our old one. (= if you compare it with the other)
If you **compare** this one **with** the others, I'm sure you'll see a difference.

D Exceptions

When we make a general statement about things or people and then say that one thing or person is not included or is different from the others, we use these words and phrases:

It snowed everywhere **except** on the west coast.
The two girls are very similar **except** that Louise has slightly longer hair.
The museum is open every day **except (for) / apart from** Sunday(s).
Everyone heard the fire alarm **except (for) / apart from** the two boys in room 7.

Note: **Except** can be followed by different words (nouns, prepositions, etc.), but **except for** and **apart from** are followed by nouns or noun phrases.

E Conditions

Here are some words/phrases which introduce or connect conditions. Like '**if**', they are used with certain tenses, and the rules are quite difficult. For the moment, notice the tenses underlined in the examples, and use them in this way until you meet other examples.

We will be late **unless** we hurry. (= we'll be late if we don't hurry)
Unless the weather improves (= if the weather doesn't improve), we won't be able to go.
I must go now **otherwise** (= because if I don't) I'll miss the last bus.
You can borrow it **as long as** (= **on condition that**) you bring it back by Thursday.

Note: The meaning is very similar to **if** here, but the use of **as long as** shows that the condition is very important to the speaker.

Take your umbrella with you **in case** it rains. (= because of the possibility it may rain later)
I brought food **in case** we get hungry. (= because of the possibility we may be hungry later)

Exercises

35.1 **Read the information, then complete the sentences using the words/phrases from A and B.**

MICHEL ...
is 21 and lives with his parents. He has worked in a shop. He is shy, hard-working and very good at sport. He would like to become the manager of a sports shop.

PHILIPPE ...
is 22 and lives alone. He is at university. He is clever but lazy, and spends most of his time at parties. He has no plans for the future.

PAUL ...
is 18 and lives with his parents. He is a trainee in a bank, but one day would like to be the manager. He is a very good footballer.

1 Michel and Paul are very .....
2 Philippe is quite ..... the other two.
3 Paul and Michel have .....
4 Paul and Philippe have almost nothing .....
5 Paul and Michel both .....
6 Neither of them .....

35.2 **Rewrite these sentences. You must start with the words you are given and use the words in brackets. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.**

Example: He's like the others.
He's very similar to the others. (similar)

1 Martin is quite unlike his brother.
Martin is very ..... (different)
2 When you see the houses, you realise that the flats are very good value.
The flats are very good value ..... (compare)
3 In her class, Carla was the only one who didn't pass the exam.
Everyone ..... (except)
4 The two boys have completely different interests.
The two boys have ..... (common)
5 You don't have to wear a tie except for Saturday(s).
You don't have to wear a tie ..... (apart)

35.3 **Fill the gaps with the correct link word or phrase from E opposite.**

1 You must write these words down ..... you may forget them.
2 I've made extra food for the party ..... more people come than we expect.
3 I can meet you for dinner on Friday evening ..... I have to work late at the office.
4 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog ..... she takes it for a walk every day.

35.4 **Complete these sentences in a suitable way.**

1 I want to finish this report today otherwise I'll .....
2 You can't get in that disco unless you .....
3 You can borrow the money as long as you .....
4 I've cleaned the spare room and made the bed in case .....
5 I'm not going to work on Saturday unless .....
6 I'm going to take my cheque book with me in case .....

35. 5 **How many different sentences can you write beginning with these words?**

Compared with Britain, my country .....

36 Reason, purpose and result

A Reason

I went home early **because/as/since** I was feeling a bit tired.

Note: With **as** or **since**, the reason (in this example 'feeling tired') is often known to the listener or reader, so it is less important. It is also common to put **as/since** at the beginning of the sentence: '**As/since** I was feeling tired, I went home early'. In spoken English, many native speakers would use **so** after the reason: I was feeling a bit tired, **so** I went home early.

We can also use **because of**, but with a different construction. Compare:

We always go there **because** the weather is absolutely wonderful. (because + noun + verb)
We always go there **because of** the wonderful weather. (because of + (adjective) + noun)

Due to and **owing to** have the same meaning as **because of**, but they are more formal, and are often used in sentences which explain the reason for a problem:

The plane was late **due to** bad weather. (**due to** is often used after the verb 'to be')
Due to / Owing to the power cut last night, I missed the late film on TV.

B 'Cause' and 'result' verbs

There are some verbs which we can use in similar ways to the words above:

Police think the bus **caused** the accident. (= **was responsible for** the accident)
The extra investment should **lead to** more jobs. (= **result in** more jobs)

'Cause' and 'result' verbs sometimes appear together in this way:

Police think that a cigarette **caused** the fire which **resulted in** the destruction of the building.

C Purpose

A 'purpose' is an intention, an aim or a reason for doing something:

The purpose of buying this book **was** to improve my English.

But we often introduce a purpose using **so (that)**:

I bought this book **so (that)** I can improve my English.
They went home early **so (that)** they could watch the match on television.
We moved house **so (that)** we could send our children to this school.

Note: In spoken English, people often just say **so** (without **that**). It is also very common (as in the examples) to use a modal verb, e.g. can or could, after **so that**.

D Result

These words introduce a result:

I left the ticket at home, **so** I'm afraid I had to buy another one.
I forgot to send the letters. **Consequently**, some people didn't know about the meeting.
She was extremely hard-working and **therefore** deserved the promotion.
Both the manager and his assistant were ill. **As a result**, there was no-one to take decisions.

Note: **So** is the most common, and usually links ideas in a single sentence. **As a result** and **consequently** are more formal, and usually connect ideas in two separate sentences (as in the examples). **Therefore** (also more formal), can be used in a single sentence (as in the example), but may also connect two sentences.

Exercises

36.1 Combine the two sentences into one sentence using *so*, *so that*, *because*, *as*, or *since*. More than one answer is possible in some sentences.

1 I didn't phone you. It was very late.
2 I turned up the radio in the lounge. I could hear it in the kitchen.
3 The restaurant was full. We went to the bar next door.
4 I stayed at home. I was expecting a phone call.
5 It's a very large city. You have to use public transport a lot.
6 I learned to drive. My mother didn't have to take me to the riding school every week.

36.2 Transform these sentences using *because of*. Make any changes that are necessary.

Example: He couldn't play because he had an injured shoulder.
He couldn't play because of his injured shoulder.

1 She got the job because her qualifications are excellent.
2 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside.
3 She had to stay at home because she has a broken ankle.
4 The light was very bad, so the referee had to stop the game.
5 The flowers died because it was so dry.
6 The traffic was very heavy. I was half an hour late.

36.3 Read this memo from a manager to the staff. Fill the gaps with suitable words or phrases.

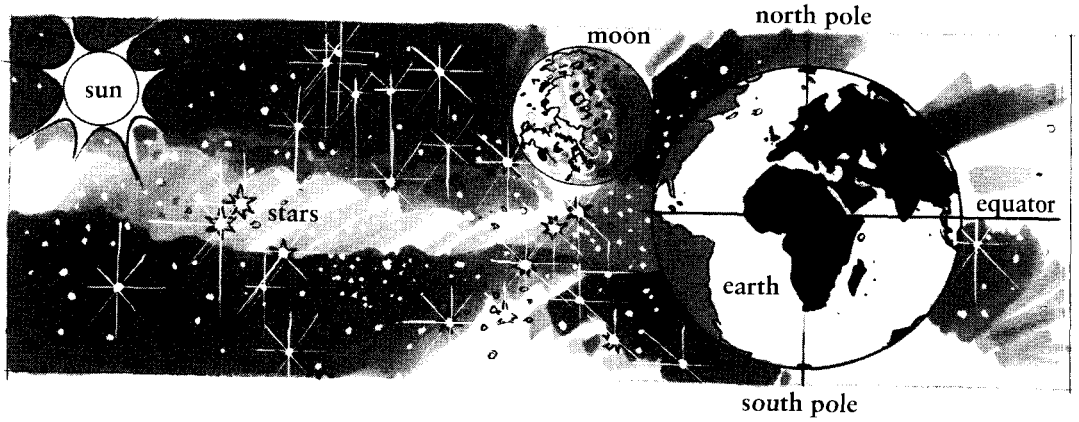
To: All staff
From: The Manager
Date: 9.8.96
Subject: Temporary roadworks

From next Monday (and continuing throughout the week), there will be roadworks on all major approach roads to the factory. (1)_____ this will (2)_____ considerable delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning (3)_____ everyone arrives on time.
I have been told that these roadworks could also (4)_____ severe traffic congestion. (5)_____ it may be advisable to leave your cars at home and use public transport instead.
Thank you for your cooperation in this matter.
DP

36.4 These sentences are all about learning English. Complete them in a logical way.

1 I want to improve my English because .....
2 I bought myself a walkman so that I .....
3 I study English at the weekend as .....
4 I always write words down in my notebook so that .....
5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently, ...
.....
6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, ...
.....
7 If he could speak almost perfect English it could lead to .....
8 Some people find English difficult because of .....

37 The physical world



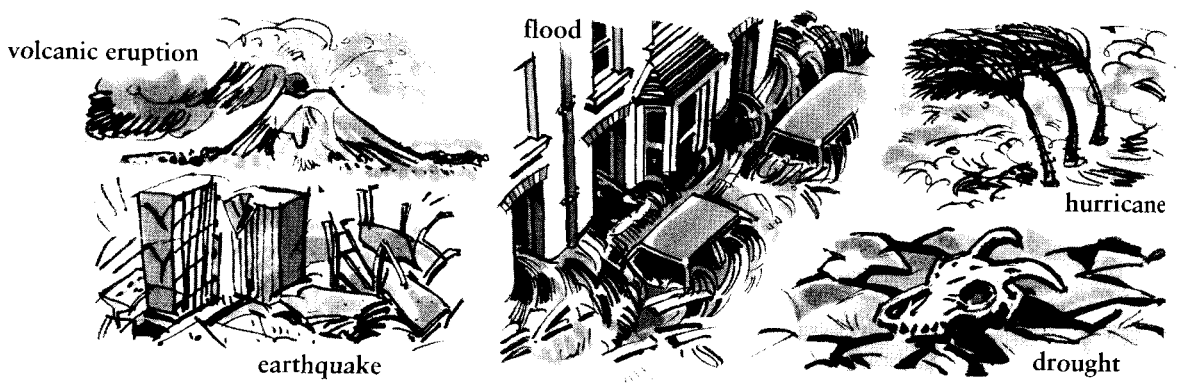
A Physical features

continents	e.g. Asia, Europe
countries	e.g. China, Brazil
islands	e.g. Sicily, Corsica, Hong Kong
group of islands	e.g. The Bahamas, The Balearics
oceans	e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Pacific Ocean
seas	e.g. The Red Sea, The Dead Sea
lakes	e.g. Lake Tanganyika, Lake Titikaka
rivers	e.g. The Nile, The Mississippi
falls	e.g. Niagara Falls, The Iguacu Falls
mountains	e.g. Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
mountain ranges	e.g. The Andes, The Alps
jungles	e.g. The Amazon (also called The Amazon rainforest)
forests	e.g. The Black Forest
deserts	e.g. The Sahara, The Gobi

Note: Sometimes you need the definite article 'the', e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Alps; sometimes no article is used, e.g. Mount Everest and Lake Titikaka. Compare this with your own language.

B Natural disasters

A **disaster** is when something terrible happens, which often results in death, destruction and suffering.



Exercises

37.1 Complete these sentences, as in the example.

Example: The Nile is ...*a river*.....

1 The Atlantic is .....
2 The Alps are .....
3 Greece is .....
4 The Sahara is .....
5 The Amazon is .....
6 The Mediterranean is .....
7 The Bahamas is .....
8 Africa is .....
9 Crete and Corsica are .....
10 Everest is the highest ..... in the world.
11 Michigan and Eyrie are two of the Great .....
12 The 'Great Bear' is a group of .....

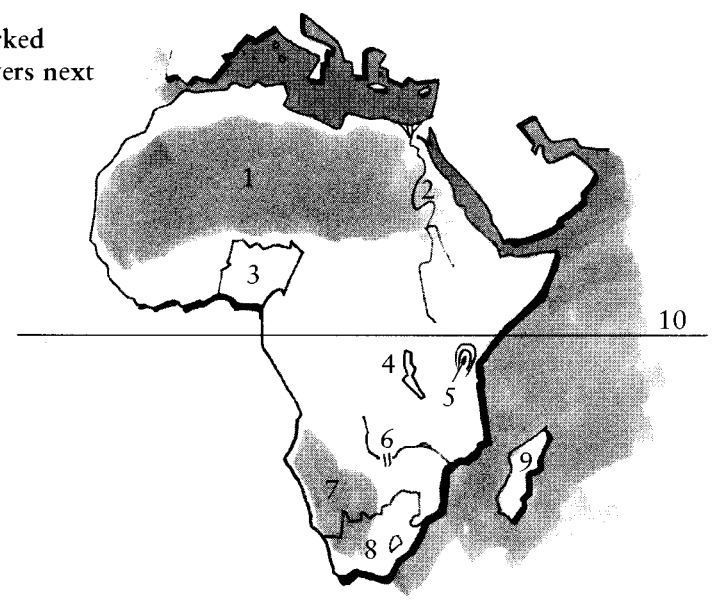
37.2 Fill the gaps in the text with *the* if necessary.

My journey took me across ..... Atlantic Ocean from ..... Europe to ..... South America. I travelled through ..... Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of ..... Brazil as far as ..... Iguacu Falls. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round ..... Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed ..... Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to ..... Jamaica in ..... West Indies.

37.3 What disaster is being described in each of these sentences?

1 It lifted a car about ten feet off the ground, and then we saw it disappear down the street.
2 It was about two metres deep and we watched as most of our furniture just floated away.
3 The grass turned yellow and most of the crops died.
4 The walls began to move visibly, and large cracks opened up in the ground.
5 We could see the lava slowly advancing towards the town just ten miles away.

37.4 Can you name everything marked on this map? Write your answers next to the symbols.



38 Weather

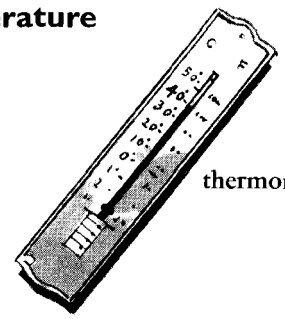
A Weather conditions

Look at this list of common weather words. Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding '-y'.

Noun	*Adjective*	*Noun*	*Adjective*
sun	sunny	wind	windy
cloud	cloudy	ice	ic(e)y
fog	foggy	shower	showery
heat	hot	humidity	humid

Note: When it rains for a short period of time, we call it a **shower**, e.g. We had several showers yesterday afternoon.
When it is raining a lot we often say it's **pouring** or it's **pouring with rain.** This phrase is much more common than 'it's raining cats and dogs', which many students seem to learn.

B Temperature



thermometer

boiling (= very hot) **hot** **warm** **not very warm** **cold** (also **chilly**) **freezing** (= very cold)

People round the world have different ideas about temperature:
5°C (five degrees centigrade) is **freezing** for many Brazilians.
–10°C (minus ten degrees *or* ten degrees below zero) is very cold but quite normal in the mountains in Switzerland during the winter when it usually snows a lot.
30–35°C is **boiling** for England and very unusual, but it is very common in parts of Spain during the summer.

C Wind

The first word here is very gentle; the last is more than 100 km per hour and can be very dangerous.

a **breeze** a **wind** a **strong wind** a **gale** a **hurricane**

It was a hot day but there was a lovely **breeze**.
The **wind** blew my hat off.
The **hurricane** in Florida destroyed trees and buildings.

D Thunderstorms

A **spell** (= period) of very hot weather often ends with a **thunderstorm.** First it becomes very **humid** (= hot and wet), then you get **thunder and lightning,** and finally, very **heavy rain** (= it pours with rain). Afterwards, it is usually cooler and it feels fresher.

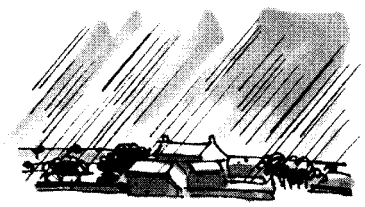
Exercises

38.1 Identify the weather conditions in these pictures.

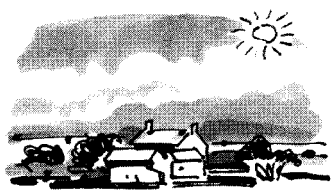
1

2

3


4

5


6

38.2 *True* or *false*? If a sentence is *false*, write a *true* sentence about the weather conditions in the sentence.

1 It often pours with rain in the desert.
2 It gets quite chilly in the desert in the evening.
3 Thunder makes a noise.
4 Lightning can kill people.
5 A shower is a gentle breeze.
6 A spell of hot weather may end in a thunderstorm.
7 If it is humid, the air will be very dry.
8 Below zero, water turns to ice.
9 Heavy rain means that it is pouring with rain.
10 When it's foggy you need sunglasses.

38.3 Complete these scales.

..... → wind → strong wind → ..... → hurricane

..... → hot → warm → not very warm → cold → .....

38.4 Complete this text with suitable words.

The single greatest influence on Japanese weather is the wind. During the summer it (1)..... from the Pacific, causing (2)..... and humid weather, but in winter, the north-westerly (3)..... from Siberia are very cold and it (4)..... heavily on the mountains of the north west. The south-eastern parts receive cold dry air. Between June and mid July, there is a (5)..... of wet weather when the rice fields get the water vital for growth. After that, there is less (6)..... rain, but the air is still (7)..... Autumn, however, is drier, and usually very pleasant.

Write a paragraph about the weather in your own country, or a specific part of your country, e.g. your own region. Try to use as many words as possible from the opposite page.

39 Using the land

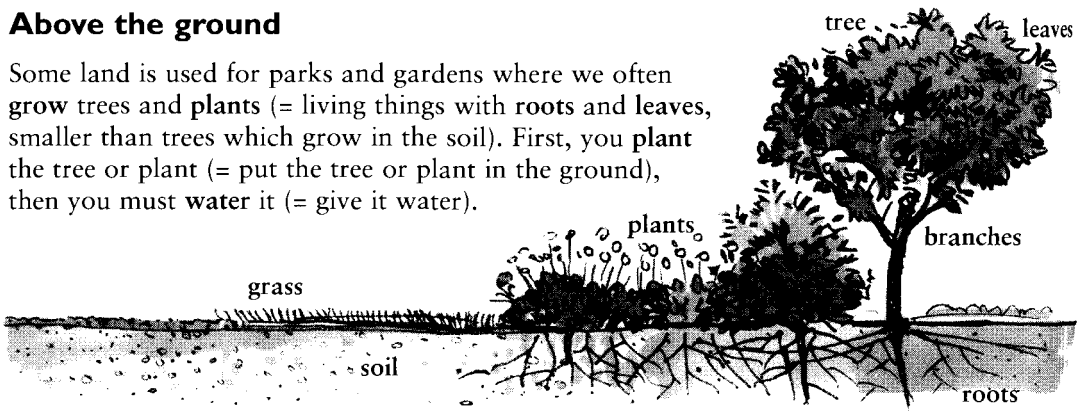
A Ground and soil

When we walk, our feet are on the **ground** (= the general word for the surface of the earth). For the top part of the ground where grass and flowers grow, we use the word **soil**.

There were no seats in the park, so we had to sit on the **ground**.
The **ground** is very hard because it hasn't rained for weeks.
Plants don't grow very well here because the **soil** is too dry.

B Above the ground

Some land is used for parks and gardens where we often **grow** trees and **plants** (= living things with **roots** and **leaves**, smaller than trees which grow in the soil). First, you **plant** the tree or plant (= put the tree or plant in the ground), then you must **water** it (= give it water).



Land in the country is often used for **agriculture/farming**. Some farms concentrate on **dairy produce** such as milk, butter and cheese. Other farms **keep** animals which are **slaughtered** (= killed) and sold for their meat, e.g. cows and lambs. Some farms use the land to **grow** fruit, e.g. apples and pears; vegetables, e.g. potatoes and carrots; and **cereals**, e.g. wheat, maize and barley. When they are ready, farmers **pick the fruit** and **harvest** the other **crops** (= take the other crops from the ground). This period is called the **harvest**. We use the word **crop(s)** as a general word to describe all the things that are grown to be eaten:

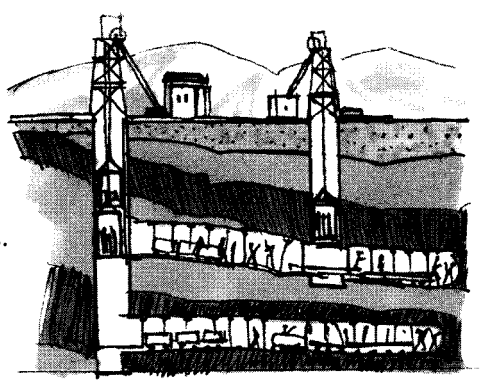
In parts of Africa the **crops** failed because of the **drought** (= long period without rain).
We had a wonderful **crop** of barley last year.

C Below the ground

One of the main activities below the ground is **mining**. This is the process of **extracting** (*fml*) (= removing or taking out) different materials, e.g. **coal** or **gold**, from below **the ground**. We call the place a mine, e.g. a coal mine or gold mine.

These are some of the **metals** we take out of the ground:

gold: a valuable yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
silver: a valuable whitish metal used to make coins and jewellery
iron: usually takes the form of a hard dark-grey metal, and is used in building and to make tools. It is also used to make **steel**
tin: a softer metal often used to cover other metals
copper: a soft reddish metal; it permits heat and electricity to pass through it easily



Exercises

39.1 Which nouns on the right often follow the verbs on the left? (There may be more than one noun for several of the verbs.)

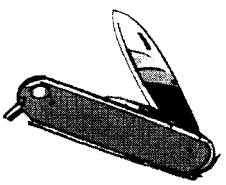
1 plant	coal
2 water	cows
3 pick	wheat
4 extract	apples
5 grow	plants
6 slaughter	trees

39.2 Are these statements *true* or *false*? If *false*, correct them.

1 Plants need roots.
2 Soil is the top part of the ground.
3 Drought is a long period of rain.
4 If you extract something, you remove it.
5 The harvest is the period when we plant the crops.
6 Iron is used to make silver.

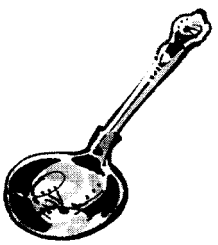
39.3 Complete the descriptions of these objects with a suitable 'metal'.

1 a ..... can



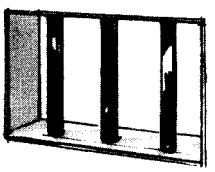
3 a knife with a ..... blade

5 a ..... ring



2 a ..... spoon

4 a frying pan with a ..... base



6 these ..... bars are very strong

39.4 Complete these sentences with the correct 'general' word. Look at the example first.

Example: Apples, oranges and bananas are all types of ...fruit.....

1 Potatoes, beans and carrots are types of .....
2 Silver, tin and copper are types of .....
3 Milk, butter and cheese are all ..... products.
4 ..... is the general word for wheat, maize, barley, etc.
5 We use the word ..... as a general word for plants which are grown to be eaten.

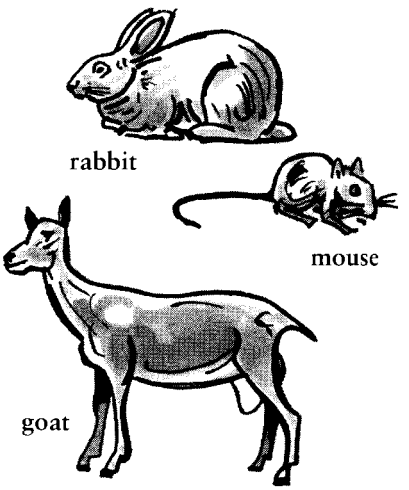
39.5 Answer these questions about your own country.

1 Which of these are the most important to your economy: agriculture, mining or fishing?
2 Are any precious (= valuable e.g. gold or silver) metals found in your country?
3 What are some of the main crops grown in your country?

40 Animals and insects

A Pets and farm animals

Many people keep **pets** (= domestic animals that live with people) in Britain. The most common are dogs and cats, but children in particular sometimes keep **mice** (singular = a **mouse**) and **rabbits**.

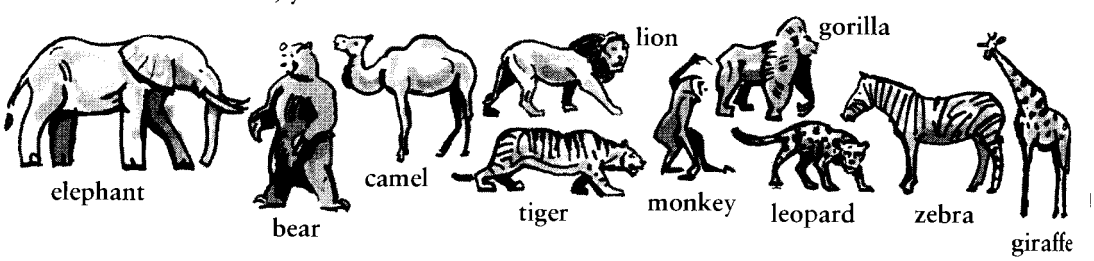


Farm animals include: sheep, pigs, cows, horses, chickens and goats.

Note: The word 'sheep' is the singular and plural form i.e. a sheep or some sheep. A young sheep is called a **lamb**.

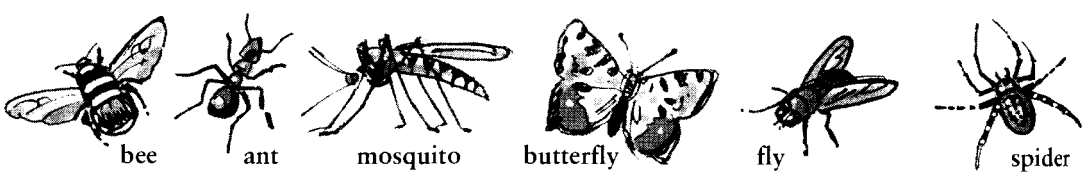
B Wild animals

In a zoo or **in the wild**, you will find these wild animals.



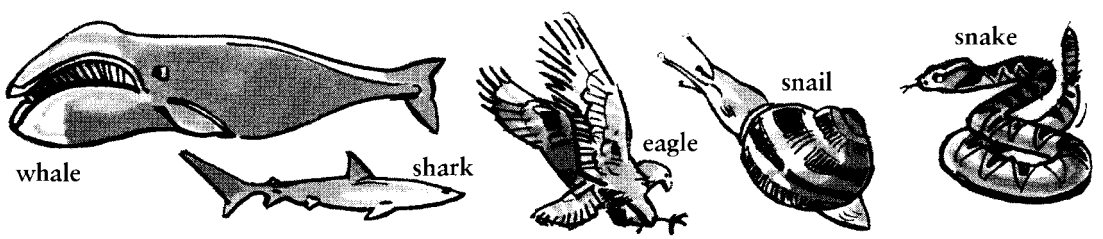
C Common insects

Here are some common insects.



D In the water, in the air, and on the ground

Here are some **creatures** (= living things, e.g. animals, birds, fish) that swim, fly, or move along the ground.



Exercises

40.1 **Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.**

Examples: whale water (different) cat camel (same)

1	lion	tiger	6	monkey	mosquito
2	leopard	mosquito	7	camel	snake
3	bear	eagle	8	leopard	shark
4	gorilla	giraffe	9	dog	wasp
5	spider	wild	10	mouse	cow

40.2 **Divide these words into three groups and give each one a title.**

monkey horse goat fly lion cow elephant pig mosquito
butterfly tiger wasp sheep camel ant leopard bear chicken

40.3 **Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.**

1 ..... can fly at a great height.
2 ..... can swim very long distances.
3 ..... can understand lots of human commands.
4 ..... can run very fast.
5 ..... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
6 ..... can be 30 metres in length.
7 ..... can eat fruit from tall trees.
8 ..... change their skin several times a year.
9 ..... can pick things up with their trunk.
10 ..... provide us with wool.

40.4 **Complete the sentences with a suitable word.**

1 They've got lots of pets: two dogs, four cats, and a .....
2 Their farm animals include cows, sheep and .....
3 The children love to see the 'big cats' at the zoo such as lions, tigers and .....
4 I hate most insects, but particularly mosquitoes and .....
5 We saw some really large animals at the Safari Park: elephants, giraffes and .....

40.5 **Can you match these creatures with their maximum speeds?**

lion	spider	elephant
rabbit	pig	snail
shark	golden eagle	

64 kph	0.05 kph	80 kph
56 kph	40 kph	18 kph
270 kph	1.88 kph	

41 Countries, nationalities and languages

A Who speaks what where?

Country	*Nationality*	*Language*
Germany	German	German
France	French	French
Italy	Italian	Italian
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Britain	British	English
Portugal	Portuguese	Portuguese
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
Korea	Korean	Korean
China	Chinese	Mandarin (also Cantonese)
Thailand	Thai	Thai
Australia	Australian	English
The United States of America	American	English
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
Sweden	Swedish	Swedish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
Holland	Dutch	Dutch
Mexico	Mexican	Spanish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Greece	Greek	Greek
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish
Argentina	Argentinian	Spanish

B The people

When you are talking about people in general from a particular country, there are some nationalities that you can make plural with an 's', but others can only be formed with the definite article (and no plural 's'):

Brazilians		The British	
Germans		The French	
(The) Italians	are (usually very ...)	The Swiss	are (usually very ...)
Russians		The Dutch	
Israelis		The Japanese	

Note:

- With both groups you can also use the word 'people': British people, German people, etc.
- When you talk about one person from these countries, you need to add woman/man/person to the group on the right: a Brazilian but a Japanese person; a German but a Swiss person, etc.

Exercises

41.1 **Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.**

1 Write down three countries where the first language is English.
2 What language is spoken in Brazil?
3 What are people from Holland called?
4 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
5 What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
6 What nationality are people from Sweden?
7 What language is spoken in Mexico?
8 What are people from Egypt called?
9 What is the first language in Israel?
10 Where do people speak Mandarin?

41.2 **Mark the main stress on the words in the box, and practise saying them.**

Japan	Japanese	Brazilian	Egyptian	Arabic	Italian
Austria	Australia	Chinese	Portuguese	Saudi Arabia	

What do you notice about the stress on words ending *-ia*, *-ian*, and *-ese*?

41.3 **Complete these sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.**

Examples: I've worked a lot with ..Germans.....
I've spent a lot of time with ..the French...

1 We do a lot of business with .....
2 ..... are usually hard-working.
3 I have always found ..... very friendly.
4 People often say that ..... are reserved.
5 ..... are very organised.
6 I met a lot of ..... on my trip to Athens.

Germany
France
Japan
Israel
Brazil
Britain
Switzerland
Greece

41.4 **Complete these sentences.**

1 Bangkok is the capital of .....
2 Buenos Aires is the capital of .....
3 Ankara is the capital of .....
4 Seoul is the capital of .....
5 Cairo is the capital of .....
6 Riyadh is the capital of .....
7 Athens is the capital of .....
8 Tel Aviv is the capital of .....
9 Stockholm is the capital of .....
10 Lisbon is the capital of .....

41.5 **Can you identify these languages?**

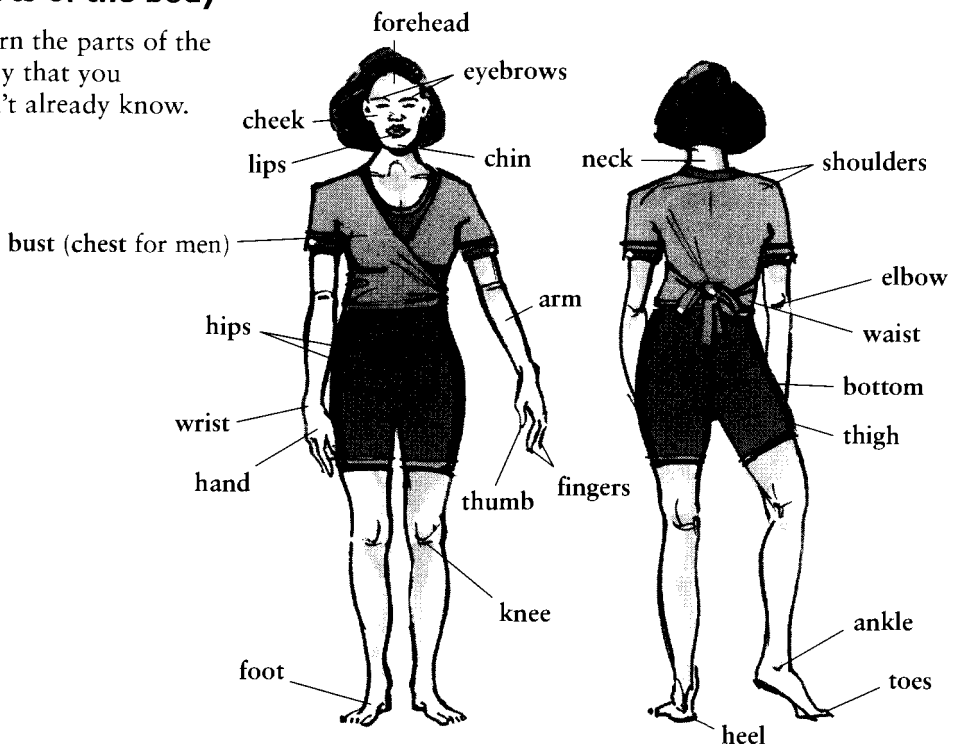
1 Здравствуйте
2 안녕하세요
3 Ciao
4 今日は
5 Γεια σου
6 你好嗎
7 goede dag
8 Hola
9 Grüezi
10 Bonjour
11 Hej!

41.6 **Have you met someone from each of the countries on the opposite page? Go through the list and tick the ones you have.**

42 The body and what it does

A Parts of the body

Learn the parts of the body that you don't already know.



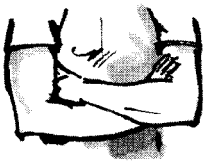
B Physical actions

You can **breathe** through your nose or your mouth. Most people **breathe** about 12–15 times a minute.
People **smile** when they're happy, or to be polite; they **laugh** when people say something funny; they may **cry** when they're sad; they **yawn** when they're tired, or bored.
Many people **nod** their head to mean 'yes', and **shake** their head when they mean 'no'.
When you pick up something heavy, you must **bend** your knees and keep your back straight.

C Common expressions

shake hands

blow your nose



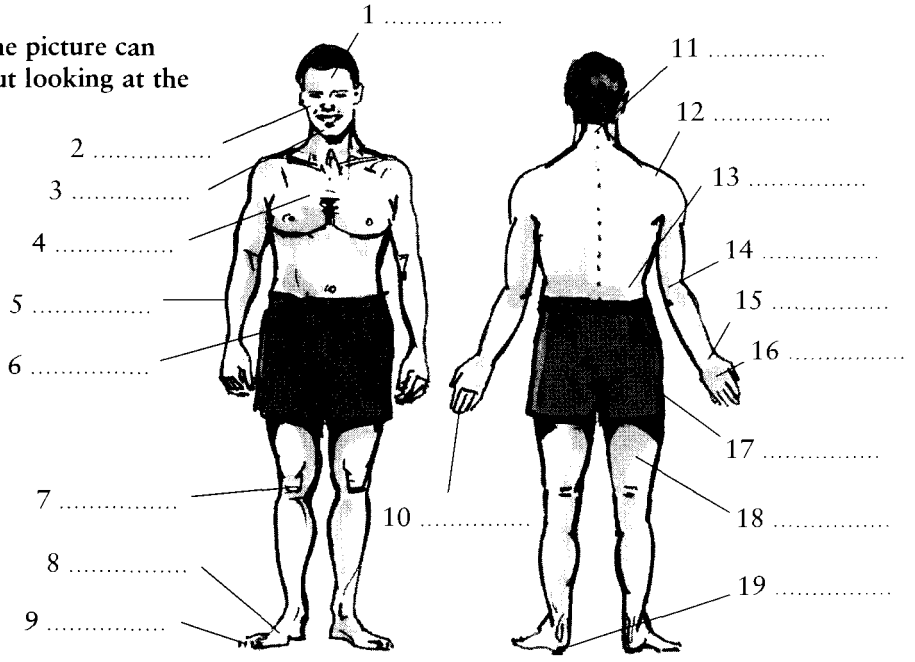
fold your arms

bite your nails

comb your hair

Exercises

42.1 How much of the picture can you label without looking at the page opposite?



42.2 Match the verbs on the left with a suitable part of the body on the right to form common expressions. Use each verb and noun once only.

1 blow	your knees
2 shake	your nose
3 comb	your nails
4 fold	your head
5 bend	your arms
6 nod	your hair
7 bite	hands

42.3 What do these actions often mean? (There may be lots of possible answers.)

1 People often smile when .....
2 They often breathe quickly after .....
3 They laugh when .....
4 They may bite their nails .....
5 They blow their nose .....
6 They shake their head .....
7 And nod their head .....
8 They cry .....
9 They yawn when .....

42.4 There are fourteen words describing parts of the body, either across or down, in this word square. Can you find them?

C	E	L	B	O	W	A
H	T	I	A	E	N	R
I	O	P	C	Y	A	M
N	E	C	K	E	I	H
I	H	A	N	K	L	E
K	C	H	E	S	T	E
C	H	E	E	K	A	L

43 Describing people's appearance

A General

Positive: **beautiful** is generally used to describe women; **handsome** is used to describe men; **good-looking** is used for both; **pretty** is another positive word to describe a woman (often a girl) meaning 'attractive and nice to look at'.

Negative: **ugly** is the most negative word to describe someone; **plain** is more polite.

B Height and build

tall and slim

medium height and build

short and fat

medium height and very muscular

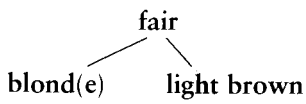
Note: Another word for **slim** is **thin**, but **slim** has a more positive meaning, e.g. John is lovely and slim, but his brother is terribly thin. **Skinny** also has the same meaning but is very negative. It is not very polite to say someone is **fat**; **overweight** is more neutral and polite.

C Hair

straight

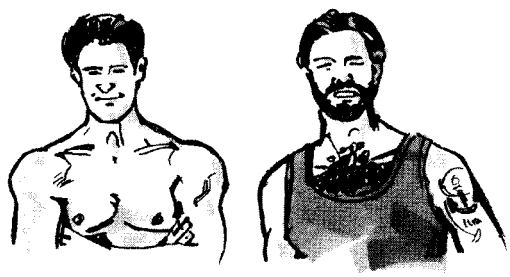
wavy

curly



D Special features

The man on the left has got very **pale skin** (= white skin). He also has **broad shoulders**, with a small **scar** at the top of his left arm. The other man has **dark skin**. He also has a **beard** and **moustache** and quite a **hairy chest** and a tattoo.



E Asking questions about a person's appearance

Q: What does she **look like**?
A: She's quite tall, with short fair hair.

Q: **How tall** is she?
A: About 1 metre 65.

Q: **How much** does she **weigh**?
A: I don't know and it may be rude to ask. Probably about 45 kilos.

Exercises

43.1 **Complete these sentences in a suitable way. (More than one answer may be possible.)**

1 She's got blonde .....
2 He's got very pale .....
3 They've both got curly .....
4 I would say he was medium .....
5 Her brother has got very broad .....
6 She doesn't like men with hairy .....
7 Last time I saw him he had grown a .....
8 He's got very muscular .....
9 Both men were very good-.....
10 All of them have got dark .....

43.2 **Replace the underlined word in each sentence with a word which is either more suitable or more polite.**

1 He told me he met a handsome girl in the disco last night.
2 She's beautiful but her younger sister is really quite ugly.
3 I think Peter is getting a bit fat, don't you?
4 Most people want to stay slim, but not as skinny as that girl over there.
5 I think she's hoping she'll meet a few beautiful men at the tennis club.

43.3 **You want to know about the following:**

- someone's general appearance
- their height
- their weight

What questions do you need to ask? Complete these questions.

What .....?
How .....?
How much .....?

Now answer these questions.

1 How tall are you?
2 How would you describe your build?
3 How much do you weigh?
4 What kind of hair have you got?
5 What colour is it?
6 Would you like it to be different? If so, what would you like?
7 Do you think you have any special features?
8 Are there any special features you would like to have?
9 Do you like beards?
10 Can you think of a famous woman you would describe as beautiful, and a famous man you would describe as good-looking?

If possible, ask another person these questions.

44 Describing character

A Opposites

Many positive words describing character have clear opposites with a negative meaning.

Positive	*Negative*
warm and friendly	cold and unfriendly
kind	unkind
nice, pleasant	horrible, unpleasant
generous (= happy to give/share)	mean (= never gives to others)
optimistic (= thinks positively)	pessimistic (= thinks negatively)
cheerful (= happy and smiling)	miserable (= always seems unhappy)
relaxed and easy-going	tense (= nervous; worries a lot; not calm)
strong	weak
sensitive	insensitive (= does not think about others' feelings)
honest (= always tells the truth)	dishonest

Jane is very **tense** at the moment because of her exams, but she's usually quite **relaxed** and **easy-going** about most things.

I think the weather influences me a lot: when it's sunny I feel more **cheerful** and **optimistic**; but when it's cold and raining I get very **miserable**.

He seemed a bit **unfriendly** at first, but now I've got to know him I realise he's very **warm** and **kind**.

The shop assistant told me that the dress I tried on looked better on people younger than me. I thought that was very **insensitive** of her, but at least she was being **honest**, I suppose.

B Character in action

People often talk about qualities of character that you may need in a work situation. Again, some of these words come in pairs of opposites: one positive and one negative.

Positive	*Negative*
hard-working	lazy (= never does any work)
punctual (=always on time)	not very punctual; always late
reliable	unreliable (= you cannot trust / depend on someone like this)
clever, bright (*infml*)	stupid, thick (*infml*)
flexible	inflexible (= a very fixed way of thinking; unable to change)
ambitious	unambitious (= no desire to be successful and get a better job)

Some pairs of opposites do not have a particularly positive or negative meaning:

He is very **shy** when you first meet him because he finds it difficult to talk to people and make conversation; but when he knows people quite well he's much more **self-confident**.

People often say the British are very **reserved** (= do not show their feelings), but when you get to know them they can be very **emotional** like anyone else.

C Using nouns

Some important qualites are expressed through nouns.

One of her great qualities is that she **uses her initiative**. (= she can think for herself and take the necessary action; she does not need to wait for orders all the time)

That boy has got no **common sense** (= he does stupid things and doesn't think what he is doing). His sister, on the other hand, is very **sensible**. (= has lots of **common sense**)

Exercises

44.1 **Organise these words into pairs of opposites and put them in the columns below.**

mean	clever	nice	lazy	relaxed	hard-working
tense	cheerful	generous	unpleasant	stupid	miserable

Positive *Negative*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

44.2 **What prefix forms the opposite of each of these words? (You need three different prefixes.)**

kind	flexible	friendly	honest
reliable	sensitive	ambitious	pleasant

44.3 **How would you describe the person in each of these descriptions?**

1 He never bought me a drink all the time we were together.
2 I have to tell her what to do every minute of the working day. She wouldn't even open a window without someone's permission.
3 He often promises to do things but half the time he forgets.
4 She's always here on time.
5 I don't think he's done any work since he's been here.
6 She finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
7 He could work in any of the departments, and it doesn't matter to him if he's on his own or part of a team.
8 One of the great things about her is that she is so aware of what other people think or feel.
9 Bob, on the other hand, is the complete opposite. He is always making people angry or upset because he just doesn't consider their feelings.
10 The other thing about Bob is that he really wants to get the supervisor's job and then become boss for the whole department.

44.4 **What nouns can be formed from these adjectives? Use a dictionary to help you.**

Example: kind kindness

punctual	optimistic	reliable	lazy
confident	generous	ambitious	stupid
sensitive	strong	flexible	shy

44.5 **Choose three words from the opposite page which describe you. Is there one quality you do not have but would like to have? What, in your opinion, is the worst quality described on the opposite page? If possible, compare your answers with a friend.**

45 Human feelings and actions

A Feelings

Noun	*Adjective(s)*
love (≠ hate)	–
happiness (≠ sadness)	happy (≠ sad)
anger	angry
fear	afraid (of) / frightened (of)
pride	proud (of)
jealousy	jealous (of)
embarrassment	embarrassed/embarrassing (see Unit 30)

Note:

- **Pride** has different meanings, but the most common is the feeling of satisfaction you have because you (or people you are connected with) have done something well.
  He was very **proud** when his wife became the first President of the organisation.
- **Jealousy** is a feeling of anger and unhappiness you may have if (a) someone you love shows a lot of interest in others, or (b) if someone has something you want / don't have.
  a) My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.
  b) He's **jealous** of his brother because his brother is more intelligent and makes more money.
- A common adjective is **upset**, which means unhappy, sad, and even angry, because something unpleasant has happened, e.g. He was very **upset** when we didn't invite him.

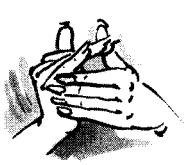
B Ways of ...

Ways of speaking
whisper (v, n) (= speak very quietly)
shout (v, n) (= speak in a very loud voice)

Ways of looking
stare (v, n) (= look at someone/something in a fixed way for a long time)
glance (at) (v, n) (= look at someone or something very quickly)

Ways of walking
stroll (v, n) (= walk in a slow casual way)
march (v, n) (= walk quickly and with a clear purpose/reason)

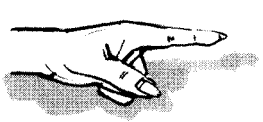
C Things we do with our hands



clap

knock (on a door) (v, n)

wave (goodbye)



point (at sth./sb.)

press (a button)

punch someone

Exercises

45.1 **What nouns can be formed from these adjectives?**

angry sad happy proud jealous embarrassed

45.2 **Find the logical ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.**

1 He was very proud when	a someone stole his money.
2 He was very jealous when	b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.
3 He was very embarrassed when	c he heard that his aunt had died.
4 He was very angry when	d he saw those big dogs running towards him.
5 He was very sad when	e he bought her a birthday present on the wrong day.
6 He was very frightened when	f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked.

45.3 **Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.**

1 Would you feel embarrassed or upset (or both) if you forgot your mother's birthday or your father's birthday?
2 Do you ever feel frightened in a car (as a passenger) because you are going very fast?
3 Do you get angry when other people want you to do things that you don't want to do?
4 If you made a stupid mistake in English, would you feel embarrassed?
5 Is there any one thing that you are very proud of?
6 Are there any common situations where you sometimes feel embarrassed?

45.4 **What are these people doing? Describe their actions using words from the opposite page.**

45.5 **Replace the underlined words with a single verb that has the same meaning.**

1 She stopped working and <u>looked quickly</u> at the clock.
2 As we were in the library, he <u>spoke very quietly</u> in my ear.
3 We <u>walked casually</u> along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
4 He made us all <u>walk quickly</u> up the hill.
5 The man <u>kept looking</u> at Susan, but she didn't seem to notice.
6 Jim doesn't know what happened, except that the man <u>hit</u> him <u>hard</u> on the side of his face.

46 Family and friends

A Relatives (= members of your family)

These are the most important relatives (also called **relations**):

	male	*female*
Your parents' parents	grandfather	grandmother
Your parents' brother and sister	uncle(s)	aunt(s)
Your aunt's/uncle's children	cousin(s)	cousin(s)
The father and mother of the person you marry	father-in-law	mother-in-law
The brother and sister of the person you marry	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
Your brother's/sister's children	nephew(s)	niece(s)
The person you marry dies, so you are a ...	widower	widow
Your mother or father remarries, so you have a ...	step-father	step-mother

B Family background (= family history)

My grandfather was a market gardener in Ireland. He grew flowers, fruit and vegetables, and sold them in the market every day. He worked hard all his life, and when he died, his son (now my uncle) and daughter (my mother) **inherited** a large house and garden (= received this house and garden from my grandfather when he died). They carried on the business together until my mother met my father. They got married, moved to England, and I was born two years later. They didn't have any more children, so I am an **only child**.

C Family names

When you are born, your family gives you a **first name**, e.g. James, Kate, Sarah and Alex are common first names in Britain. Your **family name** (also called your **surname**) is the one that all the family share e.g. Smith, Brown, Jones, and O'Neill are common surnames in Britain. Some parents give their children a **middle name** (like a first name), but you do not usually say this name. Your **full name** is all the names you have, e.g. Sarah Jane Smith.

D Changing times

Society changes and so do families. In some places, people may decide to live together but do not get married. They are not husband and wife, but call each other their **partner**. There are also many families in some parts of the world where the child or children live(s) with just their mother or father; these are sometimes called **single-parent families**.

E Friends

We can use a number of adjectives before **friend**:

an **old** friend (= someone you have known for a long time)
a **close** friend (= a good friend; someone you like and trust)
your **best** friend (= the one friend you feel closest to)

We use the word **colleagues** to describe the people we work with.

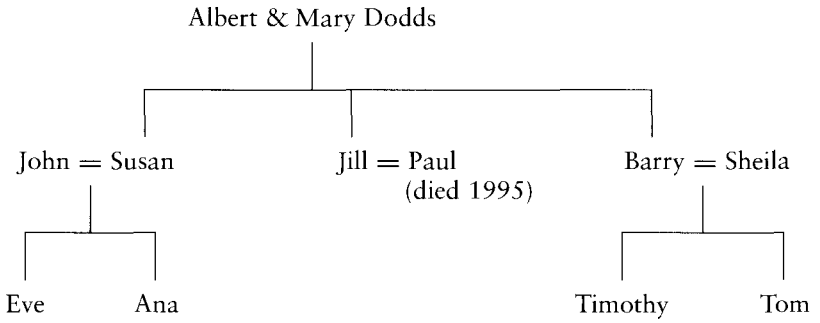
F Ex-

We use this for a husband/wife/boyfriend/girlfriend we had in the past but do not have now:

The children stay with my **ex-husband** at the weekend.
I saw an **ex-girlfriend** of mine at the disco last night.

Exercises

46.1 **Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.**



1 John is Jill's .....
2 Timothy is Jill's .....
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's .....
4 Eve is Sheila's .....
5 Albert Dodds is Tom's .....
6 Barry is Eve's .....
7 Susan is Timothy's .....
8 As Paul died in 1995, Jill is a .....
9 Tom is Mary's .....
10 The only two people who are not related are ..... and .....

46.2 **Answer these questions about yourself and your country.**

1 What's your first name?
2 What's your surname?
3 Is that a common name in your country?
4 Do you have a middle name?
5 Are you an only child?
6 Who is your oldest friend?
7 Do you work? If so, how many of your work colleagues are also your friends?
8 Do you have any ex-boyfriends or ex-girlfriends who speak English very well?
9 Are single-parent families becoming more common in your country?
10 In your country, do more and more people live together without getting married?

46.3 **Draw your own family tree. Are there any relationships you cannot describe in English? Can you also write a short summary of your family background (as in B on the opposite page)?**

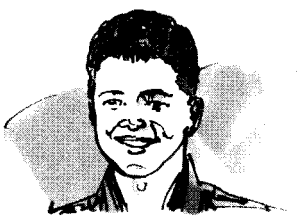
47 Ages and stages

A Growing up

Age	*Stage*
0–1 approximately	a **baby**
1–2	a **toddler**
2–12 approximately	a child – this period is your **childhood**
13–17 approximately	a **teenager** (14 = early teens)
18+	an **adult**
20–30	**in your twenties** (24–26 = **mid twenties**)
30–40	**in your thirties** (38 = **late thirties**)
40+	people are **middle-aged; in middle age**
60 or 65	**retirement** (= when people stop work; they are **retired**)
75+	**old age** (you can also use **elderly**)

Note: For boys, the period between 14–17 approximately (slightly younger for girls) is called **adolescence**, i.e. you are an **adolescent**. In law you are an **adult** at the age of 18, but many people think of you as an adult when you leave school.

B Childhood and adolescence

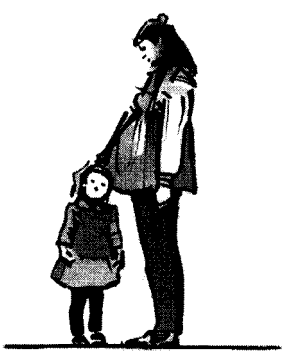


Sam (on the right) **was born** in Scotland but when he was two, his father got a new job in London and he **grew up** in the south of England. He **went to university** at 18 where he ...

C Romance

... where he **met** Anthea. He **went out with** her (= she was his **girlfriend**; he was her **boyfriend**) for three years, but towards the end they had lots of **rows** (= arguments) and they **split up** (= **broke up** / separated). In his **mid twenties** ...

D Marriage



... in his mid twenties he **met** Maureen. They **fell in love** and **got married** within six months. A year later she got **pregnant** and they had their first child, a boy. As you can see, she is now **expecting** their second child (to be pregnant = to be expecting a baby). But sadly Sam met another woman and he left Maureen two months ago to live with the other woman.

Exercises

47.1 **What stage of life are these people at?**

1 Paul isn't 2 yet, so he's still a .....
2 Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but stopped work two years ago, so he is now .....
3 Susan is 25, so she is in her .....
4 Caroline is 50 this year so she is now in her .....
5 Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in .....
6 Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite .....
7 Jason was born six weeks ago, so he's a .....
8 Leyla is 13 this year, so she'll soon be a .....
9 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes .....
10 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through .....

47.2 **Are these sentences *true* or *false* about the people on the opposite page? If the sentences are *false*, write the correct answer below. Try to answer the questions first without looking at the opposite page.**

1 Sam was born in Scotland.
.....
2 He grew up in the south of Ireland.
.....
3 He went out with Anthea for two years.
.....
4 They split up because Sam went to live in Japan.
.....
5 Sam fell in love with Maureen.
.....
6 They had a baby a year after they got married.
.....
7 Maureen is now expecting her third child.
.....
8 Maureen left Sam.
.....

47.3 **Find the logical ending for each of the sentence beginnings on the left and construct Rebecca's life.**

1 Rebecca was born	a was a boy at her secondary school.
2 She grew up	b in her early thirties.
3 Her first boyfriend	c on a farm with lots of animals.
4 She went out with him	d when she was in her late twenties.
5 She went to university	e in a small local hospital in 1972.
6 She fell in love	f for six months.
7 They got married	g just after the baby was born.
8 She had a baby	h with another student doing medicine.
9 Her father retired	i when she left school.

How many of the sentence beginnings on the left can you answer about your own life? Answer the ones you can.

48 Daily routines

A Sleep

During the week I usually **wake up** at 6.30 a.m. I sometimes **lie in bed** for five minutes but then I have to **get up** (= get out of bed and get dressed). Most evenings, I **go to bed** at about 11.30 p.m. I'm usually very tired, so I **go to sleep / fall asleep** very quickly. Occasionally though, I can't **get to sleep** (= succeed in sleeping). When that happens, I sometimes manage to **fall asleep** about 3 a.m., then I **oversleep** (= sleep too long) in the morning. If I **have a late night** (= go to bed very late; ≠ an **early night**), I try to **have a nap** (= a short sleep, e.g. 20–25 minutes) in the afternoon. The weekends are different. On Saturday and Sunday I **have a lie-in.** (= stay in bed until later, e.g. 8 a.m. or 8.30 a.m.)

B Food

In the week I **have breakfast** at 7.30 a.m., lunch at 1.00 p.m., and dinner around 7 p.m. I also have one or two **snacks** (= small amounts of food), e.g. cakes, biscuits or fruit, during the day at work. As I live **alone / on my own / by myself** (= without other people), I also have to **make my own breakfast and dinner** (= prepare breakfast and dinner for myself), but during the week I don't **bother** (= make an effort) to cook very much.
I also have to **feed** (= give food to) my two cats twice a day as well.

Note: With **breakfast, lunch** or **dinner** in general, there is no definite article (the).

C Keeping clean

In the summer I **have a shower** in the morning, but in the winter I often **have a bath** instead (= in place of a shower). Sometimes I **have a shave** at the same time, or I shave when I have a **wash** and **clean/brush my teeth** after breakfast. I **wash my hair** two or three times a week.

Note: In some contexts, it is more common in English to use **have** + **noun** than a single verb, e.g. I'm going to **have a wash.** [NOT ~~I'm going to wash.~~]

D Work

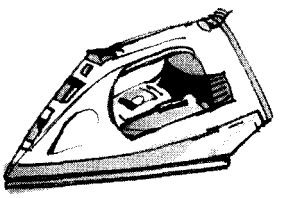
In the morning I **leave home** about 8.15 a.m. and **get to work** (= arrive at work) by 9 a.m. I **have a lunch break** (= stop work for lunch) from 1–2 p.m., and a couple of short **breaks** during the day. I **leave work** around 5.30 p.m. and **get home** about 6.15 p.m.

E Evenings

During the week I usually **stay in** (= stay at home) and **have a rest** (= relax and do nothing). But at the weekend I often **go out** (= leave the house for social reasons, e.g. go to the cinema or disco with friends), but quite often I also **have friends for dinner** (= invite friends to my house and cook dinner for them), or friends just **come round** (= visit me at the house) for a **chat** (*infml*) (= conversation) or we **play cards**, e.g. poker or bridge.

F Housework

I **do the shopping** (= buy the food) on Saturday.
Fortunately (= luckily) I have a **cleaner** (= a person who cleans) and she does most of the housework: she **does** my **washing** (= washes the clothes), the **washing-up** (= washes the dishes) and **does** most of the **ironing**.



Exercises

48.1 **The opposite page includes a number of expressions with 'have + noun', e.g. have breakfast, have a shower. Can you remember six more?**

have ..... have .....
have ..... have .....
have ..... have .....

48.2 **Now complete some more word partnerships and expressions by matching the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right.**

1 fall	a rest
2 do	my teeth
3 have	the dog
4 play	asleep
5 go	cards
6 clean	the ironing
7 feed	early
8 get up	to bed

48.3 **Complete this dialogue with suitable words or phrases from the opposite page.**

A: Don't (1)..... to cook a meal this evening.
B: Why not?
A: We could (2)..... instead.
B: Yeah. Where?
A: Well I'd like to go to that new Korean restaurant. We could ask Karen and Mike to come.
B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather (3)..... and have an (4)..... night.
A: But it's Friday. You can have a (5)..... tomorrow if we have a late night.
B: Yes I know but I'm tired. Look, why don't you ask Karen and Mike to (6)..... for a meal. I can order some pizzas from the takeaway and we'll have a nice evening here.
A: Sorry, but if you don't want to come to the restaurant with me, I'll go (7).....

48.4 **Here are some common sentences in English. Translate them into your own language and then decide which of these sentences you often use in your own language.**

1 Did you go out last night?
2 I think I'm going to stay in this evening.
3 I overslept this morning.
4 I couldn't get to sleep last night.
5 Do you want to come round this evening?
6 I forgot to do the shopping.
7 What time did you get home?
8 I nearly fell asleep in the lesson today.

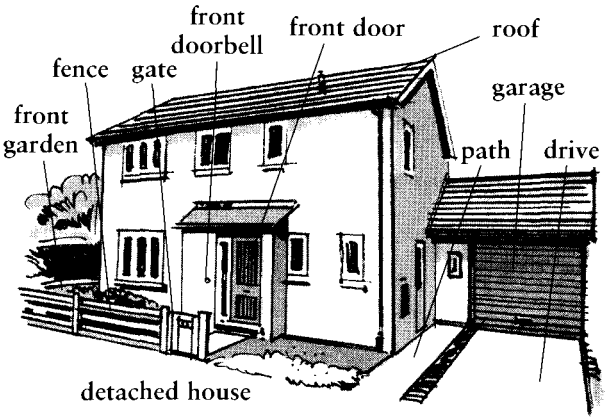
48.5 **Can you find three facts from the opposite page which are exactly the same in <u>your</u> routine, three which are similar, and three which are completely different? Complete the table below.**

	same	*similar*	*completely different*
1	I go to bed around 11.30 p.m.	I leave home at 8.40 a.m.	I never do any ironing.
2	.....	.....	.....
3	.....	.....	.....
4	.....	.....	.....

49 Homes and buildings

A Houses

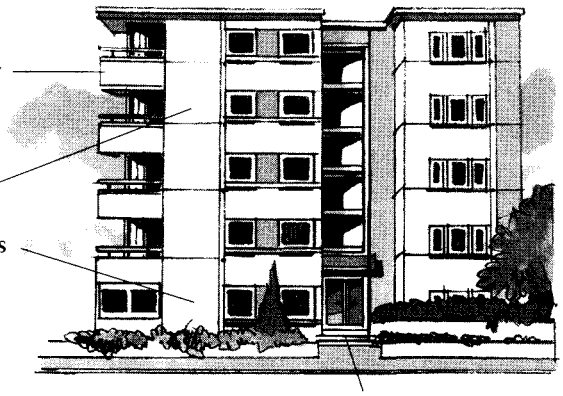
semi-detached house



detached house

terracked houses

B Flats



I live in a **block of flats.** My brother lives **on the ground floor,** and I have a flat **on the third floor.** Unfortunately there is no **lift,** so I have to climb three flights of **stairs** to reach my flat. But I do have a **balcony** with a wonderful view of the park opposite the flats.

Note: **Steps** are usually outside a building or inside a public building; they are stone or wooden. **Stairs** (*pl*) connect floors inside a building and are often covered with a carpet.

C Buying and renting

Some people buy a flat or house (= they **own** it / it **belongs to** them). When they do this in Britain, people usually borrow money from a bank or an organisation called a Building Society. This money, which is called a **mortgage,** is often paid back over 25 years. Other people **rent** a house or flat (= they pay money every week or month to the person who owns the house). When they do this, the **money** they pay is called **the rent,** and the person who owns the house or flat is the **landlord.**

D Describing a flat or house

The rooms on the ground floor are quite **dark** (≠ light) because they don't **get** (= receive) very much sun. They are also quite **noisy** (≠ quiet) because they are near the roads and the traffic. The other negative thing is that the rooms are **draughty** (= cold air comes into the room through the windows and under the doors because they don't fit very well). This means it is expensive to **heat** the rooms (= to keep the rooms warm). Fortunately I have a very good **central heating** system. In other ways, it is also very nice: it's **in good condition** (= in a good state/doesn't need to be repaired; ≠ **in bad condition**), and the rooms are **huge/enormous** (= very, very big; ≠ **tiny** / very, very small)

Exercises

49.1 **What can you remember about the house and block of flats on the opposite page? Without looking, try to answer these questions. If you think an answer is false, correct it. Finally, check your answers by looking at the opposite page.**

1 Does the house have a garage?
2 Does it have a fence around the front garden?
3 Is there a window in the roof?
4 Is the gate open or shut?
5 How many steps are there in front of the entrance to the block of flats?
6 Does each flat have a balcony?
7 Does the brother live on the first floor?
8 Do the flats have a view of the countryside?

49.2 **Complete these sentences with a suitable noun or verb.**

1 I opened the ....., walked up the ..... and rang the .....
2 We had to ..... six flights of stairs to get to her flat because the ..... wasn't working.
3 I've got a great ..... from my balcony.
4 Do you own the flat or do you ..... it?
5 I'm living in the house now but it actually ..... to my brother. He bought it two years ago. It was in very bad ..... then, but he spent a lot of money on it.
6 It costs a lot of money to ..... a house when you live in a cold climate. Central ..... is usually quite expensive.

49.3 **Write down four more positive things and four more negative things you could say about a house/flat or the rooms in a house/flat. When you have finished, compare your answers with section D opposite.**

Positive	*Negative*
the rooms are very light	the rooms are very dark

Now think about your answers again. Which positive features are the most important for you? Which negative features do you hate the most?

49.4 **What about your home? Answer these questions.**

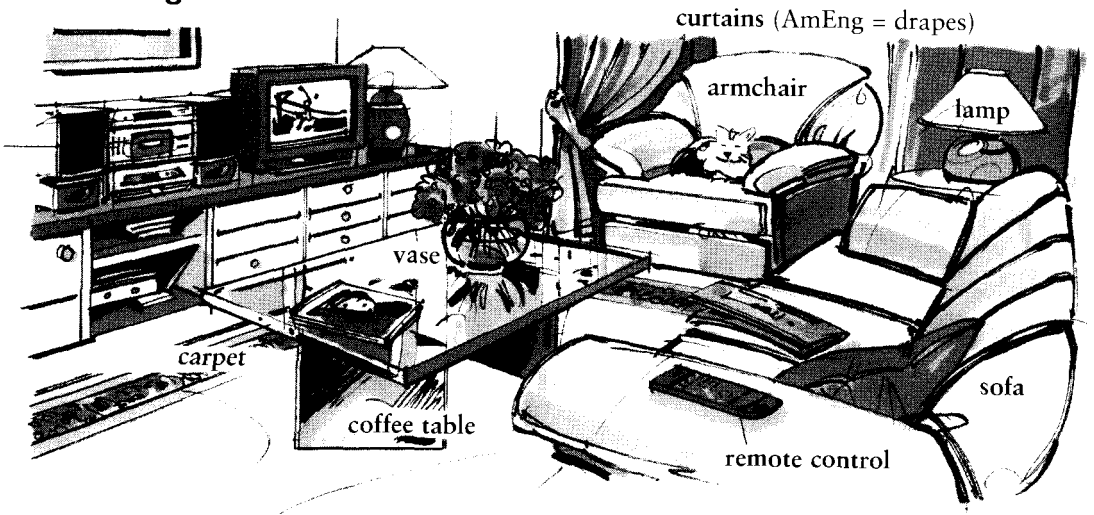
1 Do you live in a house or flat?
2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
3 If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
4 Does the house/flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
5 Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
6 Would you describe your house/flat as dark or light?
7 Is it noisy or quiet?
8 Do you have central heating?

50 Around the home I

A Rooms

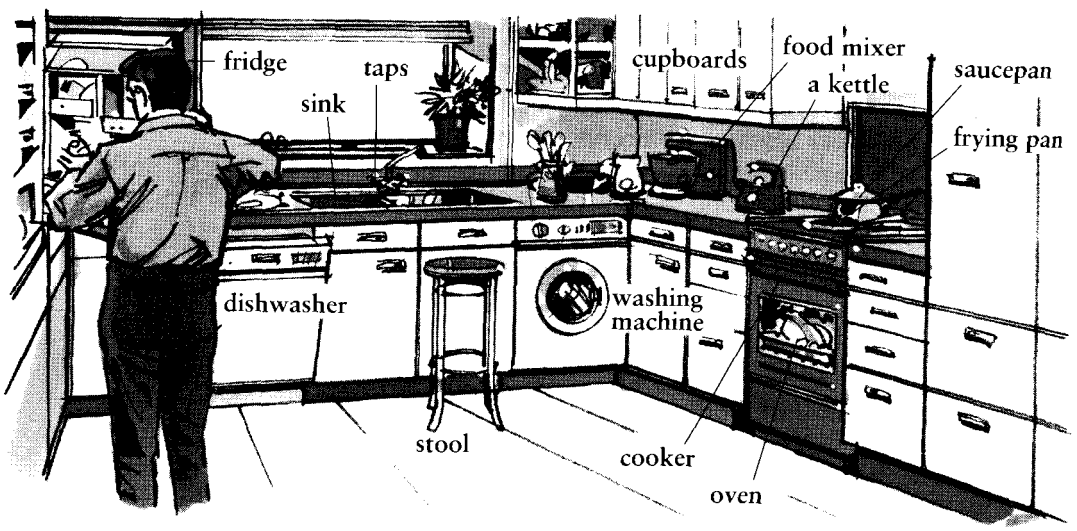
The **living room** or **lounge** (= where you sit, relax, talk and watch TV); the **dining room**; the **kitchen**; the **bedroom**(s); and the **bathroom**(s).
Some people also have a **study** (= room with a desk where you work), a **utility room** (= a room usually next to the kitchen, where you have a washing machine), a **spare room** (= a room you don't use every day. Often this is a room that guests can use), and possibly a **playroom** for small children.

B The lounge



While the cat was asleep **in the armchair**, I sat **on the sofa** and **had a look** at the paper. Then I **turned on the TV** and went to make a cup of tea.

C The kitchen



I **put** the meat **in the oven**, put my dirty clothes **in the washing machine**, **made the coffee** and **put** the milk **back** in the fridge.

Exercises

50.1 Complete the descriptions. (There may be more than one possible answer.)

1 The bedroom, that's where you ...sleep.....
2 The kitchen, that's where you do the .....
3 The bathroom, that's where you have a ..... and .....
4 The lounge, that's where you ..... and .....
5 The dining room, that's where you .....
6 A spare room, that's often where .....
7 A study, that's usually where you .....
8 A utility room, that's often where .....

50.2 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?

1 milk
2 meat that you are going to cook
3 dirty clothes
4 dirty cups and saucers
5 clean cups and saucers
6 biscuits and a packet of spaghetti

50.3 Here are some things you find in the lounge or kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they, and where do they belong?

skin nacitusr rapcet shadriswhe teklet
faos veon digref hiamcrar pobcadru acepasnu

50.4 Complete these sentences with the correct adverb or preposition.

1 He put the plates ..... the cupboard.
2 I took the ham ..... of the fridge, made myself a couple of sandwiches, and then I put the rest of the ham ..... in the fridge.
3 I usually sit ..... the sofa and my husband sits ..... an armchair.
4 I was bored, so I turned ..... the television.
5 You normally cook it ..... the oven for about forty minutes.
6 I took the butter ..... of the fridge and put it ..... the table.

50.5 Imagine you have just moved into a new flat, and for the first six months you can only have six of the following. Which would you choose?

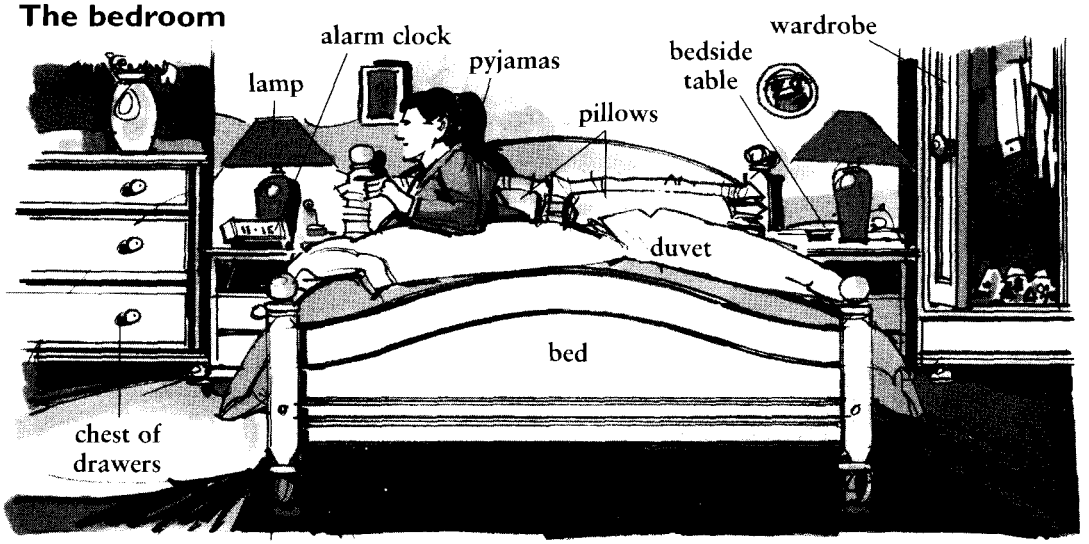
sofa carpets dishwasher TV cooker curtains fridge desk
hi-fi bed dining table washing machine kettle saucepans
food mixer armchair

50.6 Write down:

1 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can turn on/off.
2 three things in the kitchen you can wash.
3 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can sit on.
4 two things you can use to boil water.

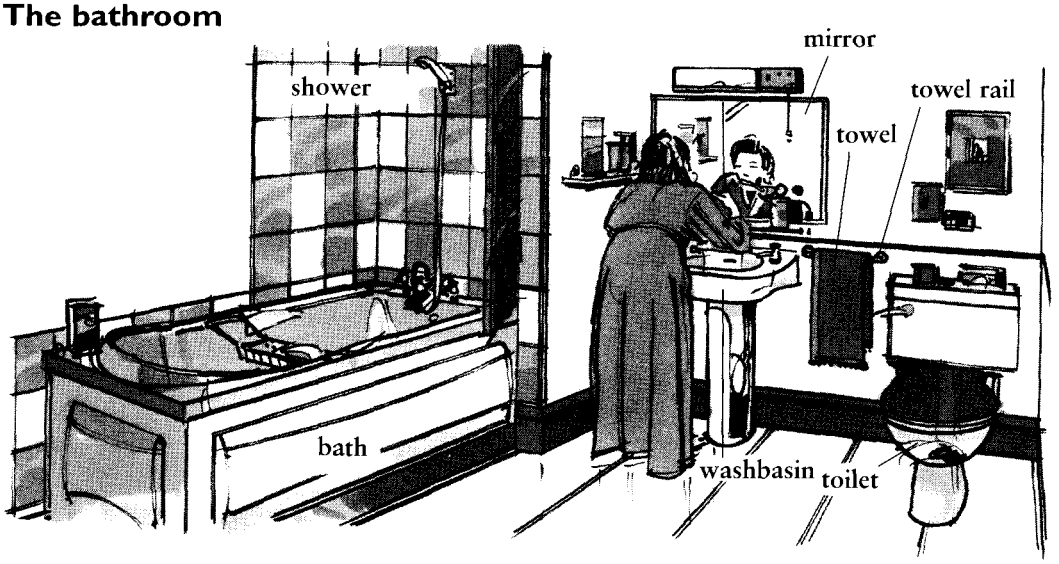
51 Around the home 2

A The bedroom



I **put on** my **pyjamas**, **got into bed**, **set** the **alarm clock**, **switched off** the light, and went to sleep.

B The bathroom



I didn't have time for a bath, but I **had a wash**, cleaned my teeth, and then I went to school.

C Housework (U)

My room is very **clean and tidy** (= everything in order), but my brother is very untidy; he leaves his clothes all over the floor and never makes his bed. What's worse, he doesn't clean his room very often, so most of the time it is quite dirty.

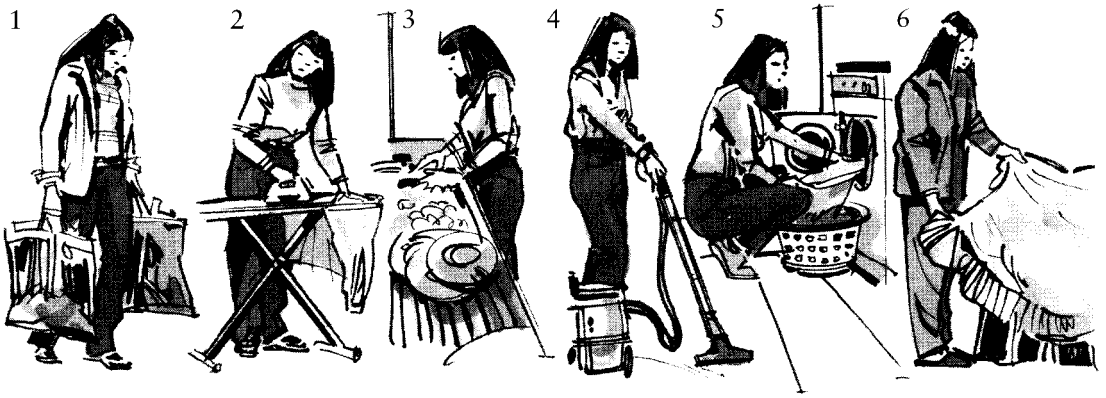
I **do the washing-up** every evening after dinner, and I normally **do the washing and ironing** at the weekend when I have a bit more free time. I also **hoover** the carpets and **polish** the dining room table once a week.

Exercises

51.1 Find the correct ending on the right for each of these sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

1 I cleaned	the light
2 I went	into bed
3 I set	a wash
4 I switched off	my teeth
5 I had	to sleep
6 I put on	the alarm clock
7 I got	my pyjamas

51.2 The pictures show six things the woman did this morning. Complete the sentences below.



1 She .....
2 She .....
3 She .....
4 She .....
5 She .....
6 She .....

How often do you do these things? Complete these sentences about yourself.

1 I often .....
2 I sometimes .....
3 I occasionally .....
4 I never .....
5 I .....
6 I .....

51.3 Test your memory. Cover the opposite page and answer these questions about the pictures.

1 Does the alarm clock show 11.30?
2 Does he have one pillow or two?
3 Is the wardrobe open?
4 How many drawers does the chest of drawers have?
5 Is the girl in the bathroom holding a towel?
6 Is she looking in the mirror?
7 Is the shower above the bath?
8 Can you see any soap on the washbasin?

How well do you know your own home? Answer these questions as quickly as possible.

1 Have you got a mirror above the washbasin in the bathroom?
2 Have you got a towel rail on the same wall as the washbasin?
3 Is the toilet next to the bath/shower?
4 Have you got a wardrobe and chest of drawers in your bedroom?
5 Have you got a lamp on your bedside table?
6 Have you got an alarm clock?

52 Everyday problems

A There's something wrong with ...

If there is a problem with a machine or a thing that you use e.g. TV, light, washing machine, computer, food mixer, pen, etc., we often use these expressions:

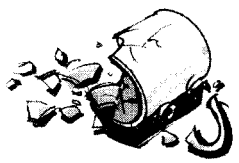
There's **something wrong with** the TV. (= there is a problem with it)
The light's **not working**. (= not functioning / there is no light)
The shower's **not working properly**. (= it is functioning but not very well)
The telephone is **out of order**. (= not in use / not functioning)

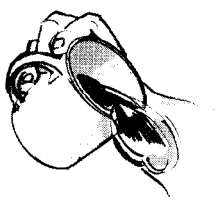
Note: The phrase **out of order** is often used when a public machine or piece of equipment isn't working, e.g. public telephone, public toilet, drinks machine at a station, etc.

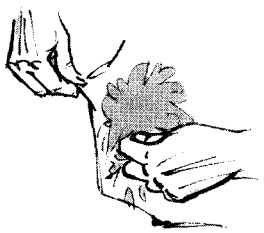
B In the home

Yesterday morning Paul had a lot of problems.

He **dropped** a cup

and it **broke** 

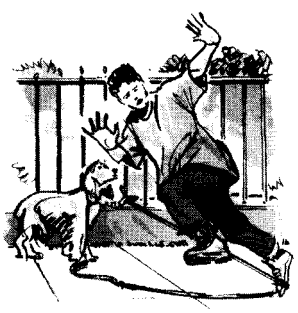
He got another cup, made a coffee, and then **spilt** it. 

It **ruined** (= destroyed) his T-shirt because there was a large **stain** on it. 

He decided to make some toast, but he **burnt** the first piece (if you **burn** something, you damage it with fire), then realised he'd **run out of** bread (= the bread was finished / there was no more bread). He did not leave home **in a good mood** (= feeling very happy).

C Out and about

After Paul went out, things got worse. He left home with a ten-pound note in his pocket, and walked to the bus stop. Unfortunately he was a bit late and the bus was a bit early, so he **missed the bus**. While he waited for the next one, he got out his walkman, but the **batteries** had **run out** (= the batteries were finished). When the bus arrived, he got on and put his hand in his pocket – no ten-pound note (he had **lost his money**). The driver told him to get off. He didn't want to be late for school, so he started running. Moments later, he saw a dog, but not its lead – and **tripped over** the lead.



He got to his feet, carried on to school, then he realised he had **left** his bag on the bus.

Note: Students often say 'he forgot his bag on the bus' in this situation. In English, we must use the verb **leave** if we say where something is. For example:

I've **forgotten** my bag; *but* I **left** my bag on the bus.

Exercises

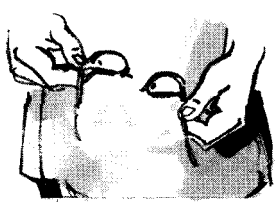
52.1 Complete the past tense and past participle of these verbs.

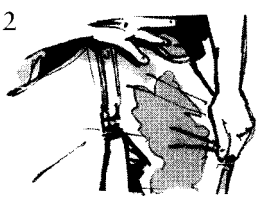
Infinitive	*Past tense*	*Past participle*
burn		
break		
drop		
spill		
trip		
lose		
leave		

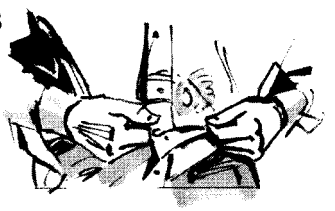
52.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

1 I dropped the radio on the floor	a when I lit that cigarette.
2 The batteries have run out	b and had to wait ages for another.
3 I'm afraid I left	c and it made a mess on the carpet.
4 I spilt the drink	d to bring my money.
5 I missed the bus	e my money at home.
6 I burnt myself	f and now I can't get it to work.
7 I forgot	g so I can't listen to my walkman.

52.3 This is what happened when Paul had a party at his house. Write a description of the damage.

1 

2 

3 

52.4 Write logical answers for each of these questions, using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1 How did you break that glass?
2 Why can't we watch TV?
3 How did you cut your knee like that?
4 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating?
5 What happened to the money I gave you?
6 Where's your homework?
7 What's wrong with this radio?
8 Why can't you use the public phone in the station?

52.5 Answer these questions using *often / occasionally / hardly ever / never.*

How often do you:

drop things?	break things?	burn things?
spill things?	lose things?	forget things?
trip over things?	leave things behind?	run out of things?

What sort of things do you drop, burn, run out of, etc.?

53 Money

A Notes and coins

Here are some examples of British money. The **currency** (= the type of money used in a country) is called **sterling**.

ten pounds
a ten-pound note

fifty pence (we usually say 50p)
a fifty-pence piece

B Common verbs

Notice how these common verbs are used.

spend £££ (**on**) sth.	Last week I **spent** £100 **on** food, and £20 **on** books.
pay (**for**) sth.	I **paid** £200 **for** my new desk. (= it cost me £200) Where do I have to **pay for** these things?
cost	My new desk **cost** (me) £200. (= I paid £200)
charge	The mechanic **charged** me £100. (= asked me to pay £100 for the service he provided)
lend	Could **you lend me** some money? *or*
borrow	Could **I borrow** some money?
waste	Parents often think that children **waste** their money (= use it badly) on sweets and other things that they don't need.
save (**up**)	I'm **saving** (**up**) (= keeping some of my money when I receive it) for a new bike. I should have enough by the end of the year.

C Adjectives

free	cheap	reasonable	quite expensive	very expensive	incredibly expensive
–	$	$	$	$	$

D Important words and phrases

I **can't afford** (= don't have enough money) to go on holiday this year.
How much is that watch **worth**? (= What is the **value** of that watch?)
It's **worth** about £50. (= **the value** is £50)
The **cost of living** (= how much people pay for things) is very high in places like Sweden or Norway, but people still have a good **standard of living** (= the level of money and comfort people have).

Exercises

53.1 **Fill the gaps using the past tense of verbs from the box. Be careful, most of them are irregular.**

buy	spend	lose	pay	cost
sell	win	waste	find	give

1 My car was five years old, so I ..... it and ..... a new one.
2 I was very sad when I ..... my watch in the street. It was a present from my wife and it ..... her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody ..... it the next day and took it to a Police Station.
3 I ..... over £2,000 for my computer, but it isn't worth very much now.
4 My father ..... me £50 last week but I ..... most of it on a ticket for a concert on Friday.
5 Last week somebody ..... £1m in a game on television. It was incredibly exciting.
6 I'm afraid I ..... my money on those CDs because I never play them.

53.2 **What can you say in these situations? Complete the sentences but do not use the underlined words and phrases.**

Example: You want to tell a friend that a restaurant wasn't cheap.
The restaurant was quite expensive.

1 You want to know the value of your friend's gold ring.
How much is .....?
2 A friend wants to go to an expensive restaurant but you don't have enough money.
I'm afraid I .....
3 You want to borrow some money from a friend.
Could you .....?
4 You want to know how much a friend paid for her dictionary.
How much .....?

53.3 **How quickly can you answer these questions? Write down answers to all of them in one minute, then go back and check. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.**

1 Is the currency in America called the dollar?
2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece?
3 If you lend something to someone, do they borrow it?
4 If you waste money, do you use it well?
5 Is 'sterling' a currency?
6 If you 'can't afford' something, do you have enough money for it?
7 Does 'cost of living' mean the same as 'standard of living'?
8 If someone tells you a hotel is reasonable, is it very expensive?

53.4 **Write down the approximate price of six things in your country, e.g. a daily newspaper, a short bus journey, a cup of coffee in a bar/cafe, a ticket for the cinema, a takeaway hamburger, a pair of jeans, etc. Do you think the price is expensive, reasonable, cheap? Compare your answers with someone from the same town, and if possible, someone from a different country.**

54 Health: illness and disease

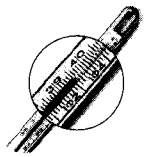
A Common problems

She's sneezing.

She's coughing.

She's got a a sore throat.

She's blowing her nose.


She's got a temperature.

What's the matter?	*How do you know?* (the symptoms)	*Cause of illness*
I've got **a cold**	a sore throat, sneezing, a cough	a virus
I've got **flu** (U) (more serious than a cold)	symptoms for a cold + aching muscles and a temperature, e.g. 39.5	a virus
I've got **hay fever** (U)	sneezing, runny nose, sore eyes	allergic reaction to pollen from grass
I've got **diarrhoea** (U)	I keep going to the toilet	often food, or a virus
I feel **sick**	I want to vomit (= be sick)	many e.g. food, alcohol
I've got **a hangover**	headache, feeling sick	too much alcohol

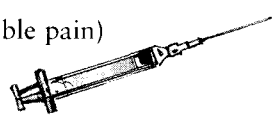
Note: For these **illnesses**, you can either buy something from the **chemist**, or go to your doctor, who may give you a **prescription** (= a piece of paper with an order for some medicine) that you get from the chemist.

B Aches and pains

Nouns: We only use **ache** with the following: I've got **toothache** (U), **a stomach-ache**, **backache** (U), **earache** (U) and **a headache**. For other parts of the body we use **pain**, e.g. I woke up in the night with a **terrible pain** in my chest.

Verbs: You can use **ache** for some things, e.g. my back aches; but **hurt** is more common to describe real pain, and it can be used with or without a direct object:

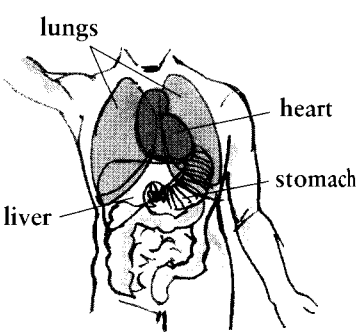
She **hurt** her foot when she jumped off the bus and fell over. (also **injured** here) *or*
She **hurt herself** when she jumped off the bus and fell over.
I hit my leg against the table and it **really hurts**. (= gives me a terrible pain)



Adjectives: The only common adjective is **painful** (≠ **painless**):

I had an **injection** yesterday and it was very **painful**.
A: Did it hurt when you had your filling? (= when the dentist fills a hole/cavity in the tooth)
B: No, it was **painless**.

C Serious illnesses



Doctors believe smoking is the major cause of **lung cancer**.
He had a **heart attack** and died almost immediately.
Hepatitis is a **liver disease**.
Asthma (chest illness causing **breathing** problems) has become more common.

Note: **Illness** and **disease** are often used in the same way, but **disease** is used for a serious condition caused by an infection e.g. a liver disease. **Illness** is a more general word.

Exercises

54.1 **Write down the main symptom or symptoms for these conditions.**

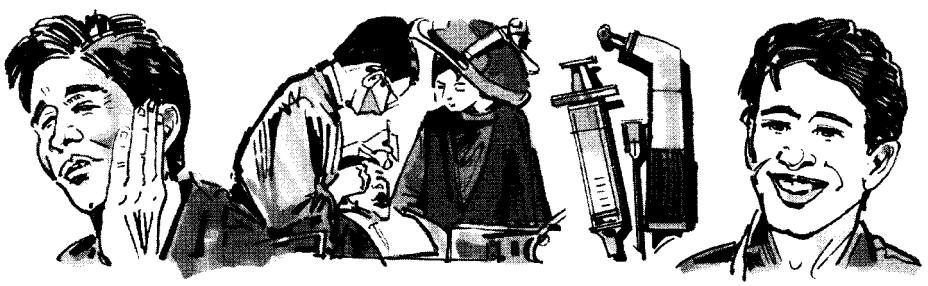
1 a cold: .....
2 flu: .....
3 hay fever: .....
4 a hangover: .....
5 diarrhoea: .....
6 asthma: .....

54.2 **Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.**

Examples: ache pain constipated stomach — *same*; *different*

1 disease diarrhoea
2 chemist ache
3 hurt allergic
4 virus illness
5 flu muscle
6 cough enough

54.3 **Look at the pictures and write what happened in the space below. Try to use at least three or four words or phrases from the opposite page.**



I had .....
.....

54.4 **Fill the gaps with a suitable word.**

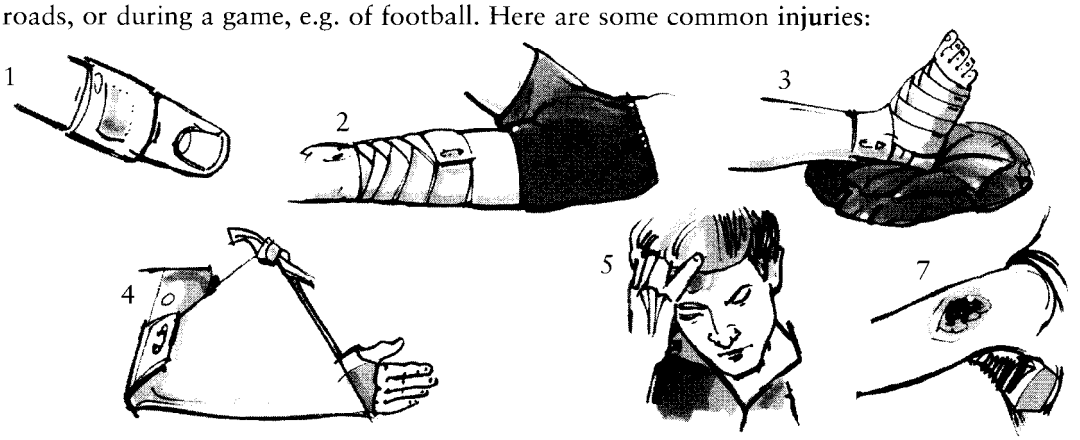
1 I hit my hand on the desk and it really .....
2 They say she died of a heart .....
3 She had some apples that weren't ready to eat and now she's got stomache-.....
4 I've got this terrible ..... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
5 He died of ..... cancer even though he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
6 I went to the doctor, and she gave me a ..... for some tablets.
7 Pollution makes her ..... worse and it's difficult for her to breathe.
8 There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious ..... than the other.
9 I hurt ..... when I fell off that chair.
10 My back ..... from sitting at that computer all day.

54.5 **Look at the opposite page again. Have you had any of these illnesses recently? Have you had any aches and pains recently? Make a list of the ones you have had. Are there any other illnesses you have had or still have? If so, find the name for it/them in English.**

55 Health: injuries

A Common injuries

An **injury** is damage to part of your body, usually caused by an accident in the home, on the roads, or during a game, e.g. of football. Here are some common **injuries**:



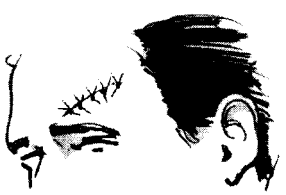
	What's the problem?	*How did it happen?*	*Result*	*Solution*
1	I **cut** (v, n) my finger	using a knife	it's **bleeding** a bit	a **plaster**
2	I cut my leg quite badly	I fell over	it's bleeding quite a lot	a **bandage** (n, v)
3	I **twisted my ankle**	running for a bus	I can't walk on it easily	rest
4	I **broke** my arm	I fell off my bike	I can't use it	**plaster** (U) and a **sling**
5	I've got **concussion**	playing football	I'm confused; don't know where I am	rest
6	I **burnt** my hand	taking something out of a hot oven	it's very **painful**	special cream
7	I've got **a bruise** (n, v) on my arm	I hit it on the side of my desk	it's **swollen** and blue/black in colour	ice pack

B Hospital treatment

Look carefully at the key words in these texts.

John fell off a chair, hit his head on the floor, and **knocked himself unconscious.** His wife called an **ambulance** but John was still **unconscious** when it arrived. He was **rushed** to hospital (= taken very quickly) where they kept him for two days for **blood tests.**

I jumped for the ball and **collided** with another player (= we ran into / hit each other). We both had **cuts** on our head, but I had to go to hospital for eight **stitches.**



C Wounds and injuries

Wound (n, v) and **injury** are both used to describe damage to the body, but a **wound** is generally caused by a **weapon** (e.g. gun or knife) and it is usually intentional.

He **shot** the man in the chest. (= a **bullet wound** in the chest) [from a gun]
He **stabbed** the boy in the back. (= a **knife wound** in the back)
He **got into a fight** and **got beaten up.** He had a **black eye** and two **broken ribs.**

Exercises

55.1 Complete the table with the correct verb forms.

Noun	*Verb*
cut	
wound	
injury	
shot	

Noun	*Verb*
blood	
bandage	
bruise	
treatment	

55.2 Look at the pictures and write the story.

Now compare your story with the model answer in the key.

55.3 Complete these conversations in a suitable way.

1 A: ... bleeding quite a bit, so I had to put a plaster on it before I could finish.
B: How did you do it, anyway?
A: Oh, I was .....

2 A: ... the next day the eye was really swollen and he had bruises down both his arms.
B: My goodness. What did he tell his parents?
A: More or less the truth. He said .....

3 A: ... tried to get up again but I couldn't move. It was incredibly painful, but fortunately there were a few pedestrians around to help me.
B: That's lucky. But what were you doing?
A: .....

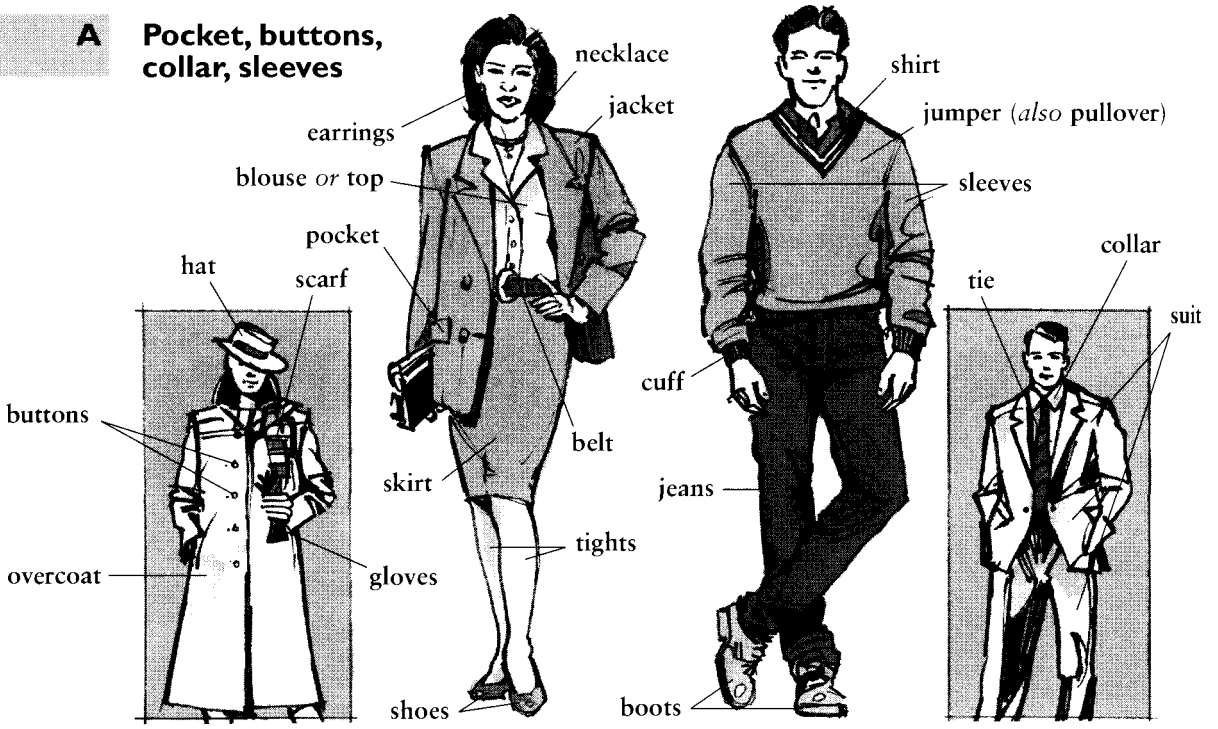
4 A: ... my face was cut and he had a terrible bruise on his head.
B: Sounds very unpleasant. How did it happen exactly?
A: .....

55.4 Answer these questions about yourself. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

1 Have you ever broken your arm or leg?
2 Have you ever needed stitches ?
3 Have you ever had concussion?
4 Have you ever been unconscious?
5 Have you ever had a blood test?
6 Have you ever been in an ambulance?

56 Clothes

A Pocket, buttons, collar, sleeves



Note: Some of these words are plural nouns, e.g. **jeans** and **trousers**. See Unit 27.

B Important verbs

Use this text to guess the meaning of the key words.

I got up at 7.30, had a shower, **got dressed**, and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I **put on** my overcoat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I **took off** my coat and **hung** it **up** behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I **took** my jacket **off** as well. During my lunchbreak I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one shop and **tried** it **on**, bit it didn't **fit** me – it was too small and they didn't have a bigger **size**.

Note: Notice the different word order with the verbs put on, take off, hang up, and try on. If you want to know the rule about this, turn to Unit 17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style.

C Too small and not long enough

The man is wearing a suit, but it doesn't fit him very well: the jacket is **too small** (= **not big enough**); the trousers are **too short** (= **not long enough**).

Exercises

56.1 **Finish this sentence with six different items of clothes.**

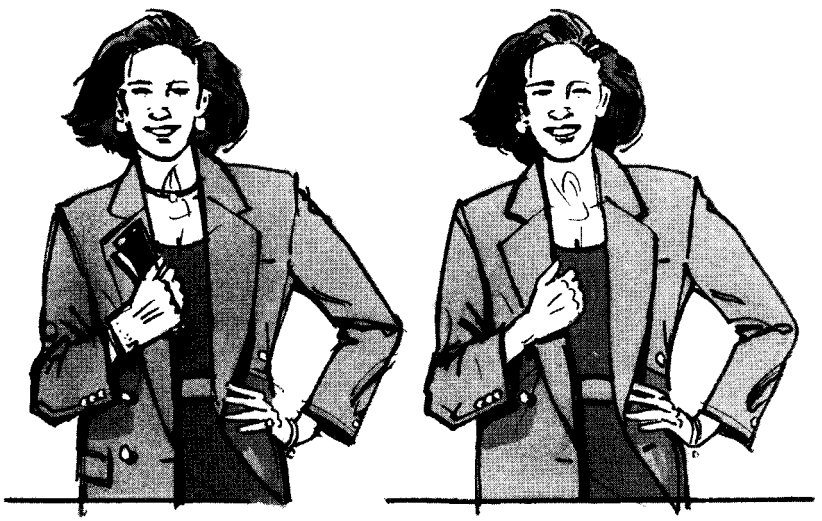
I need a pair of .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

56.2 **Find a logical order for these sentences.**

1 He took off his trousers.
2 He put his shoes back on.
3 He tried on the suit.
4 He went into the changing room.
5 He took it off.
6 He paid for the suit.
7 He took off his shoes.
8 He went back to the sales assistant.
9 He put his trousers on again.

56.3 **What's missing? Write down anything that is missing in the second picture of the woman.**

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



56.4 **Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)**

1 She decided to wear a ..... and a ..... instead of a dress.
2 I tried on a .....; the jacket was fine but the ..... were too short.
3 It was hot in the office, so I took off my jacket and ....., and rolled up the sleeves of my .....
4 I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn't big ..... and they didn't have it in a bigger .....
5 I also wanted a new jumper, but unfortunately the medium size was ..... big and the small size wasn't big .....

56.5 **Write down:**

1 five things usually worn by women only; and five things worn by men and women.
2 a list of clothes you like and don't like wearing.
3 five more items of clothing you have at home in your wardrobe / chest of drawers.

57 Shops and Shopping

A Shops and shopping

shop assistant: person who works in a shop; also called **sales assistant**
shop window: the window at the front of the shop
shopping centre: a place with many shops, outside or indoors
window shopping: to look round the shops but not buy anything
shopping list: a list of things to buy

I went **shopping** yesterday (= I went to the shops to buy food or clothes, etc.)
I did the **shopping** yesterday (= I bought food and household goods)

B Types of shop (and what they sell)

Name of shop	*What it sells*
department store	almost everything (furniture, clothes, electrical appliances, e.g. TV and washing machine, toys, jewellery, etc. and sometimes food)
supermarket	food and household goods, e.g. cleaning products
newsagent('s)	newspapers, cigarettes, sweets, stationery, e.g. writing paper, cards, envelopes, etc.
butcher('s)	meat
greengrocer('s)	fruit and vegetables
boutique	fashionable clothes
chemist('s)	medicine, baby products, shampoo, soap, toothpaste, etc.

Note: Most other shops are just '+ shop', e.g. shoe shop, record shop, camera shop, etc.

C Useful words and expressions

ASSISTANT: Can I help you? CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm **looking for** (= I want) a blue jumper.

ASSISTANT: Can I help you? CUSTOMER: No, **I'm just looking**, thanks. (= I don't need help)

ASSISTANT: Can I help you? CUSTOMER: **I'm being served**, thanks. (= another assistant is already serving/helping me)

ASSISTANT: What **size** are you looking for? (e.g. big? small? medium? 12? 14? 16?)

CUSTOMER: Where's the **changing room**? (= the room where you try on clothes; also called the **fitting room**)

ASSISTANT: It's down there on the right.

CUSTOMER: Yes, **I'll take** this one / these. (= Yes, I want to buy this one / these)

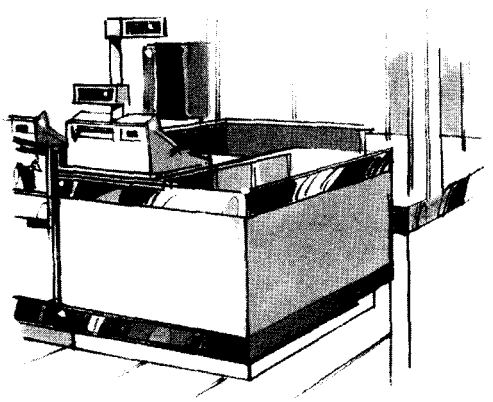
CUSTOMER: No, **I'll leave it** thanks. (= No, I don't want to buy it/them)

CUSTOMER: Excuse me. Where do I pay for these?

ASSISTANT: Over at the **cash desk/till**.

CUSTOMER: And can I **pay by** cheque / credit card?

ASSISTANT: Yes, of course.



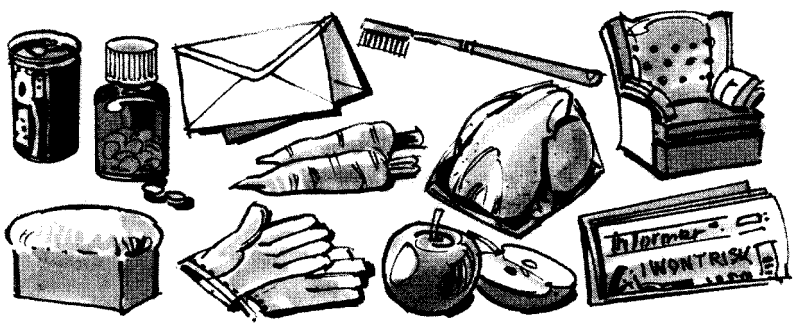
Exercises

57.1 Can you find a 'general' word on the opposite page to describe each group of items below?

Example: ...fruit..... e.g. apples, oranges and peaches

1 ..... e.g. shoes, a blouse, a jacket
2 ..... e.g. a sofa, an armchair, a table
3 ..... e.g. a television, a washing machine, a food mixer
4 ..... e.g. washing powder, soap, milk, toilet paper
5 ..... e.g. teddy bear, plastic gun, lego
6 ..... e.g. writing paper, envelopes

57.2 Where would you buy each of the items on the left? Choose from the shops in the box.



newsagent
chemist
department store
butcher
greengrocer
supermarket

Now write down two more things you could buy in each shop.

57.3 What word or phrase is being defined in these sentences?

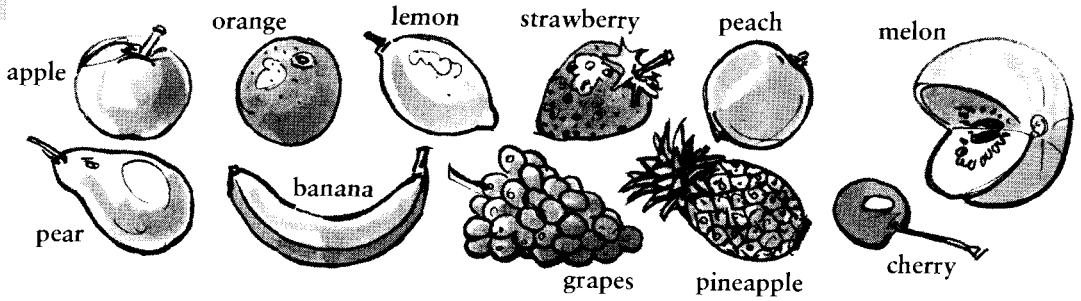
1 A shop where you can buy fashionable clothes.
2 A place with many shops, either outside or indoors.
3 A person who works in a shop.
4 The place where you can try on clothes in a shop.
5 The place where you pay for things in a shop.
6 To look round the shops without planning to buy anything.
7 The shop where you buy meat.
8 The shop where you buy medicines, baby products, shampoo, etc.

57.4 Complete this shopping dialogue.

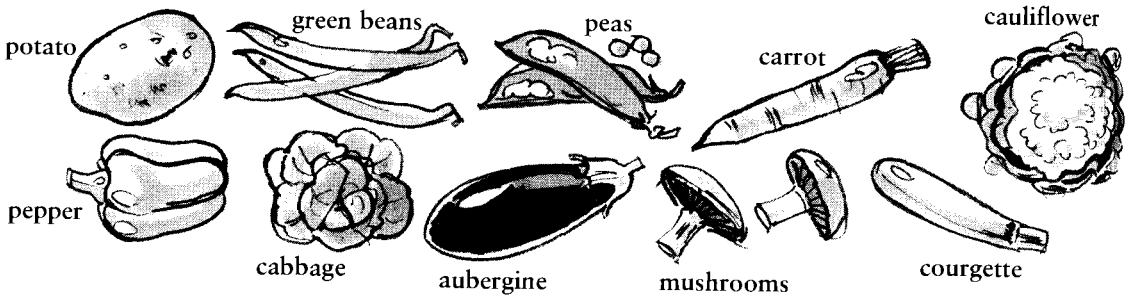
ASSISTANT 1: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm (1)..... a blouse like this, but in blue.
ASSISTANT 1: I see. And what (2)..... are you looking for?
CUSTOMER: Uh, 14 usually.
ASSISTANT 1: Ok, I'll just go and see if we've got any.
CUSTOMER: Thank you.
ASSISTANT 2: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: No, it's OK, I'm (3)..... thanks.
ASSISTANT 1: Here we are. The last one in stock.
CUSTOMER: Great. Can I try it on?
ASSISTANT 1: Yes of course. The (4)..... is just over there.
ASSISTANT 1: How was it?
CUSTOMER: Fine. I'll (5).....
ASSISTANT: Right. Would you like to pay over there at the (6).....?

58 Food

A Fruit

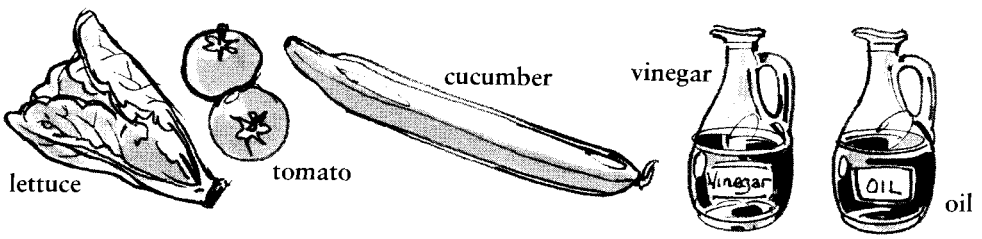


B Vegetables



C Salad

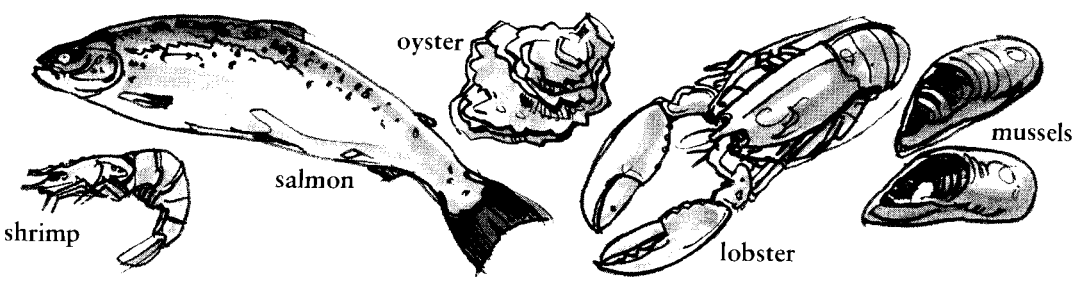
A salad is a mixture of uncooked vegetables. The main ingredient in a salad is **lettuce**, but it may also contain **tomato**, **cucumber**, and other things.



D Animals (meat), fish and shellfish

animal:	cow	calf (= young cow)	lamb (= young sheep)	pig
meat:	beef	veal	lamb	pork

Note: A person who does not eat meat is a **vegetarian**.



Exercises

58.1 Can you write down a vegetable and fruit:

	Vegetable	*Fruit*
1 beginning with the letter 'p'	potato	.....
2 beginning with the letter 'b'	.....	.....
3 beginning with the letter 'm'	.....	.....
4 beginning with the letter 'c'	.....	.....
5 beginning with the letter 'a'	.....	.....

58.2 Find a word in the right-hand box where the underlined letter(s) are pronounced in the same way as the underlined letter(s) in a word in the left-hand box. Be careful: there are two extra words in the right-hand box which you do not need.

lettuce	onion
orange	banana
aubergine	salmon

tomato	melon
salad	chicken
calf	lamb
cauliflower	mushroom

58.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork veal salmon beef
2 salmon shrimp oyster lobster
3 lettuce aubergine tomato cucumber
4 peach onion mushroom courgette
5 chicken lamb beef mussels

58.4 Do you eat the skin (= the outside) of these fruits – always, usually, or never? Make three lists.

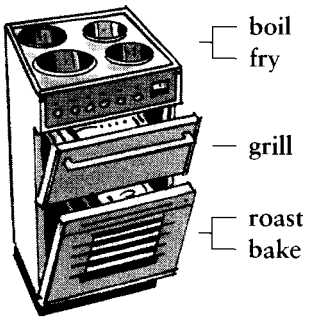
apples	pineapples	cherries	grapes
pears	bananas	peaches	mangoes
oranges	lemons	melons	strawberries

58.5 Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else who has done this exercise.

1 In my country ..... is/are more common than .....
2 In my country ..... is/are more expensive than .....
3 In my country a mixed salad usually contains .....
.....
4 In my country we don't grow .....
5 And we don't often eat .....
6 Personally, I prefer ..... to .....
7 I love ..... but I don't really like .....
8 My favourite meat is .....

59 Cooking and restaurants

A Ways of cooking food



boil: in water, e.g. carrots
fry: in oil or butter above the heat, e.g. sausages
grill: under the heat, e.g. toast or meat
roast: in the oven using oil, e.g. meat
bake: in the oven without oil, e.g. cakes

Note: Food which is not cooked is **raw**.

B Cooking steak

If you have steak you can eat it **rare** (= cooked very quickly and still red); **medium-rare** (cooked a bit longer and just red in the middle); **medium** (cooked a bit more and just pink); or **well-done** (cooked even longer and not pink at all).

C Describing food

tasty: has lots of taste: a positive word; ≠ **tasteless**: a negative word
bland: without a strong taste; neutral in flavour, e.g. boiled rice
sweet: lots of sugar; ≠ **bitter**
salty: lots of salt
hot/spicy: lots of spice, e.g. curry
fresh: recently produced, e.g. fresh bread; recently picked, e.g. fresh fruit
tender: easy to cut; a positive word used to describe meat; ≠ **tough**
fatty: meat with a lot of fat; ≠ **lean**
fattening: food which makes you **put on weight** / get fat, e.g. cream, biscuits, etc.

D Eating in restaurants

In Britain you often have three **courses**: a **starter** (e.g. soup), **a main course** (e.g. steak or chicken), and a **dessert** (e.g. strawberries or ice cream). You may also have an **aperitif** (= a drink before the meal, e.g. gin and tonic), and coffee after the meal. When you pay the **bill** (= the money for the meal; AmEng = **check**), you sometimes also leave a **tip** (= money) for the waiter if **service is not included** in the price. (10% is a normal tip.) If it is a popular restaurant, you may also need to **book** (= reserve) a table **in advance** (= before you go).

E The menu

Starters
Broccoli Soup
Home-made Chicken Liver Paté
Tagliatelle with Courgettes, Cream and Bacon

Main Courses
Baked Salmon with Spinach
Breast of Chicken in a White Wine Sauce with Mushrooms
Grilled Fillet Steak in a Pepper Sauce
Mushroom Risotto

Desserts
Chocolate Mousse
Fruit Salad
Ice Cream

Exercises

59.1 **Do you often eat the following food in your country? If so, do you eat it in the same way?**

Example: In Britain, we often eat 'fish' but not usually 'raw fish'.

raw fish	fried rice
fried eggs	grilled sausages
baked potatoes	roast beef
raw spinach	roast peppers
fried bread	boiled eggs
grilled cheese	baked bananas

59.2 **Look at the menu on the opposite page again, and answer these questions.**

1 Which starter doesn't contain vegetables?
2 Which dish contains pasta?
3 Which dish may be rare or well-done?
4 Which dish is definitely cooked in the oven?
5 Which dish will probably be quite spicy?
6 Which dish contains alcohol?
7 Which meat may be fatty or tough if you are unlucky?
8 Which dessert(s) will be quite sweet?
9 Which dessert must be very fresh?
10 You are on a diet (= you are trying to lose weight) and you do not want to have a fattening meal. Which would probably be the best dish to choose for each course?

59.3 **Choose a possible adjective from the opposite page to describe each of these foods.**

	Adjective		*Adjective*
lemon	.....	ice cream	.....
chicken	.....	fillet steak	.....
honey	.....	chillies	.....
bacon	.....	avocado	.....

59.4 **What about restaurants in your country, and your own taste in food? Answer these questions about yourself and your country.**

1 Do you normally need to book a restaurant in advance?
2 Is it common to give the waiter a tip? If so, how much?
3 Do you normally eat three courses in a restaurant? If not, how many courses do you normally have?
4 How many of these do you normally find on the table in a restaurant in your country?
salt *yes/no* pepper *yes/no* oil *yes/no*
vinegar *yes/no* napkins *yes/no*
5 Generally, do you add more salt to your food when you eat in restaurants?
6 Do you like steak? If so, how do you like it cooked?
7 Would you say that food in your country is very spicy?
8 Would you say that food in your country is generally quite fattening?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.

60 Town and country

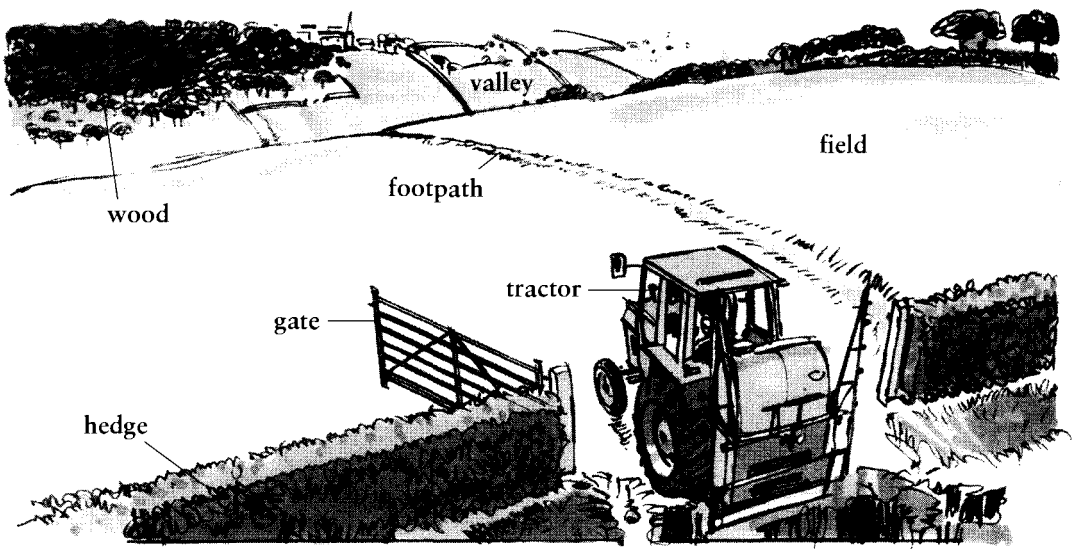
A Towns

Here are some of the things you will find in most big towns.

a **commercial centre**: an area with lots of banks and company offices
shopping centres: places with many shops, either indoors or outdoors
car parks: places to leave many cars
factories: buildings where you make/manufacture things, e.g. cars
suburbs: areas outside the centre of town where people live
libraries: places where you can borrow books
pollution: dirty air because of smoke and petrol fumes
night-life: places to go at night, e.g. bars, restaurants, cinemas, theatres, discos, etc.

B The country

Here are some of the things you will find **in the countryside.**



C Advantages and disadvantages

People who prefer the countryside to big towns, often say this:

Towns:	*The countryside:*
are noisy	is quiet and peaceful
are dirty and polluted	is clean
are stressful	is calm and relaxing
are crowded (= full of people)	has lots of open space
are dangerous	is safe

People who prefer big towns have a different point of view:

In towns:	*In the countryside:*
there are plenty (= lots) of things to do	there's **nothing** to do
it's exciting	it's boring
there's a **wide range of shops** (= many different shops)	there are only a few shops
there's lots of night-life, e.g. bars, cinemas, discos	there's no night-life

Exercises

60.1 Complete this table of opposites.

Big towns and cities	*Village life and the countryside*
.....	quiet and peaceful
.....	clean air
exciting	.....
stressful	.....
.....	lots of open spaces
.....	nothing to do in the evening
dangerous	.....

Do you agree with everything in the table above? Put a tick (✔) beside each answer you do, and a (✘) beside each answer you don't. If possible compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

60.2 Organise the words in the box into three groups: things that you usually find in towns (in your country), things you usually find in the country, and things you often find in both town and country.

fields	factories	gates	car parks	
libraries	tractors	suburbs	villages	
traffic	Town Hall	shopping centres		footpaths
pollution	valleys	night-life	woods	

Town	*Country*	*Town and country*

60.3 Look at the picture on the opposite page for one minute, then cover it and complete this text based on the picture.

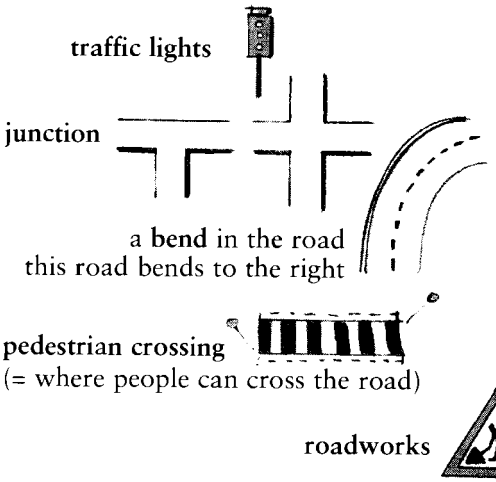
We opened the (1)....., said 'hello' to the man on the (2)....., and then followed the (3)..... across the (4)..... and down into the (5)..... We stopped and had a picnic by the river and then walked up through the (6)..... on the other side of the (7)..... A bit later we came to a (8)..... where we stopped and bought some bread.

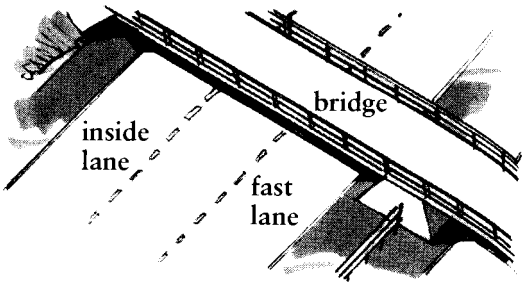
60.4 Think of your journey to school, college or work. How many of these things do you see or pass?

a car park *factories* *woods* *a library* *a museum* *parking meters*
lots of traffic commuters a night club fields suburbs a railway station

61 On the road

A Road features





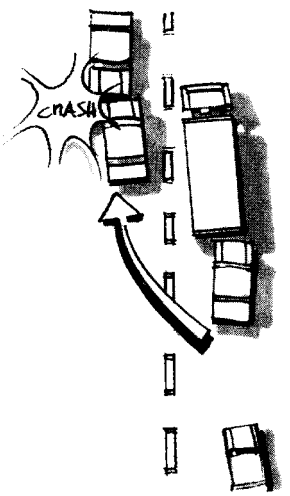
motorway (AmEng = freeway *or* expressway)

road signs

B An accident

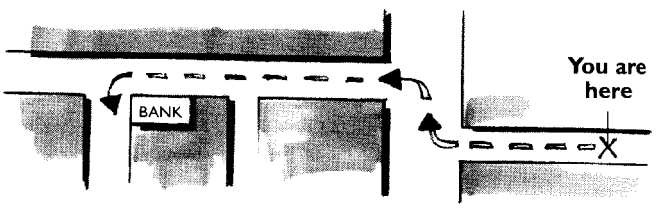
Read the text and use the context and the diagram to help you with the key words.

There was a serious **accident** on one of the **main roads** into Stuttgart this morning. An old lorry (AmEng = truck) **broke down** in the middle of the road, and the driver couldn't move it. It was eight o'clock, the middle of the **rush hour**, so it soon created a terrible **traffic jam**. Drivers got very angry and a man in a Mercedes tried to go round the lorry. Unfortunately another car **was coming in the opposite direction**. The driver **braked** hard and tried to stop, but he couldn't **prevent** the accident – the Mercedes **crashed into** the front of his car. The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured** and both cars were very **badly damaged**.



C Giving directions

Go **along** here, **turn** right **into** the main road, then **take the first turning on your left**. **Keep going**, and then turn left again when you **get to** the bank.



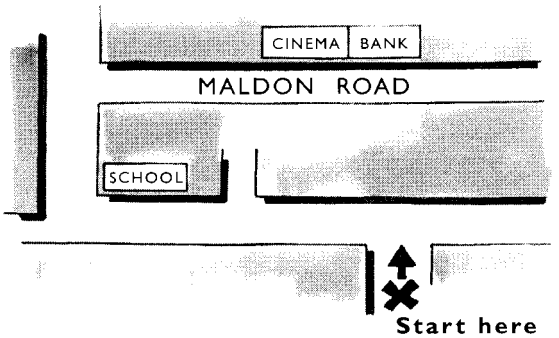
D Important words and phrases

Taxis (AmEng = cab) use the road; **pedestrians** use the **pavement** (AmEng = sidewalk).
The **speed limit** on motorways in Great Britain is 70 mph (120 kph).
Most **petrol stations** (AmEng = gas station) in Great Britain are self-service.
Get in the car and remember to **fasten your seat belt**.
The other car was going very slowly, so I decided to **overtake** (= pass it on the outside lane).

Exercises

61.1 **Complete the text for directions to the bank using the map to help you.**

Go ..... and
..... at the junction. Then
you ..... and ..... right
when you ..... the ..... . Then
..... again ..... Road,
and the bank is .....
just ..... cinema.



61.2 **Fill the gaps with the correct words.**

1 Don't forget to ..... your ..... belt when you ..... the car.
2 There was a bad accident this morning. One driver died, the other driver was badly ....., and both cars were badly ..... .
3 In the morning, the ..... starts at about 7 o'clock and goes on until at least 9.30. Then it starts again about 4.30 in the afternoon.
4 It was raining, so when I ..... the car didn't stop quickly enough, and I ..... into the back of the car in front.
5 The bicycle hit me just as I stepped off the ..... to cross the road.
6 The car ...., so I phoned a garage and they sent someone to repair it.
7 There was a terrible ...., and that's why it took me two hours to get home in the car.
8 I was doing about 65 mph on the inside ..... of the motorway, and suddenly a car ..... me doing about 90 mph.

61.3 **Many road signs are international. Do you know or can you guess what these mean?**

1 You can't .....

4 There's only one .....

7 traffic .....

2 50 mph* is the .....

5 end of .....

8 a low .....

3 you can't .....

6 a car .....

9 .....

(*mph = miles per hour; 50 mph = 80 kph approximately)

61.4 **Answer these questions about your own country.**

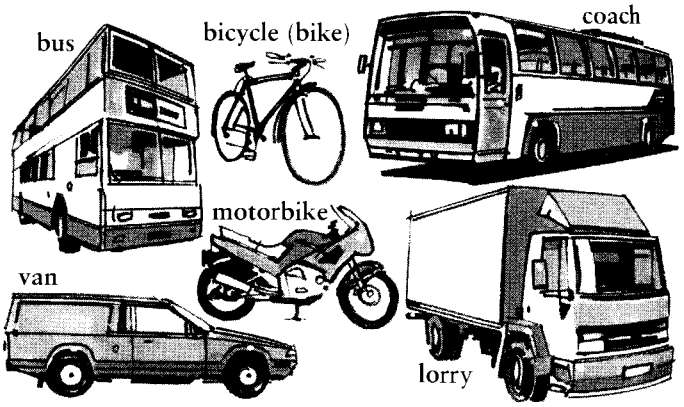
1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings?
4 Are most petrol stations self-service, or do people serve you?

62 Transport

A Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.

A: How did you get here?
B: I came by bus.
A: And the others?
B: Sue and John came by car.
A: And Paul?
B: He missed the bus, so he had to take a taxi.

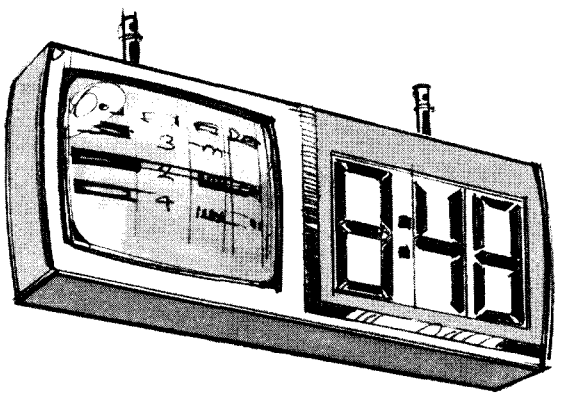


B Catch a bus, take a taxi

Bus	*Train*	*Plane*	*Taxi*	*Bicycle*	*Car*
driver	driver	pilot	driver	cyclist	driver
drives	drives	flies	drives	rides	drives
(£) fare	fare	air fare	fare	–	–
catch/take	catch/take	take	take	go on (my)	go by
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in/out	get on/off	get in/out
bus station	railway station	airport	taxi rank	–	–

C Railway stations

You may hear these announcements.



The train now arriving at **platform** 3 is the 8.48 **to** London Paddington, calling at Swindon and Reading.
Passengers for Didcot **change** (= change trains) at Swindon.
We apologise to passengers for the **late arrival** of the 8.52 **to** Oxford.
This train will now arrive at platform 6 in approximately 20 minutes.
The next train **due to** (= timetabled to) arrive at platform 4 is the 9.06 to Birmingham.

D Buses

Sometimes buses are not very **punctual** (= they don't arrive at the correct time). Where I live buses should **run** (= come) every ten minutes, but sometimes I wait at the **bus stop** for half an hour with a long **queue** (AmEng = line) of people, and then three buses come together, and they're all **full up** (= full of people, and no more people can get on). On other occasions the bus is early and I **miss** it (= I don't catch it. NOT ~~I lost the bus.~~).

Exercises

62.1 **Cross out the incorrect word in these sentences.**

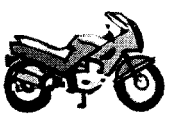
1 You mustn't ride/drive a motorbike without a crash helmet.
2 She told him to get in / get on the car and fasten his seat belt.
3 Bus fares/tickets are getting more expensive.
4 Trains to the airport travel/run every half hour.
5 The pilot couldn't drive/fly the plane in such bad weather.
6 Have a look at the train schedule/timetable to find out when the next one arrives.
7 We were late, so we had to take/catch a taxi.
8 I left my house a bit late and I lost/missed the bus.

62.2 **Write down two different words that can combine with each of the words below.**

Example: miss *the bus*, *the train*

1	3	5 .....
fare	station	get in
.....	.....	.....
2	4	6 .....
get on	driver	journey
.....	.....	.....

62.3 **Identify these means of transport without looking at the opposite page.**



1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

62.4 **Fill the gaps with the correct word.**

1 Our train leaves from ..... 7.
2 I waited at the ..... for ten minutes, and then two buses arrived.
3 I couldn't get on the first bus because it was .....
4 The train was half an hour late. I think the reason for the late ..... was bad weather.
5 Buses are not very ..... Sometimes they come every five minutes, then other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ..... of people.
7 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ..... from the airport to our hotel.
8 I think the next train is ..... to arrive in about ten minutes.

62.5 **Are these statements *true* or *false* in your experience?**

1 Trains are more reliable than buses.
2 Train fares are more expensive than bus fares.
3 Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.
4 Railway stations are nicer places than bus stations.
5 You get to the place you are going faster by taxi than by car.

63 Work: duties, conditions and pay

A What do you do?

People may ask you about your job. They can ask and you can answer in different ways:

What do you do?	I'm (+ job) e.g. a banker / an engineer / a teacher / a builder
What's your job?	I **work in** (+ place or general area) e.g. a bank / marketing
What do you do for a living?	I **work for** (+ name of company) e.g. Union Bank, ICI, Fiat

Note: 'Work' is usually an uncountable noun, so you cannot say 'a work'. If you want to use the indefinite article you must say 'a job', e.g. She hasn't got a job at the moment.

B What does that involve? (= What do you do in your job?)

When people ask you to explain your work/job, they may want to know your main **responsibilities** (= your duties / what you have to do), or something about your daily **routine** (= what you do every day/week). They can ask like this: What does that (i.e. your job) **involve**?

Main responsibilities

I'm **in charge of** (= **responsible for**) all deliveries out of the factory.
I have to **deal with** any complaints (= take all necessary action if there are complaints).
I **run** the coffee bar and restaurant in the museum (= I am in control of it / I manage it).

Note: We often use **responsible for / in charge of** for part of something, e.g. a department or some of the workers; and **run** for control of <u>all</u> of something, e.g. a company or a shop.

Daily duties/routines

I have to **go to / attend** (*fml*) a lot of **meetings**.
I visit/see/meet **clients** (= people I do business with or for).
I **advise** clients (= give them help and my opinion).
It involves **doing** quite a lot of **paperwork** (a general word we use for routine work that involves paper e.g. writing letters, filling in forms, etc.). Note the **-ing** form after **involve**.

C Pay

Most workers are **paid** (= receive money) every month and this **pay** goes directly into their bank account. It is called a **salary**.We can express the same idea using the verb **to earn**:

My **salary** is $60,000 a year. (= I **earn** $60,000 a year.)

With many jobs you **get** (= receive) **holiday pay** and **sick pay** (when you are ill). If you want to ask about holidays, you can say:

How **much holiday** do you get? *or* How **many weeks' holiday** do you get?

The total amount of money you receive in a year is called your **income**. This could be your salary from one job, or the salary from two different jobs you have. And on this income you have to **pay** part to the government – called **income tax**.

D Working hours

For many people in Britain, these are 8.30–9.00 a.m. to 5.00–5.30 p.m. Consequently people often talk about a **nine-to-five job** (= regular working hours). Some people have **flexi-time** (= they can start an hour or so earlier or finish later); and some have to **do shiftwork** (= working at different times, e.g. days one week and nights the next week). Some people also **work overtime** (= work extra hours). Some people are paid to **do/work overtime**, others are not paid.

Exercises

63.1 **Match the verbs on the left with the nouns or phrases on the right. Use each word once only.**

1 earn	overtime
2 work	meetings
3 pay	a shop
4 go to	clients
5 deal with	£500
6 run	income tax

63.2 **Starting with the words you are given, rewrite each of these sentences using vocabulary from the opposite page. The basic meaning must stay the same.**

Example: I'm a banker.
I work *in banking*.

1 What do you do?
What's .....
2 I earn $50,000 dollars.
My .....
3 I get £20,000 from my teaching job and another £10,000 from writing.
My total .....
4 I am a chemist.
I work for .....
5 In my job I have to look after and maintain all the computers in the building.
My job involves .....
6 I'm responsible for one of the smaller departments.
I'm in .....

63.3 **This is part of a conversation with a teacher about her job. Can you supply the missing questions?**

A: .....?
B: I usually start at nine and finish at four.
A: .....?
B: Yes a bit. On certain courses I work until five o'clock, and then I get paid extra.
A: .....?
B: Twelve weeks. That's one of the good things about being a teacher.
A: .....?
B: No we don't, I'm afraid. That's one of the disadvantages of being a teacher. But I suppose money isn't everything.

63.4 **Can you answer these general knowledge questions about work?**

1 What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
2 Can you name three jobs that get very high salaries in your country?
3 When you start paying income tax in your country, what is the minimum amount you have to pay?
4 What jobs often involve shiftwork? (Give at least two examples.)
5 Is flexi-time common in your company or your country?

63.5 **Think about your own job. How many of the things on the opposite page do you do? How is your work different? Can you explain your responsibilities and daily duties in English?**

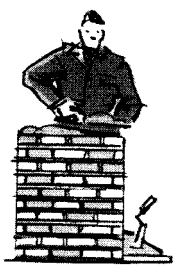
64 Jobs

A The medical profession

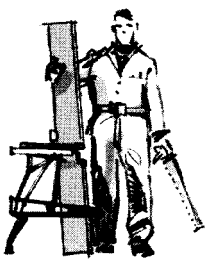
These people **treat** (= give medical treatment and try to solve a medical problem) and **look after** (= care for / take care of) others: **doctor, nurse, surgeon** (= a specialist doctor who works in a hospital and **operates on** people), **dentist**, and **vet** (= animal doctor). The word 'vet' is a short form for 'veterinary surgeon'.

B Manual jobs

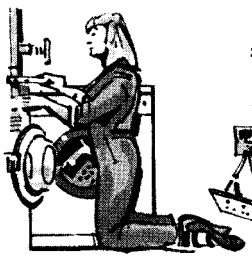
These are jobs where you work with your hands, and all the examples below are **skilled** jobs (= they need a lot of training).



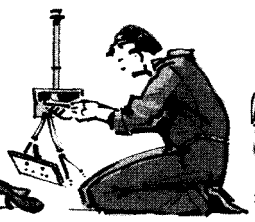
bricklayer (builds walls)



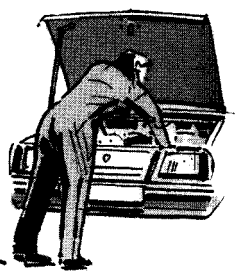
carpenter (makes things using wood)



plumber (fits and repairs water pipes, bathrooms, etc.)



electrician (fits and repairs electrical things)



mechanic (repairs cars)

C Professional people

Job	*Definition*
architect	designs buildings
lawyer	represents people with legal problems
engineer	plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies
university lecturer	teaches in a university
broker (stock market)	buys and sells stocks and shares

D The armed forces and the emergency services

soldier (in the army)

sailor (in the navy)

pilot (in the air force)

police officer (in the police force)

firefighter (in the fire brigade)

Exercises

64.1 Write down at least one job from the opposite page that would probably be impossible for these people.

1 Someone who didn't go to university.
2 Someone with very bad eyesight (= cannot see very well).
3 Someone who is always seasick on a boat.
4 Someone who understands nothing about cars.
5 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends.
6 Someone who is afraid of dogs.
7 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.
8 Someone who is terrible at numbers and figures.
9 Someone who can't stand the sight of blood.
10 Someone who is a pacifist, who is anti-war.

64.2 Complete these definitions.

1 An architect ...designs buildings.....
2 A university lecturer .....
3 An accountant .....
4 A vet .....
5 A lawyer .....
6 An engineer .....
7 A bricklayer .....
8 A stock broker .....
9 A mechanic .....
10 A surgeon .....

64.3 Respond to the statements below, as in the example.

Example: A: He's a policeman.
B: ...Really? When did he join the police force?.....

1 A: He's a soldier.
B: .....?
2 A: He's a sailor.
B: .....?
3 A: He's a fighter pilot.
B: .....?
4 A: He's a firefighter.
B: .....?

64.4 You have just bought a piece of land and you are planning to build a house on it. Write down at least six people from the opposite page that you may need to help you. What would you need their help for?

Example: a bricklayer to build the walls

64.5 Write a list of friends, relatives and neighbours (just choose people who have jobs). Can you write down what each person does? Use a bilingual dictionary to help you if necessary.

Example: My uncle Jim is an engineer. His wife is an accountant.

65 The career ladder

A Getting a job

When Paul left school he **applied for** (= wrote an official request for) a job in the accounts department of a local engineering company. They gave him a job as a **trainee** (= a very junior person in a company). He didn't earn very much but they gave him a lot **of training** (= organised help and advice with learning the job), and sent him on **training courses**.

Note: **Training** is an uncountable noun, so you cannot say 'a training'. You can only talk about **training** (in general), or a **training course** (if you want to refer to just one). Here you can use the verbs **do** or **go on**: **I did / went on** several training courses last year.

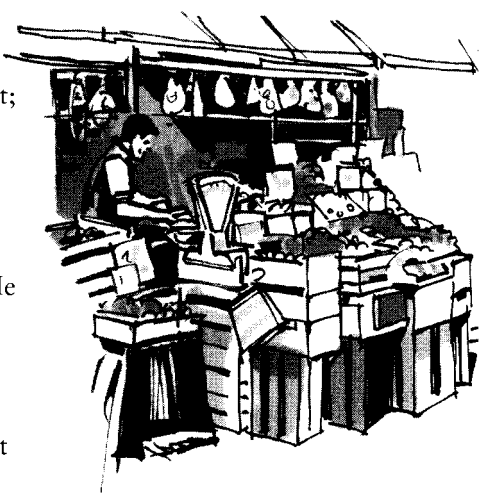
B Moving up

Paul worked hard at the company and his **prospects** (= future possibilities in the job) looked good. After his first year he got a good **pay rise** (= more money), and after two years he was **promoted** (= given a higher position with more money and responsibility). After six years he was **in charge of** (= **responsible for** / the boss of) the accounts department with five other **employees** (= workers in the company) **under him** (= under his responsibility/authority).

C Leaving the company

By the time Paul was 30, however, he decided he wanted a **fresh challenge** (= a new exciting situation). He was keen to work abroad, so he **resigned** from his company (= officially told the company he was leaving his job; you can also say 'he **quit** the company') and started looking for a new job with a bigger company. After a couple of months he managed to find a job with an international company which **involved** (= included) a lot of foreign travel. He was very excited about the new job and at first he really enjoyed the travelling, but ...

D Hard times



After about six months, Paul started to dislike the constant moving around, and after a year he hated it; he hated living in hotels, and he never really made any friends in the new company. Unfortunately his work was not satisfactory either and finally he was **sacked** (= told to leave the company / **dismissed** / **given the sack**) a year later.

After that, Paul found things much more difficult. He was **unemployed** (= **out of work** / without a job) for over a year. He had to sell his car and move out of his new house. Things were looking bad and in the end Paul had to accept a **part-time** job (= working only some of the day or some of the week) on a fruit and vegetable stall in a market.

E Happier times

To his surprise, Paul loved the market. He made lots of friends and enjoyed working out in the open air. After two years, he **took over** (= took control of) the stall. Two years later he opened a second stall, and after ten years he had fifteen stalls. Last year Paul **retired** (= stopped working completely) at the age of 55, a very rich man.

Exercises

65.1 **Write a single word synonym for each of these words/phrases.**

1 given the sack = ...
2 out of work = ...
3 left the company = ...
4 was given a better position in the company = ...
5 future possibilities in a job = ...
6 stopped working for ever = ...
7 workers in a company = ...

65.2 **Find the logical answer on the right for each of the questions on the left.**

1 Why did they sack him?	a Because he was nearly 65.
2 Why did they promote him?	b Because he was late for work every day.
3 Why did he apply for the job?	c Because he needed more training.
4 Why did he retire?	d Because he was out of work.
5 Why did he resign?	e Because he was the best person in the department.
6 Why did he go on the course?	f Because he didn't like his boss.

65.3 **Complete these sentences with a suitable word or phrase.**

1 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work .....
2 She'd like to go on another training .....
3 I'm bored in my job. I need a fresh .....
4 He works on a stall in the .....
5 At the end of this year we should get a good pay .....
6 She's got more than a hundred workers under .....
7 I didn't know he was the new manager. When did he take .....?
8 It's a boring job and the pay is awful. Why did he .....?

65.4 **Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.**

Verb	*General noun*	*Personal noun(s)*
promote	.....	–
employ	.....	.....
resign	.....	–
retire	.....	–
train	.....	.....

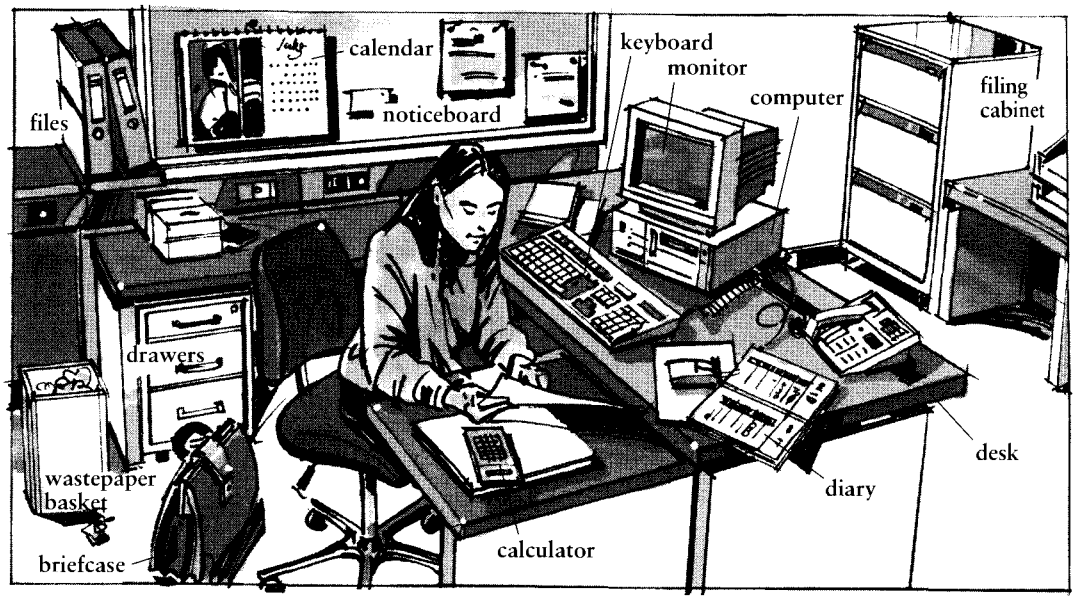
65.5 **Have you got a job in a company? If so, answer these questions as quickly as you can.**

1 What does your job involve?
2 Are you responsible for anything or anyone?
3 Have you had much training from the company?
4 Have the company sent you on any training courses?
5 Have you been promoted since you started in the company?
6 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
7 How do you feel about your future prospects in the company?
8 Are you happy in the job or do you feel it is time for a fresh challenge in another company?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.

66 In the office and in the factory

A The office



B Office work

Brenda works for a company which produces furniture. She works in an office, which is just opposite the factory where the furniture is made. This is how she spends her day:

She **works at a computer** most of the time, where she writes letters and reports.
She answers phone calls, mostly from **retailers**. (= shops selling the factory's furniture)
She makes phone calls to retailers, and the factory making the furniture.
She **sends invoices** to customers. (= paper showing products sold and the money to pay)
She **shows visitors around** the factory.
She **does general paperwork**, e.g. filing reports, writing memos, answering letters.
She **arranges meetings** for her boss and other managers in the company.

C The 'shop floor' of the factory

This is where products are **manufactured** (= made). Modern factories have fewer workers than in the past – this is because of **automation** (= machines do most of the work), and most factories use an **assembly line** (= an arrangement in which each worker makes a part of the product and then passes it on to the next person or machine). On an assembly line, workers **fit/assemble** the different parts, and **supervisors** (= people in charge/control) **check/inspect/examine** each stage to make sure the product **meets the required standard** (= is good enough).

D Finished goods

Goods (*pl*) is the general word used for things that are made to be sold. When the product, e.g. a radio, is finished, it is **packaged** (= put in plastic and then in a box) and **stored** (= kept) in a **warehouse**. When a customer, e.g. an electrical shop, **orders** some of these **goods**, they are **delivered** to the shop (= taken to the shop) using road or rail.

Exercises

66.1 **Write down three nouns that could follow each of these verbs. You can use the same noun more than once. Not all of them are on the left-hand page.**

1 write ...a letter.....
.....
.....
2 send .....
.....
.....

3 make .....
.....
.....
4 arrange .....
.....
.....

66.2 **Fill the gaps with the correct word to form a compound noun in each case.**

1 I told him to put the details on the notice.....
2 She has to check the goods when they come off the assembly .....
3 I'm sure I took the reports out of the filing ..... and put them in my brief.....
4 It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general paper.....
5 I threw all that stuff in the wastepaper .....

66.3 **What words from the opposite page are being defined here?**

1 The place where you store finished products before they are sold.
2 The process of using machines to do work that used to be done by men and women.
3 A plural noun for things that are made to be sold.
4 A thing you often hang on the wall, which tells you the date.
5 A book where you often write down all your appointments and things you have to do.
6 A piece of paper which shows the products that a customer bought and the money they have to pay.
7 A person or business that sells goods to the public.
8 A part of a desk where you often keep pens, paper, notes, etc.

66.4 **Replace the underlined verb using a different verb with the same meaning (in this context).**

1 This particular machine is <u>made</u> in Germany.
2 I help them to <u>assemble</u> the different parts.
3 The supervisor always <u>inspects</u> our work carefully
4 When the books are printed they are <u>kept</u> in the warehouse.
5 The factory said they'll be able to <u>take</u> the furniture to the shops next Monday.

66.5 **Have you got a job? If so, how many of these statements are true for you in your job? (If you haven't got a job, how many of these things would you like to do?)**

1 I work at a computer a lot of the time.
2 I do quite a lot of general paperwork.
3 I make a lot of phone calls.
4 I send faxes occasionally.
5 I show people around my workplace.
6 I arrange meetings.
7 I attend (= go to) quite a lot of meetings.
8 I have to write letters and reports.
9 I go to conferences.

67 Business and finance

A Banks and businesses

Most businesses need to borrow money to **finance** (= pay for) **investments** (= things they need to buy in order to help the company, e.g. machines). The money they borrow from the bank is called **a loan**, and on this loan they have to **pay interest**, e.g. if you borrow £1,000 and the **interest rate** is 10%, then you have to **pay back** £1,000, plus £100 in interest.

B Businesses and profit

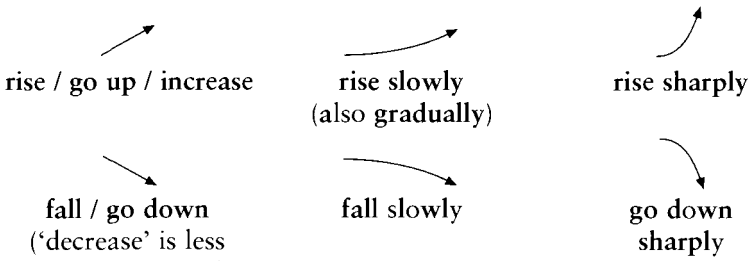
One of the main **aims/objectives** (= the things that you hope to do/achieve) of a company is to **make a profit** (= earn/receive more money than it spends) (≠ **make a loss**). If a company does not make a profit or a loss, it **breaks even**.

Most companies are happy if they can **break even** in their first year of business.

Companies receive money from selling their products – this money is called the **turnover**. The money that they spend is called the **expenditure** (*fml*). They spend money on these things: **raw materials** (= materials in their natural state used to make something else, e.g. coal and oil are important **raw materials** used to make plastics); **labour** (= employees); **overheads** (= necessary costs for a company, e.g. rent for buildings, electricity, telephone)

C Rise and fall

Business people often need to talk about the movement of sales, prices, interest rates, profit and loss, etc. Here are some of the words used to describe these **trends** (= movements):



Note: **rise**, **increase**, and **fall** are also used as nouns: a **slow rise** in interest rates, a **steady increase** in sales, a **sharp fall** in profits, a **dramatic** (= sharp) **rise** in inflation. We can also use **be up/down**: prices **are up** by 10%; profits **are down** by £2m.

D Businesses and the economy

In order to **grow/expand** (= get bigger) and **thrive/prosper** (= do well / be successful), many companies want or need the following:

low inflation, so prices do not go up
low interest rates, so the company can borrow money without paying a lot of interest
economic and **political stability** (= things remain steady and stable and there are no sudden changes in the economic and political situation)
a **healthy/strong** economy (= in good condition), and not an economy **in recession** (= in a period of reduced and slow business activity)
tax cuts (= tax reductions / lower taxes), so they can keep more of their profit. This often depends on government expenditure, e.g. The government will not be able to **reduce** taxes if **public expenditure** continues to rise.

Exercises

67.1 **What single word or phrase is being defined in each of these sentences?**

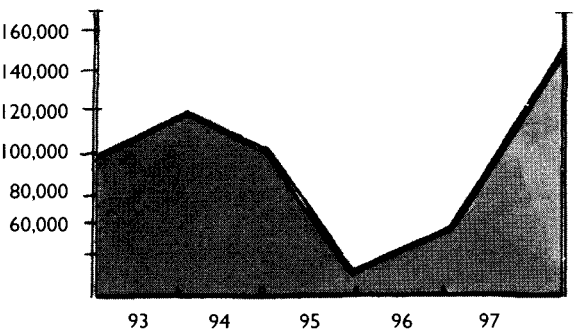
1 Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
2 What you must pay the bank if you borrow money.
3 The continuous increase in the price of things.
4 The things you hope to do/achieve within a period of time.
5 When a company does not make a profit or a loss.
6 When an economy is in a period of reduced and slow business activity.

67.2 **Replace the underlined word(s) in each sentence with another word that has the same meaning.**

1 There has been a <u>slow</u> rise in sales.
2 This comes after a <u>dramatic</u> fall last year.
3 Fortunately the company is <u>doing well</u> now.
4 And it's <u>growing</u> very quickly.
5 This is one of their main <u>objectives</u>.
6 Profits have <u>risen</u> considerably.

67.3 **Look at the graph and complete the sentences on the left with one word for each gap.**

1 In 1993 sales .....
2 In the following year they ....
3 In 1995 there was a .... in sales.
4 In 1996 business improved and there was a ....
5 And in 1997 sales ....
6 In the five-year period sales ..... by 40,000.



67.4 **Fill the gaps to form compound words or common phrases.**

1 ..... expenditure
2 ..... stability
3 tax .....
4 ..... rate
5 raw .....
6 profit and .....

67.5 **Can you answer these questions about your own country?**

1 What is the current inflation rate?
2 If you borrowed $10,000 from your bank, what would the interest rate be approximately?
3 What is the state of the economy at the moment? Is it strong? Is it in recession?
4 Do you think businesses are optimistic about the future?
5 Has the government reduced company taxes or personal taxes in the last twelve months?
6 Has public expenditure risen or fallen in the last twelve months?

68 Sales and marketing

A What is marketing?

People talk about the **marketing mix**. This **consists of** (= it is formed from and includes):

choosing the right **product** (= what a company produces/makes or offers)
selling it at the right **price** (= what it costs to the buyer/consumer)
using the right kind of **promotion** (= the ways to make the product popular and well-known; this includes **advertising**.)
making it available in the right **place** (= where you sell the product and how it reaches the **consumer**; also known as **distribution**)

This 'mix' is often referred to as the four Ps, and marketing people have the job of matching these things to the needs of **consumers** (= the people who buy and use products). People who buy the products of a particular company are that company's **customers/clients**.

B 'Sales' and 'market'

There are a number of words which combine with **sales** and **market** to form compound nouns and word partnerships which are very common in marketing.

sales figures: the amount you have sold
sales target: the amount you would like to sell in a future period
sales forecast: the amount you think you will sell in a future period, e.g. next year
sales representative: a person who sells a company's products; abbreviated to **sales rep**
sales/marketing manager: the person who runs the **sales/marketing department**
market research: collecting and studying information about what people want and need
market share: the % of a market that a company has, e.g. a 20% market share
market leader: the company or product with the biggest market share

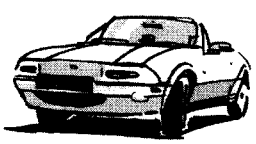
C Competition

Ford Motors is the **market leader** in the UK car industry. Its **main competitors** (= the most important companies in the same market) are Vauxhall and Rover, and it has had to work very hard in recent years to maintain its **market share**. Every time a competitor **launches** a new product (= introduces a new car onto the market), it is harder for Ford to stay in front.

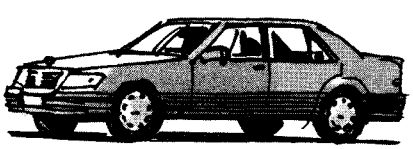
D A company's image

The **image** of a product/company (= the picture or idea that people have of the product/company) is very important in sales and marketing. Some companies want a **fashionable** image (= modern and up-to-date), others do not. For example:

mass-produced (= made in large numbers), **reliable** (= you can trust it), **good value** (= good for the money) functional but boring.



young; **exciting**, **glamorous** (= exciting + attractive); often fashionable, dangerous; not very practical.



high quality (= high standard/ very good), **luxury** (= expensive and giving great comfort), **high status/prestige** (= important; driven by important people).

Exercises

68.1 **The 'marketing mix' consists of the four Ps. Can you remember what they are? Write them down and then check on the opposite page.**

68.2 **See how many different compound words and word partnerships you can form from the words in the box (you can use a word more than once), then complete the definitions below.**

sales	market	manager	share	figures
marketing	leader	research	department	forecast

1 A sales ..... is what you think you are going to sell during a future period.
2 The marketing ..... will be responsible for all the activities in the marketing .....
3 Sales ..... tell you how much you have sold of a product.
4 The market ..... is the company with the largest market ..... in a particular market.
5 Market ..... gives you information about what people want, need and buy.

68.3 **What knowledge is necessary to be a good sales rep? Complete this text and then try to add a further sentence of your own.**

First of all a good sales (1)..... needs to have an excellent knowledge of their company's (2)..... Secondly, he or she needs to know all about the (3)..... of their main (4)..... Thirdly, a sales representative should be familiar with the needs of (5)..... in their particular market, and should obviously be very familiar with the needs of their company's most important (6).....

68.4 **Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.**

Noun	*Adjective*	*Noun*	*Adjective*
.....	exciting	prestige	.....
.....	glamourous	luxury	.....
competition	.....	.....	reliable
fashion	.....	.....	dangerous

68.5 **Which nouns or adjectives from the last exercise (or any others from section D on the opposite page), do you associate with these companies and products?**

Rolex .....
Coca Cola .....
Ferrari .....
Swatch .....
Benetton .....
Sony .....
Levis .....
mobile phones .....

68.6 **Can you answer these questions about your own country? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.**

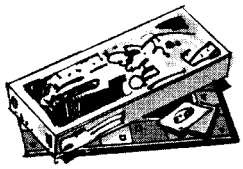
1 Which company is the market leader in the motor car industry in your country?
2 Do you know its approximate market share?
3 Which companies are its main competitors?
4 Write down the names of at least two cars that have been launched in the last six months.

69 Hobbies

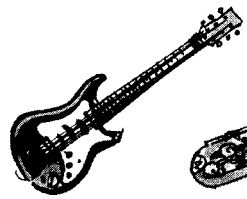
Hobbies are activities that we do in our **spare time** (= free time).

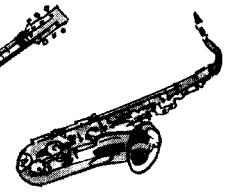
A Things people play

cards


board games

chess


guitar


saxophone

musical instruments

Note: People **join clubs** (= become members of clubs) where they can **play** cards and chess.

B Things people collect

stamps

coins

antiques

C Outdoor activities

hiking

camping

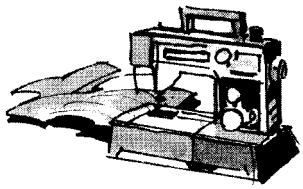
rock climbing

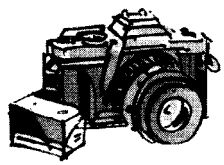
hunting

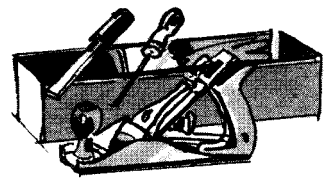
jogging

With these hobbies we can use two different verbs, **go** and **do**:
We often **go camping** in the summer. *or* I **do** a bit of / a lot of **rock climbing** in the summer.

D Creative hobbies


Caroline **makes her own clothes**. (= she makes clothes for herself; she doesn't buy them)


Barbara likes **photography**.


Brigit is **mad about** (= really likes) **DIY**. (DIY = **do-it-yourself**)

Note: When we start a hobby for the first time we often use the phrasal verb **take up**, and when we stop doing the hobby for the final time, we often use the phrasal verb **give up**.
I **took up** golf when I was fifteen, but I **gave** it **up** last year.

Exercises

69.1 **Without looking at the opposite page, write down:**

1 three things that people often play
2 three things that people often collect
3 five outdoor hobbies which include some physical exercise

69.2 **Here are some people talking about their hobbies. Can you guess what the hobby is in each case?**

1 I usually use colour, but sometimes you get a better effect with black and white. It really depends on the subject.
2 I really enjoy going round the shops and markets looking for a bargain.
3 I try to practise every day, but sometimes it's difficult because I don't like to disturb my neighbours too much. And one neighbour gets very angry if I play the same thing over and over again.
4 The great thing is you can do it when you like. I usually do it three or four times a week – either early in the morning, or after school. I only go for about 25 minutes but it really keeps me fit.
5 Obviously it saves me a lot of money; and in any case, I hate buying things in boutiques because so many things are badly made.
6 I joined a club because I wanted to get better, and I now play twice a week in the evenings. It has helped me a lot and I have a much better memory for all the different moves and strategies.
7 I think this is a very common hobby for people like me, who have a house but don't have much money. That's why I started, but now I think I do a better job than many professionals.

69.3 **Complete these sentences with a suitable verb.**

1 How often do you ..... jogging?
2 She ..... hiking because she wanted to get more exercise. Unfortunately, she didn't like it and she ..... it ..... about six months later.
3 She has always ..... her own clothes; it's much cheaper than buying them.
4 He ..... old coins.
5 I ..... quite a lot of rock climbing when I'm on holiday.
6 I learnt to ..... the piano when I was at school.
7 I wanted to improve my chess, so I ..... a chess club.
8 I don't really ..... anything in my spare time.

69.4 **Answer these questions.**

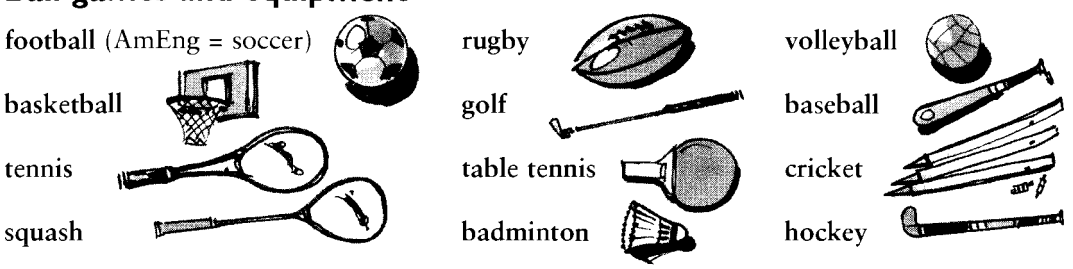
1 Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?
2 How long have you had this hobby?
3 Is it an expensive hobby?
4 Why do you like it?
5 How much time do you spend on your hobby?
6 Is it a common hobby in your country?
7 Write down three other common hobbies in your country.

If possible, ask another person these questions.

70 Sport 1: games, people, and places

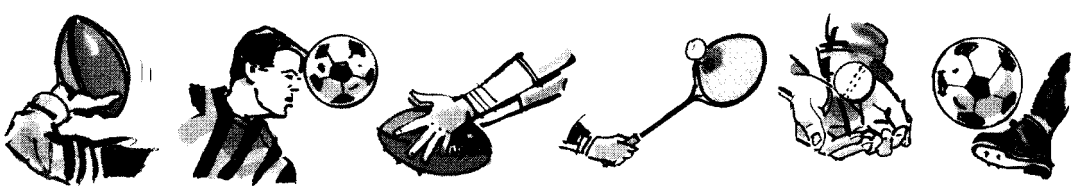
In English you normally **play a game** but **do a lot of / a bit of sport**:
In the winter I **do** quite a lot of **skiing**; in the summer I **play tennis** and **cricket**.

A Ball games and equipment



For most ball games you need **boots** or **training shoes** (trainers).
For tennis, squash and badminton you need a **racket**.
For baseball and table tennis you need a **bat**. For golf you need **clubs**.
In tennis, volleyball and badminton there is a **net** across the middle of the **court**. There is also a **net** around each **goal** in football.

B Things you can do with a ball



throw it | **head** it | **pass** it | **hit** it | **catch** it | **kick** it

C Places and people

The playing area for football, rugby, hockey and cricket is called a **pitch**; for tennis, volleyball, basketball, squash and badminton it is a **court**; for golf it is a **course**.

Note: When you describe the playing area for football and the area around for **the crowd** (= the people who watch, also called **spectators**), it is called a **stadium**, e.g. Wembley Stadium.

Players: Some games are played by individuals, others are **team** games. In a team, one **player** is the **captain**, and there is a **manager** (e.g. in football) or a **coach** (e.g. in basketball).

Officials: Football, rugby and hockey have **a referee** but tennis, cricket and baseball have an **umpire**. In football the referee has a whistle to control the game and two **linesmen**. In tennis there are **line judges** to decide if the ball is 'in' or 'out'.

D Other sports

Name	*Place*	*Equipment*
athletics	track	vest, shorts, running shoes or spikes
motor racing	track	crash helmet
swimming	pool	swimming costume (women); trunks (men)
boxing	ring	vest, shorts, gloves, boots
skiing	slopes (piste)	sticks, ski suit, ski boots

Exercises

70.1 **Write down six things you can do with a ball. Cover the opposite page first.**

..... it ..... it ..... it
..... it ..... it ..... it

70.2 **Write down:**

1 five games where you can hit the ball (with various kinds of equipment).
2 four games where you can pass the ball.
3 three games where you can catch the ball.
4 two games where you can kick the ball.
5 one game where you can head the ball.

70.3 **Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below? (You can put a word in more than one column if you wish.)**

swimming gloves crash helmet course football racket track
ring boots pool motor racing clubs tennis net court golf
pitch track trunks boxing goals costume shorts whistle vest

Sport	*Place*	*Equipment*

70.4 ***True*** **or** ***false*****? If** ***false*****, correct the sentence to make it** ***true*****.**

1 The people who watch a football match are the audience.
2 The official who gives the score in tennis is the umpire.
3 Athletes wear shorts.
4 You need a stick to play hockey.
5 Boxers wear gloves.
6 Tennis is played on a pitch.
7 The referee in football has a whistle.
8 Women wear trunks for swimming.

70.5 **Answer these questions. If possible, ask a friend the same questions.**

1 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page that you watch but don't play? If so, what are they and where do you watch them?
2 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page you play/do yourself? If so, which?
3 Are there any that you are good at?
4 Are there any that you hate?
5 Are there any that are not played much in your country?
6 Which game or sport is the most popular in your country?
7 Which game or sport on the opposite page is the most dangerous in your opinion?
8 Which game or sport requires the most strength?
9 Which one has the biggest crowds?
10 Can you write down at least three more games/sports not included opposite.

71 Sport 2: winning, losing, and scoring

A Winning and losing

Notice how these key words are used:

Spain **beat** Switzerland 3–2. (= Switzerland **lost to** Spain 3–2) In other words:
Spain **won** the match. (= Switzerland **lost** the match)
Spain **defeated** Switzerland. (= Switzerland **were defeated** by Spain)
Spain were the **winners**. (= Switzerland were the **losers**)

If both teams or players have the same **score** (= number of goals or points), it is a **draw** (e.g. 2–2 is a **draw**). We can also use **draw** as a verb, e.g. we **drew** yesterday's **match/game** 2–2.

Note: A **match** is used for an organised game: We had a **game** of football with a few friends in the park, but we've got an important **match** against a very good team next week.

When the game is still in progress, we often use the verb **lead** to describe the position of the teams and players, or **latest** to describe the score:

HALF-TIME SCORE: SPAIN 2 SWITZERLAND 1
At half-time, Spain **are leading** Switzerland two–one. (= the **latest score** is two–one to Spain)
Sampras is **leading** three–two in the first set. (= the **latest score** is three–two to Sampras)

B What's the score?

In most games you score **goals** (e.g. football, hockey) or **points** (e.g. table tennis, basketball). At the end of the game there is a **result** (= players/teams win, lose, or draw). However, the scoring system – and the way we describe it – is different from game to game.

Football
Spain 0–0 Italy (we say nil–nil)
Spain 1–0 Italy (one–nil to Spain)
Spain 1–1 Italy (one–all)
Spain 1–2 Italy (two–one to Italy)
Spain 2–2 Italy (two–all)

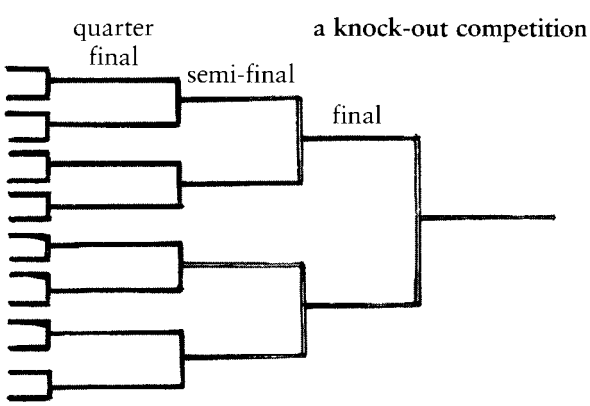
If the **final score** is 2–2 in a cup match, you may have to play **extra time.** And if the score is still 2–2 at the end of extra time, there is a **penalty shoot-out.**

Tennis
15–0 (fifteen–love)
30–0 (thirty–love)
30–30 (thirty–all)
40–40 (deuce) [pronounced like 'juice']
Advantage X
Game X

Game and set to X (e.g. 6–3 or 7–5)
If the **score** reaches 6–6 you have a **tie-break** to decide the set.

C Competitions

In many sports, players and teams **play** every week in a **league** (the player/team that wins the most games in a **season** is the winner of the **league championship**). In most sports, there is also a **cup competition**, which is usually a **knock-out competition.**



a knock-out competition

Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from the previous unit.

71.1 **Complete the table with the correct forms.**

Infinitive	*Past tense*	*Past participle*	*Infinitive*	*Past tense*	*Past participle*
win lose beat			lead catch draw		

71.2 **How do we say these scores?**

1 *Football:* 0–0 2–1 4–4
2 *Tennis:* 15–0 40–30 40–40

71.3 **Fill the gaps in these texts with suitable words or phrases.**

In the World Cup Final of 1994, Brazil (1)..... Italy 3–2 in a (2)..... shoot-out. After ninety minutes the (3)..... was 0–0; and it remained the same after thirty minutes of (4)....., but then Italy (5)..... 3–2 in the penalty shoot-out after Baresi and Baggio both missed. This was the fourth time that Brazil had (6)..... the World Cup.

Ivanisevic (7)..... to Sampras in the second round. He (8)..... the first (9)..... 6–4, but then (10)..... the second (11)..... on a (12)..... After that, Sampras dominated the rest of the (13)..... and won easily. The final (14)..... was 4–6, 7–6, 6–1, 6–2.

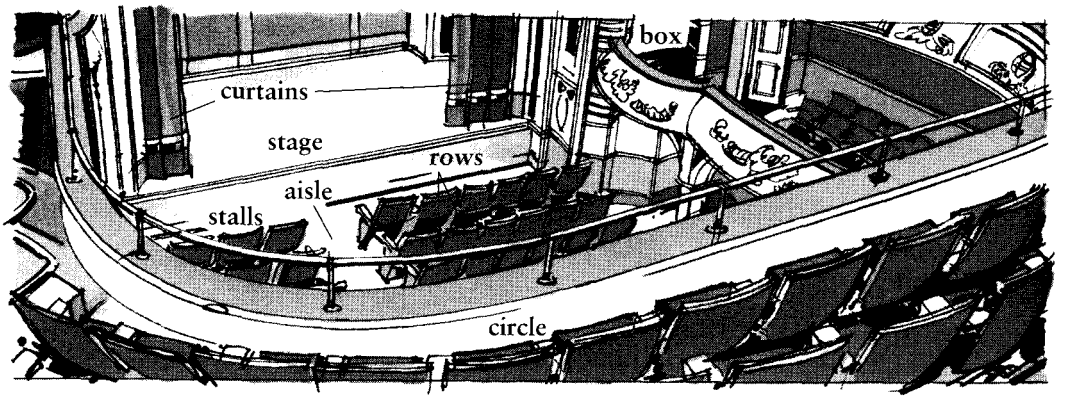
71.4 ***True* or *false*? Check your answers by looking back at this unit and the previous unit.**

1 Brazil won the football World Cup in 1994.
2 Football has an umpire.
3 A set in tennis is always decided on a tie-break.
4 If two teams have the same score at the end of the game, it is a draw.
5 Golf is played on a course.
6 If someone gives you the latest score, the game has finished.
7 Sticks are used in skiing and hockey.
8 In a knock-out competition, you can lose one or two games but still win the competition.

71.5 **Which sport is being described in each sentence? (The underlined words are key words and you can look them up to increase your vocabulary in different sports.)**

1 The referee gave the <u>try</u> although many people thought it was a <u>forward pass</u>.
2 He scored the winner with a beautiful <u>free kick</u> from just outside the <u>penalty area</u>.
3 He <u>served</u> fifteen <u>aces</u> and not one <u>double fault</u>.
4 The <u>coach</u> called a <u>time out</u> with just 45 seconds left and two points between the teams.
5 He <u>crashed into</u> the car in front with just two <u>laps</u> remaining.
6 First he was <u>booked</u> (= the yellow card) for a bad <u>tackle</u>, and then he <u>handled the ball</u> inside the <u>penalty area</u>, so the referee had to <u>send him off</u> (= the red card).
7 In the <u>200 metres freestyle</u>, he overtook the Russian on the final <u>length</u> to win the race.
8 She <u>sprinted</u> away from the rest of <u>the field</u> on the <u>final lap</u> and won easily.

72 Cinema and theatre



A Theatre

At the theatre you can see **plays**, e.g. *Hamlet* by Shakespeare, or **musicals**, e.g. *Phantom of the Opera* by Andrew Lloyd Webber. In a play the **cast** (= the total number of actors) is usually quite small, but musicals often have a very large cast.
One difference between the theatre and cinema is that you usually **book** (= reserve) tickets **in advance** (= some time before the actual performance) if you are going to the theatre.
Another difference is that the **audience** (= the people watching the play/musical) **clap** at the end of the **performance**. *This does not usually happen (in Britain) at the end of a film.*

B Cinema

Plays are **performed** on **stage**, films are **shown** on **screen**. In your country, films in English are either shown with **subtitles** (= there is a translation across the bottom of the screen), or they are **dubbed** (= the English is removed and replaced by actors speaking in your own language).
Films **are set** (= take place) in many different periods and places, e.g. *Room with a View* is set in the early part of the 20th century; *Blade Runner* is set in the future. And when people talk about films, they often talk about the **director**, e.g. Spielberg, Bertolucci; and the **stars**, the most important actors and actresses, e.g. Tom Hanks and Jodie Foster.

C Types of film

western: a film about America in the 19th century; often with cowboys and indians
war film, e.g. *Born on the 4th of July*
horror film, e.g. *Dracula*; *Frankenstein*
science fiction film: about the future
action film, e.g. *Indiana Jones*
comedy: a funny film that makes you laugh
thriller: an exciting story often about a crime

D Describing plays and films

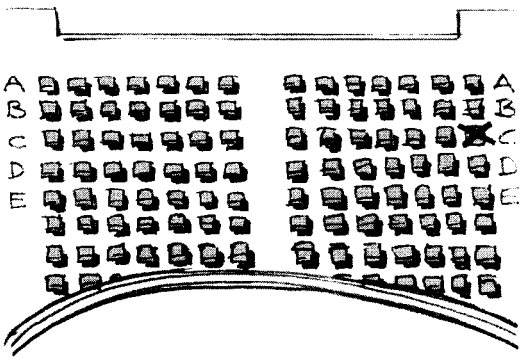
Journalists write articles in which they give their opinion of new films and plays. They are called **critics**, and their articles are called **reviews**. These are some words they may use:

moving: producing strong emotions, often of sadness; a positive word
violent: includes lots of scenes with fighting and death
powerful: has a big effect on our emotions
gripping: exciting and very interesting
good fun: used to describe a film that may not be very serious or important but is enjoyable
slow: boring

Exercises

72.1 Look at the picture of your visit to the theatre and answer these questions.

1 Did you sit in the stalls or circle?
2 Which row were you in?
3 Were you next to an aisle?
4 Did you have a good view of the stage?



72.2 What word or phrase is being defined?

1 A play or film in which part of the story is sung to music.
2 The total number of actors in a play or film.
3 The people who watch a play at the theatre.
4 What these people do with their hands at the end of a play.
5 The person who makes a film.
6 Journalists who write articles about films and plays.
7 The name of the articles they write.
8 The translation of the story of a film across the bottom of the screen.
9 To reserve tickets before the performance.
10 The most important actors or actresses in a film.

72.3 Have you seen these famous films made in English over the last twenty years? If so, try to complete the rest of the table using words from the opposite page. Then write in the titles of three more films you have seen and complete the rest of the table for it.

Film	*Type of film*	*Subtitles or dubbed?*	*Description of film (adjectives)*
1 *Dirty Harry* with Clint Eastwood			
2 *Blade Runner* with Harrison Ford			
3 *Four Weddings and a Funeral* with Hugh Grant			
4 *Schindler's List* with Liam Neeson			
5 *Dances with Wolves* with Kevin Costner			
6			
7			
8			

73 Music, art and literature

A Forms and people

	Forms	*Person*	
Music	classical	composer	
	pop/rock	songwriter	
Art	painting	painter	artist
	sculpture	sculptor	*(general)*
Literature	the novel	novelist	writer
	short stories	short story writer	*(general)*
	poetry	poet	
	plays	dramatist/playwright	

B Music

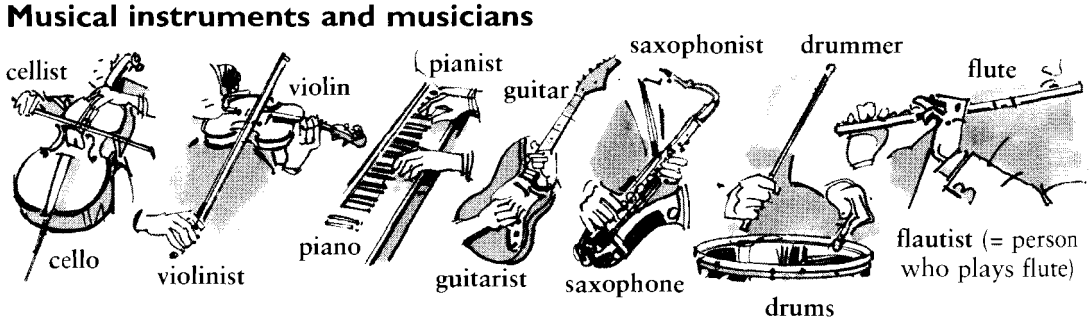
Classical **music**: e.g Beethoven's piano concertos, Schubert's symphonies. Beethoven and Schubert are both **composers** (= people who write classical music) and most of their music is played by an **orchestra** (= large group of musicians including violins, cellos, etc.) which is led by a **conductor**, e.g. Georg Solti or Loren Maazel, as leader.

Opera (= a play in which the words are sung): e.g. *La Bohème* by Puccini, *Carmen* by Bizet.

Rock and **pop music**: e.g. U2, Bon Jovi, Maria Carey. This music is played by **groups/bands**, e.g. Bon Jovi, Simply Red; or **solo artists**, e.g. Madonna. Many solo artists, e.g. Phil Collins, are **singer-songwriters** (= they **write** and **perform/play** their own songs).

Jazz: e.g. Duke Ellington, Miles Davis, Stan Getz.

C Musical instruments and musicians



D Art

If you want to see the paintings of a famous artist, you need to go to an **art gallery** or museum. There you can see individual paintings and sometimes an **exhibition** (= a collection of paintings by one painter or **school of painters**, e.g. the Impressionists), e.g.

There's a Monet **exhibition** at the National **Gallery** next week.

There are many different types and styles of painting:

a **portrait** (= a painting of a person)
a **self-portrait** (= a painting of the artist by himself/herself)
a **landscape** (= a painting of part of the countryside)
an **abstract painting** (= a painting that is not realistic)

Exercises

73.1 **What are or were these people? (painter? sculptor? novelist? poet? dramatist? songwriter? composer? conductor? rock star? pop star? musician? singer? pianist? etc.) Some of them may be more than one of these things.**

1 Leo Tolstoy
2 William Wordsworth
3 Henrik Ibsen
4 Yukio Mishima
5 Anton Chekhov
6 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart
7 Giuseppe Verdi
8 Mick Jagger
9 Milton Nascimento
10 Paul Tortelier
11 Paul Simon
12 Mark Knopfler
13 Henry Moore
14 Jorge Luis Borges
15 Pablo Picasso
16 Saki
17 Leonard Bernstein
18 Alberto Giacometti

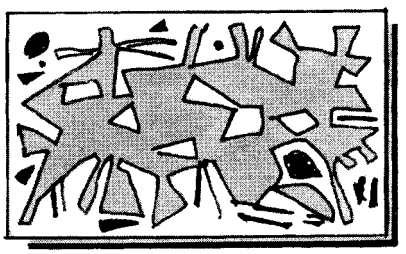
73.2 **What do you call the people who play the following instruments?**

piano guitar drums violin cello flute

73.3 **What types of painting are these?**

1

2



3

73.4 **Use the context and your own knowledge to fill the gaps in these sentences and dialogues.**

1 He used to be conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic .....
2 Phil Collins was in a famous ..... called *Genesis* before he became a ....
3 A: Do you like ..... music?
B: Yes, very much.
A: And who's your favourite .....?
B: It's hard to say, but I love Bach and Vivaldi.
4 There's going to be an ..... of his paintings at the new art .....
5 She used to ..... her own songs but now she mainly ..... material written by other people.
6 I haven't been to the ..... since I saw *The Marriage of Figaro* last year.
7 I think *The Great Gatsby* is Scott Fitzgerald's best .....
8 His first ..... was performed in a very small theatre.

74 Newspapers

A Background

In Britain, most newspapers are **daily** (= they **come out / are published** every day); a few only come out on Sundays. Magazines are usually **weekly** (= they come out every week), or **monthly** (= published every month).

Some newspapers are **tabloids** (= small in size) e.g. *The Mirror*; others are called **broadsheets** (= larger in size) e.g. *The Times*. In general, the tabloids represent the **popular press** (short articles and lots of pictures) and the broadsheets represent the **quality press** (longer articles and more 'serious'). The largest **circulation** (= number of readers) is *The Sun*.

B Contents

Most British papers contain the following:

home news (= news about Britain)
foreign/international news (= news about other countries)
business news
sports news
features (= longer articles about special subjects, e.g. a famous person or a political issue)
radio and TV programmes
weather forecast (= tells you what the weather will be like)
reviews (= when film, theatre and music **critics** write about new films, plays and records, and give their opinion of them)

C People

Editor: the person in control of the daily production.
Reporters/journalists: people who report news and write articles; many journalists are **freelance** (= they work for themselves and are not employed by the newspaper).

D Headlines

Certain words (usually very short) are often used in newspaper headlines. Here are some:

row (pronounced like 'cow') (= an argument)
quit (= to leave a job)
bid (n, v) (= an effort / a try / an attempt)
cut (v, n) (= to reduce / make less)
back (= to support)
hit (= to affect badly)
talks (= discussions)
key (= very important)

E 'It said in the paper that ...'

When we refer to something in a newspaper we can use the verb **say** (NOT ~~write~~), or the expression **according to**:

It **says** in *The Times* that they've found the missing girl.
According to *The Guardian*, the missing girl was found last night.

Exercises

74.1 Think about newspapers in your own country. Answer these questions.

1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
2 How many are tabloids?
3 Are any of the 'quality' papers in tabloid form?
4 How many broadsheets are there?
5 How many newspapers *only* come out on Sunday in your country?
6 Which newspaper has the largest circulation?
7 Can you name at least one editor of a daily paper; and two or three famous journalists who write for daily or weekly papers?
8 How often do you read the newspaper? How often do you buy a newspaper?

74.2 Explain these headlines in your own words. Do not use the underlined words.

1 **Minister to quit**

2 **Government cuts spending on new hospitals**

3 **New bid to cut teenage smoking**

4 **Bad weather hits farmers**

5 **Germany backs US plan**

6 **Ministers in tax row**

7 **POLICE DISCOVER KEY WITNESS**

8 **Japan and US enter fresh talks**

74.3 Buy two different newspapers (in English or your own language) and complete this table.

	Paper 1 (no. of pages)	*Paper 2* (no. of pages)
home news foreign/international news feature articles business news sports news		

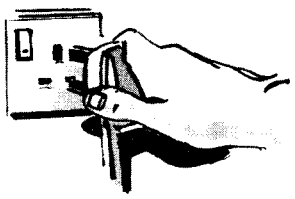
For the same two papers complete this table.

	Paper 1 (yes/no)	*Paper 2* (yes/no)
weather forecast cartoons crossword radio and TV programmes reviews		

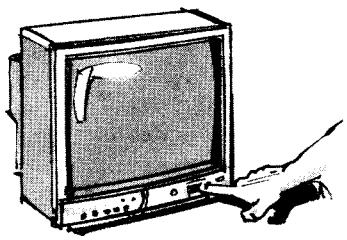
How many pages are left? What are they about? If possible, compare answers with a friend.

75 Television

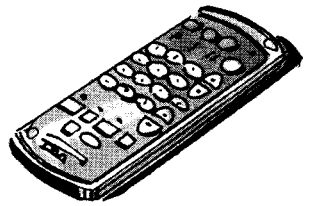
A Operating a television



plug it in



turn it on (≠ turn it off)



remote control

You may also want to **turn** it **up** (= increase the volume because you can't hear) (≠ **turn** it **down**); and **turn over** (= change to a different **channel**, e.g. from 1 to 3)

Note: You can also say **switch on**, **switch off**, or **switch over** (but *not* switch it up/down).

B Types of programme

Here are some types of TV programme:

Soap opera: a programme often on two or three times a week, which follows the lives of a group/community of people; the stories are often exciting, dramatic and hard to believe.

Quiz show or **Game show**: individuals, teams or families who answer questions or play different games against each other. The winner gets a **prize**, e.g. a car, a holiday, money.

Chat show: a programme where a presenter talks to famous people about their lives and careers; sometimes there is music as well.

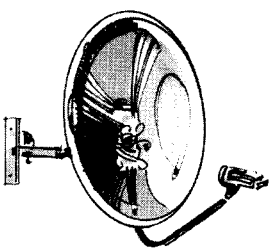
Documentary: a film with factual information, often analysing a problem in society.

A **series**: a number of programmes about the same situation or the same characters in different situations. This may be a **comedy series** (the programmes are intended to be funny), or a **drama series** (the programmes are intended to be exciting, with interesting characters and situations).

Current affairs programme: a programme about a current social/political problem. **Current** means that it is happening 'now / at the present time'.

C TV in Great Britain

At the moment there are five 'terrestrial' **channels** (or **stations**) on TV (BBC 1, BBC 2, ITV, Channel 4, and Channel 5). If you pay extra, you can have a **satellite dish** and receive **satellite** TV; or pay to have **cable** TV – there are many channels available.



D Talking TV

Here are some useful words and phrases connected with television:

What's **on** TV tonight? (= what programmes are showing on TV tonight?)
What time's the film **on**? (= what time does it start?)
How long do the **commercials last**? (= the advertisements between programmes)
What's your **favourite** programme? (= the programme you like most/best)
Are they showing the game **live** (= as it happens) or just **recorded highlights**? (= parts of the game after it has been played, e.g. later in the day/evening)
How much is a TV **licence**? (= money you have to pay the government if you have a TV)

Exercises

75.1 You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below? Look at the example first.

Example: You want to watch a programme on TV. Could you *turn the TV on?*

1 You can't hear the programme very well. Could you .....?
2 You want to watch a different programme. Could you .....?
3 Now it's too loud for you. Could you .....?
4 You don't want to watch any more. Could you .....?

75.2 Here is part of an evening from three British TV channels. Can you find at least one example of: a documentary, a quiz show, a game show, a drama series, and a current affairs programme? There is also one example of a comedy series and two soap operas. Can you guess which programmes they might be?

7.00 Telly Addicts
Noel Edmonds hosts the quiz in which teams have their television knowledge put to the test.

7.30 Watchdog
Anne Robinson presents the stories that affect consumers in the 1990s. With Alice Beer and reporters Chris Choi and Johnathan Maitland.

8.00 EastEnders
Kathy tries to come to terms with Ted's revelations. Michelle receives a letter that could change her life.
For cast see Tuesday
Stereo Subtitled 5500

8.30 2 Point 4 Children
The Deep. There's something fishy going on when Bill and Ben are asked to look after their neighbour's house.

9.00 Nine O'Clock News
With Peter Sissons.
Subtitled
Regional News
Weather Rob McElwee 3245

7.00 The Krypton Factor
Four new contestants compete for a place in the November final.
Director Tony Prescott; Producer Wayne Garvie *Stereo Subtitled 9448*

7.30 Coronation Street
It's farewell time at the Rovers.
Episode written by Stephen Mallatratt
For cast see Wednesday. Repeated on Wednesday at 1.25pm Subtitled 239
◆ **Bet's off: page 22**

8.00 Bruce's Price Is Right
Game show testing knowledge of the price of consumer goods.
Director Bill Morton; Producer Howard Huntridge *Stereo Subtitled 2968*

8.30 World in Action
In a classroom fitted with cameras, World in Action reveals what is really going on in Britain's overcrowded schools and asks who is to blame.

9.00 New series
Cracker
CHOICE Brotherly Love (part 1). In the first of this three-part thriller, a prostitute is found raped and murdered, opening old wounds at the station. See today's choices.

7.00 Channel 4 News
Presented by Jon Snow and Cathy Smith. Including **Weather**
Subtitled 829535

7.55 The Slot
The daily soapbox offering viewers the chance to air their opinions.
Stereo 141603

8.00 New series
Desperately Seeking Something
A four-part series in which Pete McCarthy explores the strange universe of alternative beliefs.

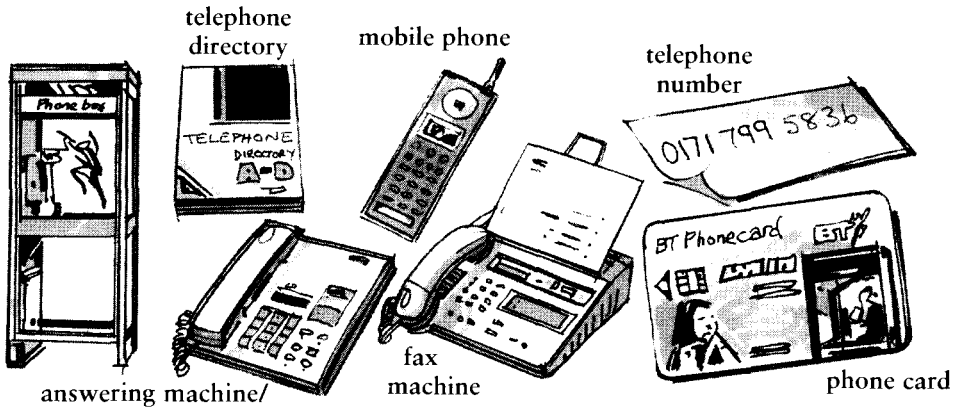
8.30 Baby It's You
Continuing the six-part series which uses natural history filming techniques to observe the first two years of a baby's life.

9.00 Cutting Edge
The Trouble with Money
CHOICE Strange though it seems to some, not everyone enjoys winning the lottery. This documentary explores the joys and pitfalls of getting rich quick.

75.3 Answer these questions about TV in your own country.

1 How many 'terrestrial 'channels are there?
2 Do you watch satellite TV and/or cable TV?
3 In total, how much TV do you watch every week?
4 What are your favourite programmes on TV at the moment?
5 What night are they on?
6 Do you enjoy watching the commercials?
7 Do you often watch football matches live on TV? If not, do you watch the highlights?
8 Do you need a TV licence in your country? If so, how much is it?

76 On the phone



A Starting a phone conversation

The first example is an informal situation; the second example is a more formal call.

A: Hello.
B: **Is that** Mary? [NOT ~~Are you Mary?~~ or ~~Is it Mary?~~]
A: Yeah.
B: Hi. **It's** Ruth. [NOT ~~I am Ruth~~, or ~~Here is Ruth~~]

Note: When British people answer the phone at home they usually just say 'hello' and sometimes they also give their number. They do not give their name.

C: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.
D: Oh good morning. **Could I speak** to Mrs Gordon, please?
C: Yes. **Who's calling,** please?
D: **My name is** Paul Scott. (This is usually how you introduce yourself in a formal situation.)
C: Right, Mr Scott. I'll **put you through.** (= I will connect you with Mrs Gordon)

B Telephone problems

4.20 p.m You try to phone your sister Susan but the **line is engaged** (= the line is busy). In other words, someone is already **on the phone** (= using the phone).

4.30 p.m. You phone your sister again but it's the **wrong number** (= you have **dialled** another number, e.g. 637 424 and not 627 424, and a stranger answers).

4.35 p.m. You **get through to** your sister's number (= make contact) but she's **out** (= not at home). Her husband answers and says that Susan **won't be back** (= will not return) for a couple of hours, so you **leave a message**, e.g. Could you ask Susan to ring me when she gets back? The husband agrees to give Susan the message.

7.30 p.m. Susan **phones** you **back** but you are out. She leaves a message on your answerphone. Her message is: Jean, this is Susan. I'm just returning your **call** (= phone call). I'll **give you a ring** (= phone you) tomorrow.

C Useful vocabulary

A **reverse charge call** (AmEng = **collect call**). This is when the person you ring agrees to pay for the phone call. If you **make a reverse charge call**, you must go through the **operator.** If you have someone's name and address, you can call **Directory Enquiries** to get their phone number. If you phone another town or city, you need to know the **code**, e.g. the code for Cambridge is 01223. This type of call is **a long distance call** (≠ a **local call**).

Exercises

76.1 **Write down five words or expressions including the word 'phone' or 'telephone'.**

76.2 **Fill the gaps in these phone conversations with suitable words or phrases.**

A A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?
B: Yes. (1)..... Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr Patterson. He actually left a (2)..... on my answerphone yesterday afternoon.
A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Patterson's (3)..... at the moment. Can I ask him to (4)..... later?
B: Yes please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My (5)..... is 748 7267.

B A: Hello.
B: Hi. (6)..... Sandra?
A: No, sorry. I'm (7)..... Sandra's not here at the moment.
B: Oh. Do you know when she'll (8).....?
A: No, I've no idea.
B: OK. Well in that case, could I (9)..... a ..... for her?
A: Yes, of course.
B: Could you ask her to (10)..... this evening, please?
A: Sure. What's your name?
B: Catherine. I'm a colleague from work. She's got my number.
A: Right. I'll tell her.
B: Thanks very much. Bye bye.
A: Bye.

C A: Hello?
B: (11)..... Carlos?
A: Yeah, speaking.
B: Hi Carlos. (12)..... Serena.
A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring yesterday.
B: I did – or at least I tried. I (13)..... your number about six times last night but I couldn't (14)..... It was (15)..... all the time.
A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I was (16)..... the phone to my brother for about an hour and then someone from school rang me about the table tennis tournament next week.
B: Oh well, never mind. Anyway I'm phoning about ...

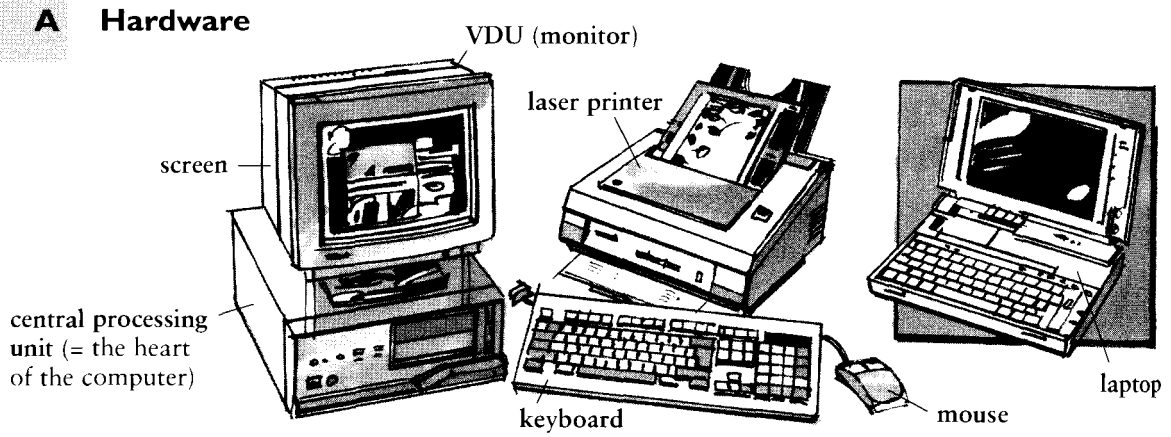
76.3 **Can you answer these questions?**

1 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?
2 Is there a Directory Enquiries? What number is it?
3 From your country, what's the dialling code for the United Kingdom?
4 How much does it cost to make a local call?
5 How often do you have to pay your phone bill?
6 Is it cheaper to phone during the night?
7 What's the phone number of your English school?
8 Have you ever made a reverse charge call? If so, who was it to?

If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone from the same country.

77 Computers

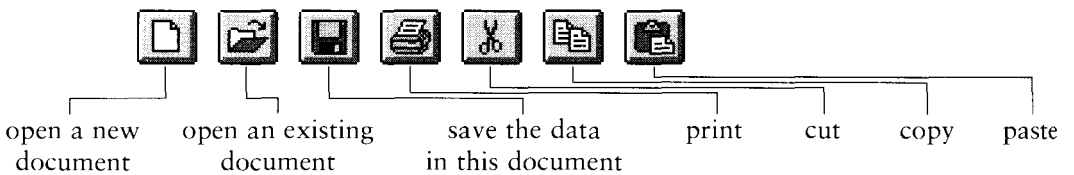
A Hardware



As well as the **hardware** (= the machines), you also need **software** (= the programs needed to work the machines). These programs are on **disks**, e.g. the **hard disk** inside the computer, or **floppy disks** or on CD-ROMs (= Compact Disc Read Only Memory, a CD on which you can put a large amount of information).

B Operating a computer

Using the **mouse**, you can do a number of things by **clicking on** different **icons** (= moving the mouse to point at different pictures at the top of the screen).



C What do people use computers for?

A **word processor** is a computer used to prepare documents or letters, or the software that is used for this purpose. Many people use their computers for **word processing**, e.g. writing letters and reports. A lot of business people use **spreadsheets** (= a program used to enter and arrange numbers and financial information) and **databases** (= programs which allow you to store, look at or change a large amount of information quickly and easily). Some people also use **graphics** (= the pictures and symbols a computer program can produce).

D Important vocabulary

More and more people are becoming **computer-literate** (= have experience of working with computers and know how to use them) as many programs and machines are so **user-friendly** (= easy to use). You can now connect your computer to computers all over the world using the **Internet** (= a system that allows computers to connect using telephone lines). People send each other **e-mail** (electronic mail) messages using this system or **network**.
If your computer is slow it may need more **memory**. It may **crash** (= stop working) if there is not enough memory or if it has a **bug** (= a software problem; also a **virus**). Make sure you make a **back-up copy** of your work (= an extra copy on a floppy disk).

Exercises

77.1 Add another word, abbreviation, or part of a word, to complete common 'computer' words and phrases.

1 soft.....
2 a word .....
3 floppy .....
4 .....-friendly
5 .....-literate
6 key.....
7 a computer .....
8 .....-ROM
9 laser .....
10 lap.....
11 spread.....
12 .....-mail

77.2 Can you remember what these symbols mean?

1
4
6
2
5
7
3

77.3 Complete this text about using a computer for word processing.

I wrote a report on the (1)_____ this morning. When I finished, I (2)_____ out two copies – one for me and one for my boss. Then, without any warning, the computer went (3)_____, and I'm afraid I lost the whole document. This is very unusual because normally I (4)_____ the data while I'm writing and then make a (5)_____ copy when I have finished; this morning I forgot.

Anyway, I gave the report to my boss, hoping that she would not ask me to change it in any way. She did. She thought it was a bit long and said it would be better if I used more (6)_____ to illustrate some of the written information. She also thought it would make the report look more attractive.

I went back and rewrote most of the report when the computer was OK, only I (7)_____ part of the middle section which was rather repetitive, and I added extra (8)_____ as my boss advised. It did look better by the time I'd finished, and this time I remembered to (9)_____ it and make a (10)_____ copy.

77.4 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Do you have a computer at home? If so, what is it?
2 Do you use computers at school/college/university/work? If so, what type?
3 What do you use them for?
4 Would you say you are computer-literate?
5 Do you find most computers user-friendly?
6 What software programs are you familiar with?
7 Do you use e-mail?
8 Have you used CD-ROM? If so, what programs did you use and why?
9 Do you think 'The Internet' will have an important influence on our daily lives? Do you think it will be important in helping people from different countries to learn English?

78 Education: school

A The system

Most children in England and Wales follow this route in the **state system** (= free education).

Age

3 some go to **nursery school**

5 everyone starts **primary school**

11 pupils go to a **secondary** school (AmEng = **high** school). This may be a **comprehensive** (= mixed ability) or a **grammar school** (= children selected for their **academic ability**)

16 they **leave school** and get a job, or go to a college for **vocational** (= job) training, e.g. hotel management, secretarial courses; or **stay at school** for two more years

18 they leave school and get a job or — **go to university** / **go to a college** for further education/training, e.g. teaching, business studies.

Note:

- You **go to school** (as a pupil to study) and **go to university** (as a student to study). You don't use the definite article 'the' here. Other expressions like this are **go to bed** (to sleep); **go into hospital** (when you are ill); **go to church** (to pray / to worship).
- In some areas of the UK there are not many grammar schools.
- There are also **public schools**. In fact, these are private, and parents pay to send their children there. Some are expensive. About 5% of the population go to public schools.

B A school timetable

	MON	TUES	WED	THURS	FRI
Lesson 1	Religious Education	Maths	Social Education	English	Visual Art
(break)					
Lesson 2	History	Science	Music	Science	Geography
Lesson 3	English		French	Physical Education (PE)	Maths
(lunch)					
Lesson 4	Maths*	History	Information Technology	Maths	Physical Education
Lesson 5	Geography	Visual Art		French	English

* Maths is an abbreviation of mathematics.

As you can see, the **pupils** have five **lessons** every day, and altogether they do (= study) eleven **subjects** a week plus Physical Education (PE). Every morning they have a twenty-minute **break**. There are three **terms** (= periods of continuous work) in a school year, and the timetable changes every year.

Note: Some words in English which end in 's' look plural, but in fact they are singular:

Maths **isn't** my favourite subject, and physics **is** very difficult.
Most nouns of this type refer to subjects; other examples are **economics** and **politics**.

Exercises

78.1 **Here are some school subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?**

Example: MGREAN German

1 TAHMS .....
2 IRTHOSY .....
3 CNECSEI .....
4 NISGEHL .....
5 HOGTCEYNLO .....
6 EHGORAGPY .....
7 RAT .....
8 SIMCU .....
9 EHNFCR .....
10 NEOCCIOSM .....

78.2 **How much can you remember? Try to answer these questions or complete the sentences without looking at the opposite page.**

1 At what age do children go to nursery school?
2 At what age do they start primary school?
3 When they go to secondary school it is either a grammar school or a .....
4 At what age can English and Welsh children leave school?
5 According to the timetable the foreign languages studied is .....
6 Not including PE, how many subjects do the children do?
7 What happens if children fail all the exams they take at the age of 16?
8 What can they do if they pass all their exams at the age of 18?

78.3 **What about you and your country? Answer these questions.**

1 Did you go to nursery school?
2 Do most children start primary school at the age of five?
3 Is the secondary school system similar or different?
4 How many subjects did/do you study at secondary school?
5 Did/do you study any subjects which are not included opposite?
6 What was/is your favourite subject?
7 How many lessons did/do you have every day?
8 Is/was your school a state school or public school?
9 At what age can you leave school?
10 How many terms are there in a school year?

78.4 **Complete these sentences with the correct expression.**

1 When she was a child she went ..... in a small village with only fifty other pupils.
2 He didn't go to school last term because he was very ill and he had to go .....
3 I was very tired, so after I finished my homework I went .....
4 When I left school I went ..... and studied medicine.
5 It was a religious school, so we had to go ..... quite a lot.

78.5 **The next unit is about university and further education. Can you think of six subjects you can study at university which you do not usually study at school? Write down your answers, then turn to the next page.**

79 Education: university

A Subjects

You can normally **do/study** these **subjects** at university but not always at school:

medicine	law	philosophy	engineering
psychology	sociology	architecture	politics
business studies	agriculture	history of art	

Note: The underlined letters in some of the words above show the syllable with the main stress. Also note that the first syllable of **psychology** is pronounced /saɪ/ like 'my'.

B Studying at (a British) university

If you want to **go to** (= **enter** *fml*) university, you must first **pass examinations** that most students take at the age of eighteen (called 'A' levels). Most students take three 'A' levels (three examinations in three different subjects) and they must do well in order to **get/obtain** a place at university because the places are limited. At the moment, approximately 30% of young adults go to university in Britain.

If you get a place at university, the **tuition** (= the teaching) is free, and some students also **get** (= receive) a **grant** (= money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and accommodation) as well. Students at university are called **undergraduates** while they are studying for their first degree.

Most university courses **last** (= go on for / continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, may be even longer. During this period students can say that they are **doing/studying** history, or **doing / studying for** a degree in history, for example. When they finish the course and pass their examinations, they receive **a degree** (the qualification when you complete a university course successfully). This can be a **BA** (= Bachelor of Arts) or a **BSc** (= Bachelor of Science), e.g. I have a friend who has a BA in history, and another who has a BSc in chemistry.

C Postgraduate courses

When you complete your first degree, you are a **graduate**. (In the US, students also use this word as a verb and say, they 'graduated in history' or 'graduated in chemistry', for example.) Some students then go on to do a second course or degree (**postgraduate course / postgraduate degree**). These students are then **postgraduates**. There are usually three possible degrees:

MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science); usually one year
MPhil (Master of Philosophy); usually two years
PhD (Doctor of Philosophy); at least three years

When people study one subject in great detail (often to find new information), we say they are **conducting / doing / carrying out research** (U); e.g.

I'm **doing** some **research into/on** the languages of different African tribes.

D School vs. university

At school, you have **teachers** and **lessons**, at university, you have **lecturers** and **lectures**. When a lecturer **gives/does** a lecture, the students listen and **take/make notes** (= write down the important information), but do not usually say much, except to ask occasional questions.

Exercises

79.1 **Read these sentences spoken by university students. What is each person studying?**

1 We have to know every bone in a person's body.
2 I'm concentrating on the modernist style and the work of Le Corbusier and Frank Lloyd Wright.
3 The way we use fertilizers is much more precise than twenty years ago.
4 We're going to concentrate on Freud and Jung this term.
5 I've been reading some books on time management.
6 Expressionism was really a reaction to the work of the Impressionists.
7 We 've spent a lot of time on American foreign policy and how it has been affected by various domestic problems.
8 You must know this case – it's one of the most famous in legal history.

Now mark the stress on each of your answers, check with the answer key, and practise saying the words.

79.2 **What do you call:**

1 the money some students receive if they get a place at university?
2 the qualification you get at the end of university?
3 the name we give students during this period at university?
4 teachers at university?
5 students when they have completed their first degree?
6 students studying for a second degree?
7 the study of one subject in great depth and detail, often to get new information?
8 the talks that students go to while they are at university?

79.3 **Replace the underlined verbs with different verbs that have the same meaning in the context.**

1 Who is <u>giving</u> the lecture today?
2 Did she <u>receive</u> a grant for her course?
3 Is it more difficult to <u>obtain</u> a place at university?
4 You have to pass the exams before you can <u>enter</u> university.
5 He's <u>studying</u> physics, I think.
6 I think they're <u>carrying out</u> some research into the cause of asthma.
7 I didn't <u>take</u> any notes in the lecture yesterday.
8 The course <u>goes on</u> for three years.

79.4 **How similar is university education in your own country? Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else from your own country and/or someone from a different country.**

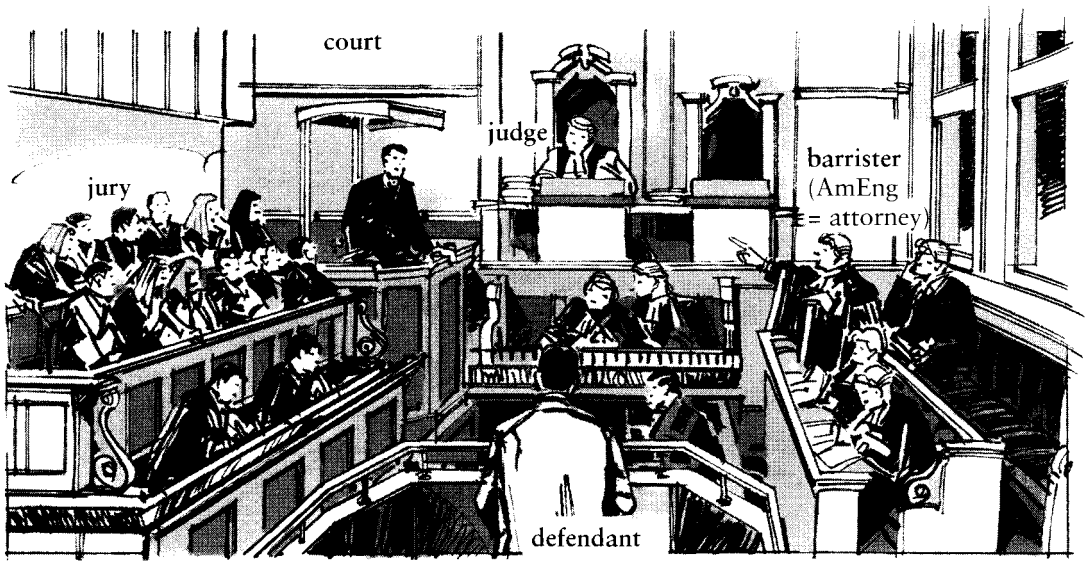
1 Do you need to pass examinations before you can go to university?
2 Do some students get a grant to study at university?
3 Is the tuition free if you go to university?
4 Do most students go to university at the age of 18 or 19?
5 Do more students go to university in your country than in Britain?
6 Do most degree courses last three years?
7 What is your equivalent of the British BA or BSc?
8 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?

80 Law and order

A The police

They do a number of things. When someone **commits a crime** (= **breaks the law** and does something **wrong / illegal / against the law**) the police must **investigate** (= try to find out what happened / who is responsible). If they find the person responsible for the crime, they **arrest** them (= take them to the police station). At the police station, they **question** them (= ask them questions to find out what they know) and if they are sure the person committed the crime, the person is **charged with** the crime (= the police make an official statement that they believe the person committed the crime). The person must then go to **court** for **trial**.

B The court



In **court**, the person charged with the crime (now called the **defendant** or **accused**) must try to **prove** (= provide facts to show something is true) that they did not commit the crime; in other words prove that they are **innocent** (≠ **guilty**). The **jury** listens to all the **evidence** (= information about the crime, for and against the defendant) and then makes their decision.

C Punishment

If the defendant is **convicted of** the crime (= the jury decides that the defendant is guilty), the judge will give the **sentence** (= the punishment). For example, if a person is convicted of murder, the sentence will be many years in **prison**. The person then becomes a **prisoner**, and the room they live in is called a **cell**.

For crimes that are not serious (often called **minor offences**, e.g. illegal parking), the punishment is usually **a fine** (= money you have to pay).

Exercises

80.1 **Put this story in the correct order.**

1 they found both men guilty.
2 and charged them with the robbery.
3 £10,000 was stolen from a bank in the High Street.
4 After the jury had listened to all the evidence
5 They were sent to prison for seven years.
6 The trial took place two months later.
7 and they finally arrested two men.
8 They questioned them at the police station
9 The police questioned a number of people about the crime

80.2 **Answer the questions.**

1 Who investigates crimes?
2 Who sentences people?
3 Who live in cells?
4 Who decides if someone is innocent or guilty?
5 Who defend people and present evidence?
6 Who commit crimes?

80.3 **Fill the gaps with suitable words.**

1 I have never ..... the law and ..... a crime.
2 In Britain it is ..... the law to drive a car without insurance.
3 If you park illegally you will have to pay a .....
4 The police were fairly sure the man committed the crime, but they knew it would be difficult to ..... it in court.
5 The jury must decide if the accused is innocent or .....
6 In order to reach their decision, the jury must listen carefully to the .....
7 If the accused is ..... of murder, the ..... may be at least ten years in prison.
8 He has been in trouble with the police once before, but it was only a minor .....

80.4 **Read this short story, then write down your response to the questions below, based on your knowledge of the law in your own country.**

Two fifteen-year-old boys broke into a house in the middle of the day when the owner was out, and took money and jewellery worth about £900. The owner reported the crime to the police when she returned home at 6 p.m.

1 Will the police investigate this crime?
2 How will they investigate? What will they do?
3 Do you think the police will catch the two boys?
4 If they do, what crime will they be charged with?
5 Can the boys be sent to prison?
6 What do you think the sentence would be? Do you think this is the correct sentence?

Compare your answers with the answer key (based on the situation in the United Kingdom). If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

81 Crime

A Against the law

If you do something **illegal** (= wrong / **against the law**), then you have **committed a crime**. Most people commit a crime at some time in their lives, e.g. driving above the speed limit, parking illegally, stealing sweets from a shop when they were children, etc.

B Crimes

Crime	*Criminal* (= person)	*Verb*
theft (= general word for stealing)	thief	steal (also **take**)
robbery (= steal from people or places)	robber	rob
burglary (= **break into** a shop/house and steal things)	burglar	burgle / break into
shoplifting (= steal from shops when open)	shoplifter	shoplift
murder (= kill someone by intention)	murderer	murder
manslaughter (= kill someone by accident)	–	–
rape (= force someone to have sex)	rapist	rape

C Crime prevention

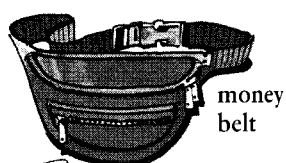
What can governments do to **fight** crime (= take action to stop crime)? These things happen in some countries, although many people may think they are not a good idea.

Police **carry** (= have) guns.
Police **are allowed to** (= are permitted to) stop anyone in the street and question them.
The courts give **tougher punishments** for crimes committed than in the past (e.g. bigger fines or longer prison sentences than in the past).
There is **capital punishment** (= death, e.g. by electric chair or hanging) for some crimes.

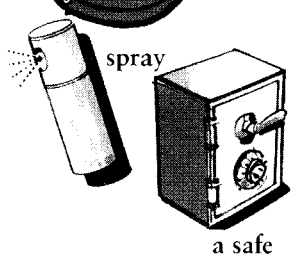
What can individuals do to **prevent** a crime **from** happening (= stop a crime happening)? Here are things some people do to **protect themselves** and their **property** (= home and land), although you may not think they are all a good idea.

Don't walk along **dark** streets **late at night** (e.g. midnight) **on your own** (= alone).
Lock all doors and windows when you go out.
Don't wear expensive jewellery.
Leave lights **on** at home when you go out.
Fit (= install) a **burglar alarm** (= a machine which makes a noise if someone enters your home).

Make sure your money is safe, e.g. wear a **money belt**.



Carry a mace **spray**. (This is a chemical and if you spray it in someone's face, it is very unpleasant. In some countries you are allowed to carry this type of spray.)



Put money and **valuables** (= valuable possessions) in a **safe** (= a strong metal box, which is very difficult to open or break).

Keep a gun in your house for **self-defence** (= to protect yourself if someone attacks you).

Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from Unit 80.

81.1 Organise the words in the box into three groups: crimes, people, and places.

murder	thief	prison	barrister	robbery	
burglar	cell	criminal	court	rape	shoplifting
manslaughter	judge	prisoner	jury	police station	

81.2 Respond to these statements or questions confirming the crime in each one.

1 A: He broke into the house, didn't he?
  B: Yes, he's been charged with .....
2 A: He killed his wife?
  B: Yes, he's been charged .....
3 A: She stole clothes and jewellery from that department store, didn't she?
  B: Yes, and she's been .....
4 A: The man on the motorbike didn't mean to kill the boy.
  B: No, but he's been charged .....
5 A: He took the money from her bag?
  B: Yes, but they caught him and he's been .....

81.3 How safe and secure are you? Answer these questions, *yes* or *no*.

1 Do you often walk in areas which are not very safe?	*yes* = 1	*no* = 0
2 Do you often walk on your own in these areas late at night?	*yes* = 2	*no* = 0
3 Do you wear a money belt when you go out?	*yes* = 0	*no* = 1
4 Do you wear an expensive watch or expensive jewellery?	*yes* = 1	*no* = 0
5 Do you check doors and windows before you go out when your home is empty?	*yes* = 0	*no* = 2
6 Do you have a burglar alarm?	*yes* = 0	*no* = 1
7 Do you leave lights on when you go out?	*yes* = 0	*no* = 1
8 Is there someone who protects the building while you are out?	*yes* = 0	*no* = 2
9 Do you have a safe in your home?	*yes* = 0	*no* = 1

Now add up your score: less than 3 = very, very safe; 3–5 = quite safe; 6–8 = you could take a lot more care; more than 8 = you are a dangerous person to know!

81.4 Fill the gaps in these questions with a suitable word.

1 Do you think the police should ..... guns?
2 Do you think the police should be ..... to stop and question people without a special reason?
3 Do you agree with capital ..... for certain crimes such as murder?
4 Do you think it should be legal for people to carry a mace .....?
5 Do you think people should be allowed to use a gun or knife in self-.....?
6 Do you think tougher punishments will help to ..... crime?

What is your opinion on these questions? Discuss them with another person if possible.

82 Politics

A Types of government

Monarchy: a state ruled by a king or queen. There are also countries that have a monarchy, but the monarch is not the ruler, e.g. The United Kingdom.

Republic: a state governed by **representatives** (= men or women chosen by the people) and a president, e.g. USA or France. People who believe in this system are **republicans**.

Democracy: a system of government in which leaders are chosen by the people, e.g. France or the UK. People who believe in this system are **democrats**.

Dictatorship: a system of government in which one person rules the country (= one person has total power). This person is called a **dictator**.

B Political beliefs

Abstract noun	*Personal noun/adjective*
conservatism	conservative
socialism	socialist
social democracy	social democrat
liberalism	liberal
communism	communist
fascism	fascist

People who believe in **social democracy** are **social democrats**.

C Political positions

What does it mean to be a **socialist** or a **conservative**? Often, it means different things in different countries, but in Britain we often talk about someone's political position like this:

left-wing / on the left (= socialist)	**middle of the road / in the centre** (= liberal)	**right-wing / on the right** (= conservative)

D Elections

In a democracy, people **vote for** (= they choose in a formal way / **elect**) the **political party** (e.g. conservatives, liberals or socialists) that they want to **form** (= make) the government. They do this in an **election**, and in many countries elections **take place / are held** (= they happen) every four or five years.

42% **voted for** the socialists in the last **election** (= the socialists got 42% of the **votes**). The president **was elected** two years ago.

E Government

Political systems are different all over the world. In the UK, when a political party wins a **majority** (= 51% or more) of **seats** (= official positions in parliament) in an election, they become the government of the country, their **leader** (= the head of the party / person in control) becomes **Prime Minister** and they are **in power**.

The government must have **policies** (= programmes of action) to **run** (= manage) the country. This means, for example, an **economic policy** (for the economy), and a **foreign policy** (for actions taken by the country in other parts of the world).

Exercises

82.1 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

Abstract noun	*Person*	*Adjective*
politics		
democracy		
dictatorship		
socialism		
conservatism		
liberalism		

82.2 Fill the gaps to complete this text about the political system in the United Kingdom. One word in each gap.

In the UK (1)_____ are held every five years. (The (2)_____ Minister may decide to hold one after four years, but five years is the maximum.)
Some countries have a system of proportional representation: this means in theory, that a political party with 30% of the (3)_____ should get 30% of the seats in (4)_____. In the UK, the political (5)_____ is different: here the winner takes all. This means that the person with the most votes in each political area (called a constituency) wins the seat; and the political (6)_____ which wins a (7)_____ of the seats will (8)_____ the government on their own. As a result of this system, it is possible for a party to be in (9)_____ with only 40% of the total vote. Some people think this system is unfair.

What do you think? What possible reasons could there be to justify (= support) this system? Think about your answer, then compare it with the ideas suggested in the key.

82.3 Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Which party is in power at the moment?
2 When were they elected?
3 Who is the leader of this party?
4 Is this person the President or Prime Minister of your country?
5 Do you agree with most of their policies?
6 Would you describe yourself as left-wing, right-wing, or in the centre?
7 Do you think your political views have changed much during your lifetime?
8 How many major (= important) political parties are there?
9 Who did you vote for in the last election?
10 Do you think this party will win the next election? Will you vote for them again?

82.4 **You can increase your English vocabulary in politics quite easily:**

Buy three newspapers (in English if you are in an English speaking country, or your own language if you are in your own country), and find the same political story in each one. Read the articles and underline any words that appear in all of them, and any other words you think are important. If you are reading a newspaper in English, try to guess the meaning of these words and then use a dictionary to check.

This exercise is equally useful if you read articles in your own language. You use a bilingual dictionary to find the English translation/explanation for your underlined words, and you can then look up these words in a monolingual dictionary as well.

83 Bureaucracy

A What is it?

Bureaucracy refers to the official rules and procedures used by officials (= **bureaucrats**) to control an organisation or country. For many people it is a negative word as it often means unnecessary rules, long waits, and lots of documents and forms.

B Documents

When you need to **obtain** (= get) or show documents, it is important that you know the names of them. Here are some important ones:

passport
identity card: a card with your name, date of birth and photo to show who you are. Great Britain is one of the few countries where people still do not have identity cards.
driving licence: the official document which permits you to drive on public roads.
visa: this gives you permission to enter, pass through or leave a country.
certificates: official pieces of paper stating certain facts, e.g. a **birth certificate** gives facts about your birth, and **exam certificates** state you have passed certain exams.

Officials often **check** (= look at and examine) your documents, e.g. the police may check your driving licence; passport officials may check your identity card.
Some of these documents are for a fixed period of time, e.g. a visa may be for six months. At the end of that time, your visa **runs out** (*infml*) / **expires** (*fml*) (= it finishes / comes to an end). If you want to stay in the country you must **renew** it (= have a new one for a further period of time). You can **renew** a visa, a passport, a membership card for a club, etc.

C Forms

There are also situations where you need to **fill in** (= complete) forms. Here are some:

landing card: a form you may have to fill in when you enter another country.
enrolment form: a form you often fill in when you do a course, go to a school or college, etc. It may also be called a **registration form**.
application form: a form to write details of yourself, often when applying for a job.

With almost all forms, you will need to **sign** them (= write your **signature**), e.g:

signed

D Formal language

Here are some formal written expressions and their spoken English meanings.

Written	*Spoken*
date of birth	= When were you born?
country of origin	= Where do you come from?
marital status	= Are you single or married?
date of arrival	= When did you arrive?
date of departure	= When are you leaving?(*or* when did you leave?)

E Bureaucratic problems

We often associate bureaucracy with problems. For example, you may have to **queue** (v, n) (= wait in a line) to get an official piece of paper or have it **stamped**.

Exercises

83.1 **Write down at least two words which can be used before these nouns.**

1 ..... card .....

2 ..... certificate .....

3 ..... licence .....

4 ..... form .....

83.2 **Complete these sentences with a suitable word.**

1 Will you need to ..... a visa if you go to the United States?
2 I was surprised that nobody ..... my passport when we arrived in France.
3 Could you ..... this form, please?
4 They sent the form back to me because I had forgotten to ..... it at the bottom.
5 I'm afraid my visa ..... next week, so if I want to stay here I will have to ..... it. But I don't think it'll be a problem.
6 You should get there early because there are always long ....., and you may have to wait quite a long time.
7 I want to do an English course in London, so I wrote to a few schools and asked them to send me an ..... form.

83.3 **How many of these documents do you have?**

a passport
a driving licence
a birth certificate
a marriage certificate
an identity card
a TV licence
a degree certificate (from a university)
an exam certificate for an English exam, e.g. Cambridge, Oxford or ARELS

83.4 **Complete these sentences with a suitable paraphrase.**

1 What's your date of birth? In other words, when .....?
2 What's your country of origin? .....?
3 What's your marital status? .....?
4 What was your date of arrival? .....?
5 When's your date of departure? .....?

83.5 **I asked some English people what they felt about bureaucracy and also about problems they had had with bureaucracy. What about you? How do you feel? Have you had any problems? Write down your thoughts and problems, then compare them with the replies from British people in the answer key.**

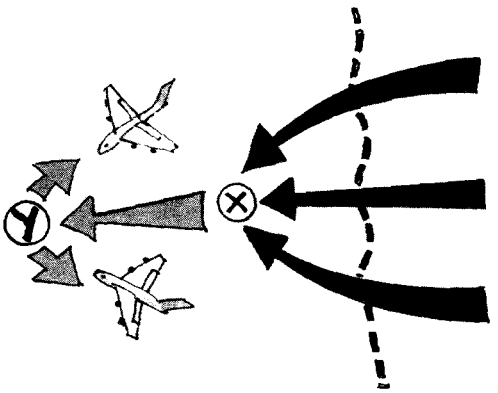
1 .....
2 .....
3 .....

84 War and peace

A The outbreak (= start) of war

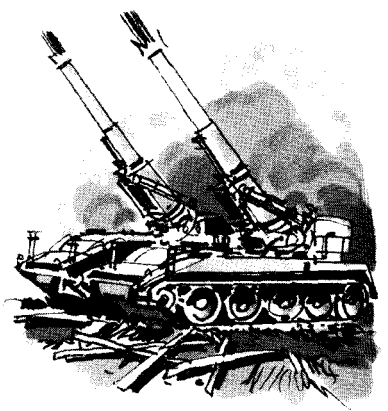
Wars often start because of a **conflict** (= strong disagreement) between countries or groups of people, about **territory** (= land that belongs to one group or country). Look at the diagram on the right and read the text on the left.

Country A **invades** country B (= A enters B by force and in large numbers), and **captures** (also **takes / takes control of**) the city of X. Soldiers from country B have to **retreat** (= go backwards; ≠ to advance) to the city of Y. A's army and air force continue to **attack** the city of Y (= take violent action to damage it), but B's soldiers **defend** it (= take action to protect it) successfully.



B A war zone

The area around the city of Y is now the main **war zone** (= the area where the fighting is happening). Country B has asked for help from its **allies** (= countries who are friends with country B). The allies send aid (= help) in the form of extra **troops** (= large groups of soldiers) and **supplies** (= food and other things that are needed every day, e.g. blankets and medicine) to help. There is **shelling** (= **firing** of **guns** and explosives) of the city every day and hundreds of soldiers are either killed or **wounded** (= injured while fighting). Many **civilians** (= ordinary people who are not in the army) are killed as well.



C Peace talks

For the civilians who are still **alive** (≠ dead), the situation gets worse. As winter approaches, food supplies **run out** (= they are almost gone/finished) and there is no electricity. The soldiers get tired, and both sides begin to see that neither side can win the war; they agree to meet for **peace talks** (*pl*) (= talks to try to negotiate a **peace settlement** / an end to the war). After some time they agree to a **ceasefire** (= a period of no fighting).

D Terrorism

This is violent action for political reasons. People who do this are **terrorists**, and a common terrorist crime is **hijacking** (= to take control of a bus, train, ship or plane; the people on board then become prisoners). The main purpose of hijacking is to use the prisoners (called **hostages**) in order to **bargain** for something (= to demand something in exchange for the hostages). The terrorists may agree to **release** (v, n) the hostages (= permit the hostages to go free) if a government agrees to give the terrorists money or release other terrorists.

Exercises

84.1 **Match the words on the left with the correct definition on the right.**

1 ally	a land controlled by a country
2 release	b stop fighting
3 conflict	c permit to go free
4 troops	d injure while fighting
5 invade	e large groups of soldiers
6 wound	f friendly country
7 territory	g strong disagreement
8 ceasefire	h enter another country by force and in large numbers

84.2 **Use opposites to contradict what the speaker says in the sentences below. Look at the example first.**

Example: A: Is the soldier dead?
B: No, he's ...still alive.....

1 A: Will they agree to a ceasefire?
B: No, they'll .....
2 A: Do you think the army will try to advance when the weather improves?
B: No, I think .....
3 A: Do the people still have lots of food?
B: No, they're beginning to .....
4 A: Is the town mostly full of soldiers?
B: No, they're .....
5 A: Do you think they'll keep the hostages for a long time?
B: No, I'm sure they'll .....

84.3 **When we repeat an idea in a text we often try to avoid using the same word twice. Read this text and find examples of words being used as synonyms for previous ideas. The first one has been done for you (food and medicine = supplies).**

THERE is a desperate need for food and medicine, but with the town surrounded, the lorries are unable to bring in essential supplies. We have seen ordinary people in the street giving some of their meagre rations of food to the soldiers who are defending them, but very soon the troops will be just as hungry as the civilians if the situation gets any worse.

Meanwhile, the centre of the town is being slowly destroyed. There is almost daily shelling of the buildings that still stand, and this morning we witnessed gunmen firing at almost anyone who dared to go out into the streets. One old woman was hit in the leg and we saw at least two others who were quite badly wounded as well.

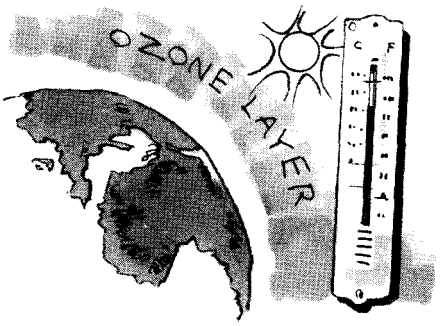
Aid agencies have appealed to the soldiers to allow them to enter the town, but so far the General in command has even refused to let anyone in, including doctors and nurses. Many fear it is now only a matter of days before the town is captured, and if this happens, the army could take control of the whole region within weeks.

84.4 **Can you answer these questions with two reasons for each one? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else before checking with the key.**

1 Why do terrorists take hostages?
2 Why do some governments always refuse to agree to terrorist demands?

85 Pollution and the environment

A Important definitions



People are more worried about the **environment** (= the air, water, and land around us) as a result of the **harmful** (= dangerous/**damaging**) effects of human activity. Some of these activities cause **pollution** (= dirty air, land and water) and some are **destroying** the environment (= damaging it so badly that soon parts will not exist). Here are some of the problems:

the ozone layer: a layer of gases which stop harmful radiation from the sun reaching the earth; recent research shows that there is now a hole in parts of the ozone layer.
global warming: an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in carbon dioxide.
acid rain: rain that contains dangerous chemicals; this is caused by smoke from factories.

B The 'greens'

Because of these problems, there are many groups of people whose aim is **conservation** (= the **protection** of natural things, e.g. plants and animals). They are often referred to as **greens**, e.g. 'Greenpeace' and 'Friends of the Earth'.

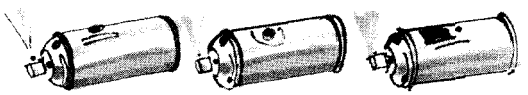
C Common causes of damage

smoke from **factories**

car **exhaust fumes**

dumping (= throwing away) industrial **waste** (= unwanted material) in seas and rivers

aerosol cans (usually called **sprays**). Some of these contain CFCs (= a chemical) which can damage the ozone layer.



cutting down tropical rainforests (e.g. The Amazon). This increases carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

D How can we help?

- Don't **throw away** bottles, newspapers, etc. Take them to a **bottle bank** or newspaper bank, and then they can be **recycled** (= used again).
- **Plant** more trees.
- Don't **waste** (= use badly) **resources**, e.g. water, gas. Try to **save** (≠ waste) them.

Note: a **resource** is a valuable possession. There are **natural resources**, e.g. water or gold; and **human resources**, e.g. knowledge and skills. The word is usually plural.

Exercises

85.1 **Fill the gaps to form a compound noun or phrase from the opposite page.**

1 the ..... layer
2 ..... rain
3 ..... waste
4 a bottle .....
5 ..... warming
6 ..... fumes
7 ..... rainforests
8 natural or human .....

85.2 **Complete these word-building tables. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you.**

Noun	*Verb*
waste	.....
.....	protect
.....	destroy
pollution	.....
damage	.....

Noun	*Adjective*
damage	.....
environment	.....
harm	.....
danger	.....
.....	safe

85.3 **Complete the definitions.**

1 Conservation is the protection of natural things, e.g. ..... and .....
2 Acid rain is rain that contains dangerous chemicals. It is caused by .....
3 The ozone layer is a layer of gases that stop dangerous radiation from the sun from reaching .....
4 Global warming is an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in .....
5 CFC (chlorofluorocarbon) is a chemical which .....

85.4 **If we want to look after the environment, there are certain things we should and shouldn't do. Complete these two lists in suitable ways.**

We should:
..... paper, bottles and clothes.
..... tropical rainforests.
..... more trees.
..... water and energy.

We shouldn't:
..... paper, bottles and clothes.
..... the ozone layer.
..... water and energy.
..... tropical rainforests.

85.5 **Test your knowledge of words from the opposite page and 'green' issues. Are these statements *true* or *false*?**

1 CFCs protect the ozone layer.
2 'Greens' believe in conservation.
3 A hole in the ozone layer could increase skin cancer.
4 Cutting down tropical rainforests increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
5 Plastic cannot be recycled.

86 Air travel

A Departures

This is the usual sequence of activities when you get to the airport.

First you go to the **check-in desk** where they **weigh your luggage**. Usually you are permitted 20 kilos, but if your bags weigh more, you may have to pay **excess baggage** (= you pay extra). The airline representative checks your ticket and gives you a **boarding card** for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through **passport control** where an official **checks** [NOT ~~controls~~] your passport, and into the **departure lounge**. Here, you can also buy things in the **duty-free**, e.g. perfume, alcohol and cigarettes. About half an hour or forty minutes before **take-off**, you are told to go to a gate number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you **get on** the plane. When you **board** (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have **hand luggage**, you can put it under your seat or in the **overhead locker** above your seat.
The plane then **taxis** (= moves slowly) towards the **runway**, and when it has permission to **take** off, it accelerates along the runway and takes off.

Note: The verb **to taxi** is generally only used in this context.

B The flight

You may want or need to understand certain announcements; these come from the **captain** (= the pilot) or from an **air steward or stewardess / cabin crew / flight attendants** (= people who look after the passengers):

Please **fasten your seat belt** and put your seat in the **upright position**.
We are now **cruising** (= flying comfortably) at an **altitude** (= height) of 10,000 metres.
May we **remind** passengers (= ask passengers to remember) that there is no smoking until you are inside the **terminal building** (= where passengers arrive and depart).
The **cabin crew** (= air stewards) are now coming round with **landing cards**. (These are cards you sometimes have to fill in when you enter certain countries.)

C Arrival

When the plane **lands** (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop / come to a halt. When the doors are open, you **get off** the plane and walk through the **terminal building** and go to the **baggage reclaim** where you collect your luggage. You then pass **through customs** (green = nothing to declare; red = goods to declare; blue = European Union citizens). If you are lucky, you can then get a bus, taxi or train to the centre of town without waiting too long. You can also **hire** a car (= **rent** a car) at most airports.

Note: In British English you normally **hire** something for a short period, e.g. hire a room for a party, and **rent** something for a long period, e.g. a flat; for a car, you can use both words.

Exercises

86.1 Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.

off	control	free	card	baggage
in	lounge	luggage	reclaim	locker

1 boarding .....
2 baggage .....
3 excess .....
4 passport .....
5 hand .....
6 duty .....
7 overhead .....
8 take-.....
9 departure .....
10 check-.....

86.2 What do you call:

1 The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage?
2 The card they give you with the seat number on it?
3 The money you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy?
4 The place where you sit and have a drink when you are waiting for your flight to be called?
5 The bags you carry onto the plane with you?
6 The place above your head where you can put your hand luggage?
7 The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off?
8 The people who look after you on the plane?
9 The part of the airport you walk through when you arrive or depart?
10 The place where you collect your luggage after you land?

86.3 Complete this part of a letter about an unpleasant flight.

Dear Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible flight. We (1)_____ two hours late because of bad weather, and then over the channel we hit more bad weather. The (2)_____ announced that we had to (3)_____ our seat belts, which was a bit worrying, and for half an hour we (4)_____ through a terrible storm. It was still raining and very windy when we (5)_____ in Rome and I was really glad to (6)_____ the plane and get into the airport building.

Fortunately things have improved since then but I really hope the return (7)_____ is a lot better.

86.4 Think about the whole experience of flying (from check-in to the time you leave the airport at your destination) and answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

1 What is the most interesting part, and what is the most boring part?
2 Where do you often have delays, and why?
3 Is there any part that frightens or worries you?
4 What do you usually do during most flights?
5 Do you always eat the food they give you?
6 Is there one thing which would improve flying and make the experience more interesting?

87 Hotels

A Types of hotel

Hotels in Britain are graded with stars from one-star to five-star (**five-star hotels** are the best and most expensive). You can also stay in a **Bed & Breakfast** (B&B) (also called **Guest Houses**) where you pay for a bedroom, possibly an **ensuite** (= room with private bathroom) and breakfast.

B Types of hotel accommodation

a single room: for one person with a single bed
a double room: for two people with one large double bed
a twin room: for two people with two single beds
full board: includes breakfast, lunch and dinner
half board: includes breakfast and dinner
B & B: just the room and breakfast

C A visit to a hotel

We stayed in the Carlton Hotel for three nights in July, but I **booked** (= reserved) our room three months **in advance** (= before; in other words, in April) because it was the middle of the tourist **season.** When we arrived we **checked in at reception,** then the **porter** carried our suitcases up to our room. I gave him a small **tip** (n, v) – about 50p, I think. The staff were very friendly – we had a very nice **chambermaid** (= the woman who cleans the room) – and the room was very comfortable. The only problem we had, in fact, was with the shower which didn't **work** (= function) very well. (You could also say 'There was **something wrong with** the shower'.)

D Useful words and expressions

Could I **book** (= reserve) a room for next Thursday?
Could I have **an early morning call** at 7 a.m. please? (= Could you wake me at 7 a.m.?)
Could you **put it on my bill,** please? (= add the cost to the bill, e.g. for a drink you have in the hotel bar)
Could I **pay my bill,** please? (= pay for everything)
Could you **order** (= call) a taxi for me to go to the airport?
Are you **fully booked** (= completely full) next week?
Is breakfast/dinner **included?** (= Does the price include breakfast/dinner?)
Where's the **lift?** (= the machine which takes you up or down a floor) [AmEng = **elevator**]
Excuse me. **How do I get to** the underground station from here?

Exercises

87.1 **Put these sentences in a logical order.**

1 I paid my bill.
2 I checked in at reception.
3 I left the hotel.
4 I went up to my room.
5 I spent the night in the hotel.
6 I had an early morning call at seven o'clock.
7 I booked a room at the hotel.
8 I went out for dinner in a local restaurant.
9 I arrived at the hotel.
10 I got up and had a shower.
11 I had breakfast.
12 I tipped the porter who carried my luggage upstairs.

87.2 **What would you say in these situations?**

1 You want to stay in a hotel for two nights next week with your husband/wife. You phone the hotel. What do you ask or say?

.....

2 You are at the hotel reception and you are planning to leave in about 15 minutes. What could you ask the receptionist?

.....

3 You want to wake up at 7 a.m. but you don't have an alarm clock. What do you ask at reception?

.....

4 You have a drink in the hotel bar. The barman asks how you want to pay. What's your reply?

.....

5 When you turn on the shower in your room, the water comes out very very slowly. What could you say at reception?

.....

6 You want to go to the nearest bank but don't know where it is. What do you ask at reception?

.....

87.3 **You are staying in quite a good hotel (e.g. two-star or three-star) in your country. Would you expect to have the following?**

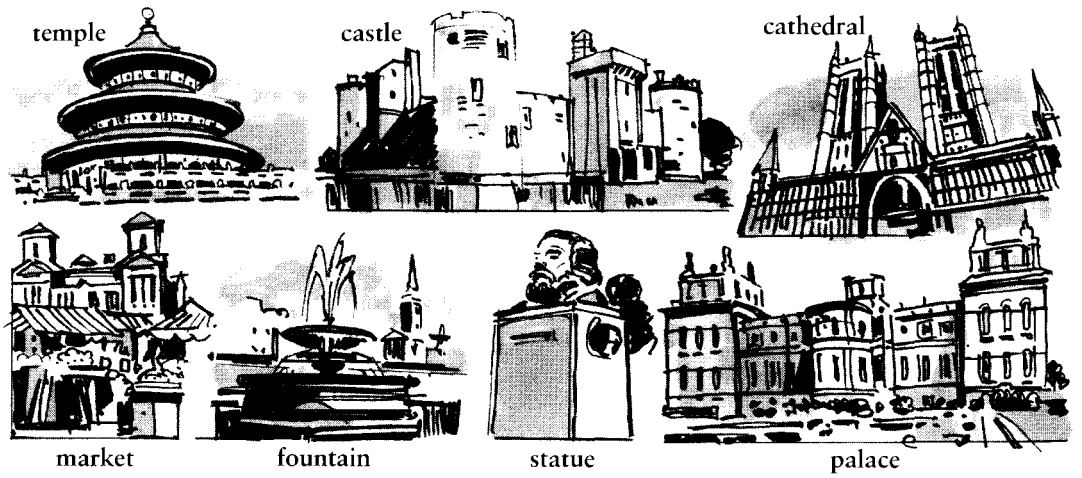
1 a room without a private bathroom
2 a hairdryer in the bathroom
3 a colour television in the room
4 a telephone in the room
5 writing paper in the room
6 a machine for making tea and coffee in the room
7 an electric trouser press (= a machine which presses/irons your trousers for you) in the room
8 air conditioning in the room

If possible, compare your answers with someone from a different country.

88 A sightseeing holiday

A Sightseeing

You may **do a bit of sightseeing** on holiday, or you may **do a lot of sightseeing**, but you will probably go to a museum or art gallery, and see or visit some of these things:



Many people **go on a sightseeing tour** of a town (usually in a bus); they can also **go on a tour of the castle / the cathedral / the art gallery**, etc. When you are sightseeing, it helps to buy a **guidebook** (= a book of information for tourists) and a **map** of the town you are in.

B Things that tourists often do on holiday

look round the shops / **have a look round** the shops
take photographs
spend a lot of / lots of **money**
buy **souvenirs** (= typical products from the country)
get lost (= lose their way)
go out most evenings (= go to different places for social reasons, e.g. restaurant or disco)
have a good/great time (= enjoy themselves)

C Describing 'places'

The word **place** is very common and can describe a building, an area, a town, or country:

Bruges is a lovely **place** (= town) and we found a really nice **place** (= hotel) to stay.
The town is full of interesting **places** (= areas/buildings).

These words are often used when we describe places:

Venice is beautiful but it's always **packed** (= very crowded/full) with tourists in the summer.
New York is very **cosmopolitan.** (= full of people from different countries and cultures)
Vienna has lots of **historical monuments.** (= places, e.g. castles, built a long time ago)
Many beautiful cities have become very **touristy.** (= a negative word: 'too much tourism')
Sao Paolo is a really **lively** place (= full of life and activity) and the **night-life** is fantastic.

Note: If you want to ask if it is 'a good idea' to visit a place, you can use **worth** + **-ing**:

A: If I go to Scotland, is it **worth** spending a few days in Glasgow?
B: Yes definitely. And if you want to travel round a bit, it's **worth** renting a car.

Exercises

88.1 Complete this postcard that John sent to his family while he was on holiday. You may need a word or phrase in each space.

Hi everyone, I've been in Paris for almost a week now and I'm having a (1) _____. I spent the first few days (2) _____ – The Eiffel Tower, Notre Dame, and all the usual tourist attractions. Most places are absolutely (3) _____ with tourists (it's the time of the year I suppose), so yesterday I decided to have (4) _____ round the shops and I bought a few (5) _____. Today I've been to a couple of very interesting art (6) _____. I got (7) _____ on my way back to the hotel but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating (8) _____ with lots of little stalls selling just about everything from apples to antiques. I ate in the hotel the first night but usually I (9) _____ and have dinner in a restaurant – the food is fantastic. I'm afraid I've (10) _____ a lot of money, but it's a great place and I've (11) _____ lots of photographs so you'll be able to see for yourself when I get back home on the 24th. See you then, John

88.2 Which of these places do you usually visit or go to when you are on holiday?

museums art galleries churches/cathedrals tourist shops concerts discos / night clubs castles/palaces/temples the cinema markets restaurants bars the theatre

88.3 Confirm the information in the questions without repeating the same words and phrases. Use words and phrases from the opposite page.

Example: A: You've got quite a few pictures, haven't you?
B: Yes, we took lots of photos.

1 A: Is it a nice city?
B: Yes, it's a .....
2 A: There's a big mix of people in New York, isn't there?
B: Yes, it's very .....
3 A: Was it very crowded?
B: Yes, it was .....
4 A: There's a lot to do in the evenings, isn't there?
B: Yes, the .....
5 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?
B: Yes, we .....

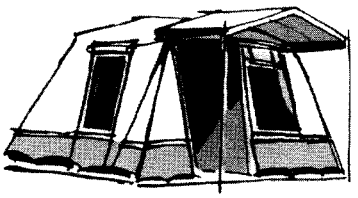
88.4 Without using one town more than twice, name a town or city in your country which is:

lively
cosmopolitan
very touristy
not worth visiting
packed with tourists in the summer
famous for its historical monuments
really worth visiting if you are interested in architecture

89 On the beach and in the country

A Places to stay

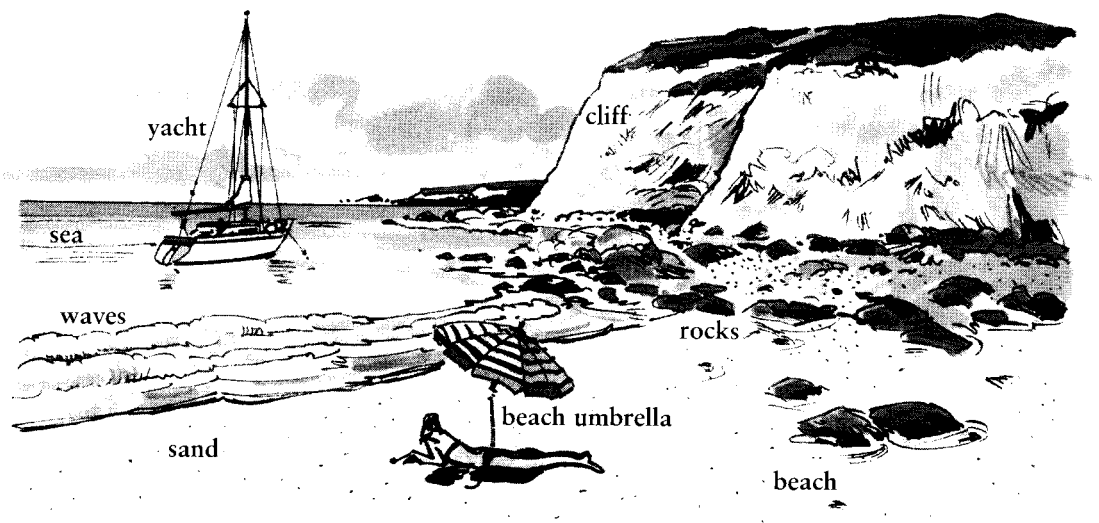
When people **go on holiday** they stay in **various** places (= a number of different places): some go to hotels; others rent **an apartment** (a 'holiday' flat) or **villa** (= a house by the sea or in the countryside; often in the Mediterranean / southern Europe); some prefer sleeping in a **tent** at a **campsite**.



B At the beach

Many people spend their holiday in **seaside resorts** (= towns by the sea for tourists, e.g. Malaga, St. Tropez, Okinawa) where they can spend most of their time on the beach. Some people enjoy swimming, others love **sunbathing** (= **lying on the beach** in order to **get a suntan**). If you like sunbathing, you should use **suntan lotion** to help you get **a tan** and **protect your skin**. If you don't have any protection, you may get **sunburn**, which is painful and can be dangerous. And if you want total protection you should use **sunblock**, or sit under a **beach umbrella**.

Swimming can also be dangerous if there are **rocks** under the water or if the sea is **rough**, e.g. with big **waves**.



C In the country

People who live in large towns often like to **get away** (= leave the place where they live) at weekends or in the summer, and enjoy the **peace and quiet** (= calm and tranquillity) of the country (also called the **countryside**). Some people just like to **put their feet up** (= relax and do nothing) and occasionally go for **a stroll** (= a slow casual walk); while others enjoy **hiking** (= long walks, often hill walking) across hills and valleys. And the countryside is a great place to have a **picnic** (= eating a prepared meal of cold food outside).

Note: Learners sometimes say 'I love to be in the nature'. This is usually a translation from their first language and it is not correct in English. The nearest we can say is probably 'I love being in the countryside'.

Exercises

89.1 Write down at least five words beginning with 'sun'. You can check your answers on the opposite page and in the index.

sun..... sun..... sun.....
sun..... sun.....

89.2 Match a word from the left with a word from the right to form eight words or phrases.

1 sandy	waves
2 suntan	bathe
3 beach	beach
4 rough	lotion
5 sun	sea
6 sea	cliff
7 big	side
8 steep	umbrella

Now write answers to these questions.

1 Why do most people go to seaside resorts?
2 Why do people sunbathe?
3 Why do they use sunblock?
4 Why do they use suntan lotion?
5 How does it feel if you get sunburn?
6 What sport requires big waves?
7 Have you been in a boat when the sea was very rough? Were you seasick?

89.3 Complete this short text with a suitable word or phrase in each gap.

I live and work in Milan but I like to (1)..... at the weekend if possible. My parents have a small house in the (2)....., about 100 kilometres from Milan, and it's a great place to go if you want a bit of peace and (3)..... In the summer you can just (4)..... by the pool during the hottest part of the day, then in the evening go for a (5)..... through the village or over the fields. Sometimes we go out for the whole day and have a (6)..... somewhere, by the lake or next to one of the many vineyards.

89.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word. (One word only for each gap.)

1 Would you prefer a holiday in a seaside ..... or a holiday in the country?
2 Would you prefer to stay in one place, or would you rather (= prefer to) go to ..... places?
3 Would you prefer to spend your time ..... on a beach or would you rather go for long walks?
4 Would you prefer to stay in a hotel or ..... an apartment?
5 Would you prefer to eat in a restaurant or have a ..... in the open air?
6 Would you prefer somewhere that was quite lively, or would you rather go to a place where there was peace and .....?

Look at the questions again. Which would you prefer? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

90 Time

A Prepositions: at, on, in

[redacted]	e.g. at 8 o'clock, at 3.30, at midnight
on a day	e.g. on Monday, on July 14, on the second day
in a period	e.g. in the morning, in April, in 1995

Important exceptions are: **at Christmas, at Easter, at the weekend, at night**

B Words often confused

Some time prepositions are easily confused. These are common problems:

I will stay here **until** she phones. (= I will go after she has phoned)
I will be in the office **until** 4 o'clock. (= I will leave the office at 4 o'clock)
I will be in the office **by** 4 o'clock. (= I will arrive at the office not later than 4 o'clock)
I'll be back home **by** lunchtime. (= I will arrive home not later than lunchtime)

I've worked in this office **for** six months. (for + a period of time)
I've worked in this office **since** May. (since + a point in time)

I worked for a newspaper **during** the war / 1990 / the summer. (this tells you 'when')
I worked for a newspaper **for** four years / six months. (this tells you 'how long')
[NOT I worked for the newspaper ~~during four years~~.]

Note: **During** a period may mean a part of that period or the whole period, e.g. 'during the war' can mean part of the war or the whole war. The context usually makes it clear, but if we want to stress or emphasise that an action occupied the whole period, we often use **throughout**, e.g. It rained throughout the night. (= it didn't stop raining)

I'm going back to Spain **in** ten days' time. (= ten days from now)
We arranged our next meeting **for** April 7th. (= to be on April 7th)

C Approximate times: past and future

I've known my dentist **for ages** (= for a long time), but I haven't been for a check-up **recently/lately** (= e.g. in the last few months).
I haven't seen Tom **recently/lately** (= e.g. in the last few weeks).
I used to go to an Australian dentist but that was **a long time ago** (e.g. 5–10 years ago).
My sister went to the dentist **the other day** (= a few days ago).
This dictionary will be OK **for the time being** (= for now / until I need a better one).

D Periods of time

There are 60 **seconds** in a minute; 60 minutes in **an hour**, 24 hours in a day, 7 days in a week, 2 weeks in a **fortnight**, 52 weeks in a year, 10 years in a **decade**; 100 years in a **century**.

E Time passing: take and last

My English course **lasts** ten weeks. (= it continues for ten weeks)
How long does the film **last**? (= How long is it from the beginning to the end?)
It **takes** me (= I need) half an hour to get to school.
We can walk but it'll **take** (= we'll need) a long time.

Exercises

90.1 Complete the text with *at*, *on*, or *in*.

There's one bus from London which gets here (1)..... ten o'clock (2)..... the morning and then another which gets in (3)..... four o'clock (4)..... the afternoon. That's (5)..... weekdays, but (6)..... the weekend the timetable is a bit different. (7)..... Saturday there are still two buses but the second one arrives (8)..... five thirty; (9)..... Sunday there is just the one bus (10)..... two o'clock. And (11)..... the winter, the service doesn't run at all (12)..... Sundays.

90.2 Cross out the incorrect answers.

1 The teacher told us to finish our homework by/until Monday.
2 We can't leave by/until the others get back.
3 I've been in the army for/since I was eighteen.
4 They've worked here for/since/during six months.
5 I visit my uncle every week for/since/during the winter.
6 I was at university for/since/during four years.
7 She's going back to France in/after three months' time.
8 He left the office during/throughout the lunch break.
9 It was hot during/throughout August; we didn't have one day under 30 degrees.
10 I booked a table in the restaurant by/for next Saturday. I hope that's OK.

90.3 Can you complete these sentences with the correct number?

1 The Olympic Games usually lasts about ..... weeks.
2 Rembrandt was born in the .....th century.
3 President Kennedy died in ..... That's ..... years ago.
4 It takes approximately ..... hours to fly from Tokyo to New York.
5 Some athletes can run 100 metres in less than ..... seconds.
6 The ..... was the decade in which the USA and USSR (at that time) were both trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

90.4 Replace the underlined time expressions with more 'approximate' time expressions.

1 I went to the library three days ago.
2 This dictionary isn't great but it'll be OK until I'm more advanced.
3 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks.
4 And I haven't been to a concert for three or four years.
5 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago.

90.5 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

1 On weekdays I usually get up at ..... and leave home at .....
2 I always clean my teeth in .....
3 I don't go to school/college/work on .....
4 I usually have a holiday in .....
5 I have been in my present school/college/job for .....
6 I have been studying English since .....
7 I haven't spoken English since .....
8 It takes me ..... to get to school/college/work.
9 You can't get a driving licence until .....
10 It rains quite a lot during .....

91 Numbers

A Cardinal numbers

379 = three **hundred** and seventy nine
2,860 = two **thousand** eight hundred and sixty
5,084 = five thousand and eighty-four
470,000 = four hundred and seventy thousand
2,550,000 = two **million**, five hundred and fifty thousand
3,000,000,000 = three **billion**

Note: There is no plural 's' after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. On their own, they can be plural, e.g. **thousands** of people; **millions** of insects.

B Ordinal numbers and dates

One of the problems with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way:

We write **4 January** (or 4th January), but say **the fourth of January** *or* **January the fourth.**
We write **21 May** (or 21st May), but say **the twenty-first of May** *or* **May the twenty-first.**
1997 = **nineteen ninety seven**
1905 = **nineteen hundred and five** *or* **nineteen oh five**

C Fractions and decimals

$1\frac{1}{4}$ = one and **a quarter**
$1\frac{1}{2}$ = one and **a half**
$1\frac{3}{4}$ = one and **three quarters**
$1\frac{1}{3}$ = one and **a third**
1.25 = one **point** two five
1.5 = one point five
1.75 = one point seven five
1.33 = one point three three

D Percentages

26% = twenty-six **per cent**
More than 50% is the **majority**; less than 50% is the **minority**.

E Arithmetic

There are four basic processes for **working out** (= calculating) a problem:

+ = **addition** e.g. 6 + 4 = 10 (six **plus/and** four **equals/is** ten)
− = **subtraction** e.g. 6 − 4 = 2 (six **minus** four equals/is two)
× = **multiplication** e.g. 6 × 4 = 24 (six **times** / **multiplied by** four equals/is twenty-four)
÷ = **division** e.g. 4 ÷ 2 = 2 (four **divided by** two equals/is two)

F Saying '0'

This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

telephone number: 603 724 = six **oh** three, seven two four (AmEng = six **zero** three)
mathematics: 0.7 = **nought** point seven, 6.02 = six point **oh** two
temperature: −10 degrees = ten degrees below **zero** / minus ten degrees
football: 2–0 = two **nil** tennis: 40–0 = forty **love**

G Talking numbers

Here are several useful words and expressions connected with numbers:

The streets have got **odd** numbers (e.g. 3, 5, 7) on the left and **even** numbers (e.g. 4, 6, 8) on the right.
I got 16 **out of** 20 in our last test. 16/20

Exercises

91.1 **How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answers after each one.**

1 462 .....
2 $2\frac{1}{2}$ .....
3 2,345 .....
4 6.75 .....
5 0.25 .....
6 $3\frac{1}{3}$ .....
7 1,250,000 .....
8 10.04 .....
9 47% .....
10 10 September .....
11 3 July .....
12 602 8477 (phone number) .....
13 –5 centigrade .....
14 In 1903 .....
15 In 1876 .....

Now practise saying them. If possible, record yourself saying them and then record a native speaker of English saying them or someone from your country who speaks English very well. Listen to both. How do you sound?

91.2 **Correct the mistakes in these sentences.**

1 After the game I heard the crowd was over twenty thousands.
2 We arrived on the ten September.
3 There were two hundred twenty altogether.
4 I got twenty-five from forty in my test.
5 My birthday is thirty-one August.
6 My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

91.3 **Write answers to these problems.**

1 23 and 36 is .....
2 24 times 8 is .....
3 80 minus 20 is .....
4 65 divided by 13 is .....
5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got left?
6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left?

91.4 **Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.**

1 When were you born?
2 How much do you weigh?
3 What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
4 Is that an odd or an even number?
5 What is the approximate population of your town?
6 What is the approximate population of your country?
7 What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
8 How many kilometres are there in a mile?

92 Distance, size and dimension

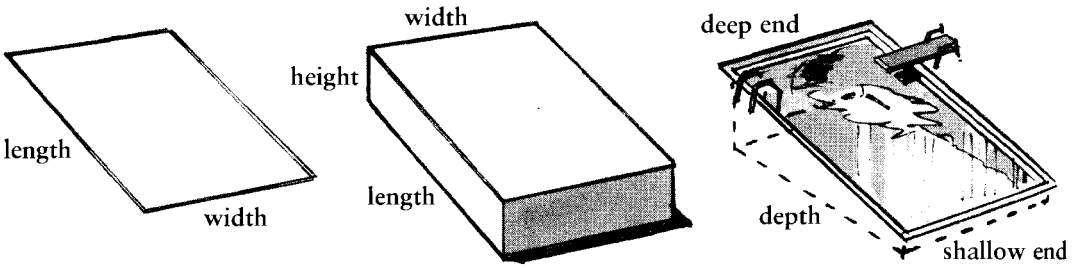
A Distance

The most common way of asking about distance is probably: **How far is it?** Here are two more common questions, and some expressions often used in the reply.

Is it **a long way?**	No, **just round the corner.** / **a couple of minutes' walk** (= very near).
Is it very **far?**	No, **not far.** / No, about **five or ten minutes' walk** (= quite near).
Is it a long way?	Yeah **quite a long way.** / Yeah, over a mile.
Is it very far?	Yes it's **a long way.** / Yes it's miles. / Yes it's **too far to walk.**

Note: We can use **far** in a question or negative but not in a positive statement on its own, e.g. we don't say 'it's far', we say 'it's a long way'. But we can say 'it's too far to walk'.

B Size and dimension



We can describe size using the nouns above or the adjectives formed from them, like this:

What's the **length/width/height/depth/size** of ...? *or* How **long/wide/high/tall/deep/big** is ...?

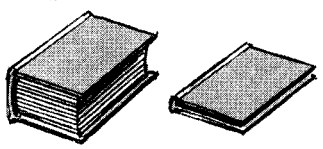
Note:

- We generally use **tall** to describe people, trees and buildings; and **high** to describe mountains. We also say **high-rise buildings.**
- Notice also that in the answer to these questions, an adjective follows the measurement: The garden is about ten metres **wide.** (= **The width** is about ten metres.)

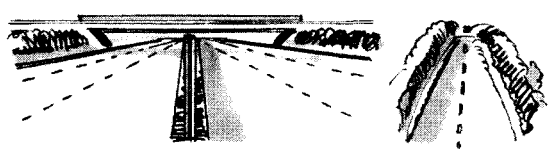
C Size in people and things

We use different words to describe the size of people and things:

a **tall** girl (≠ a **short** girl)
a **fat** person (≠ a **thin** person) See Unit 43 for more details.
a **long** book (= many pages) (≠ a **short** book)
a **deep** lake (= many metres) (≠ a **shallow** lake)



a **thick** book (≠ a **thin** book)



a **wide** road (≠ a **narrow** road)

Note: We can use **big** or **large** to describe size in English, but not **great.** For English speaking people, **great** (*infml*) = fantastic. But we can use **great** before **big** to say that something is very big, e.g. I saw a **great big** dog in the park.

If you want to ask about size in clothes, you say: **What size are you?** *or* **What size (shoes) do you take?** If you don't know, then you need someone to **measure** you.

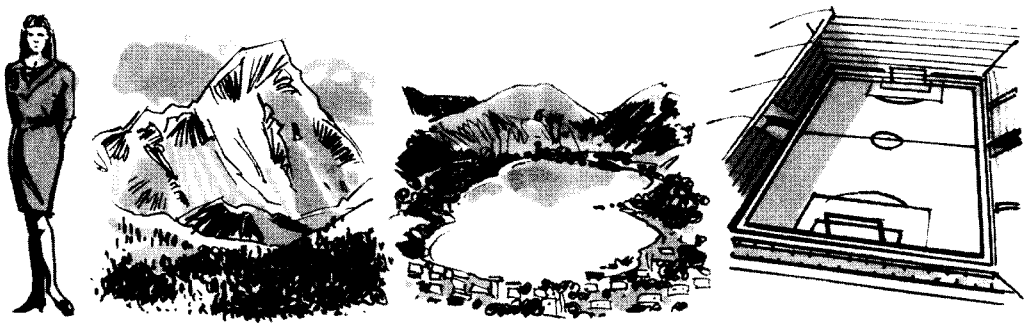
Exercises

92.1 **Think about the room/place you are in now and answer these questions, using some of the expressions from the opposite page.**

1 How far is it to the nearest shop?
2 How far is it to a bank?
3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop?
4 Is it very far to a post office?
5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool?
6 Is it a long way to the next big town?
7 How far is the nearest railway station?
8 Is it far to the centre of town?

If possible, ask someone else the same questions and compare your answers.

92.2 **Write down eight different questions you could ask about the distance, size or dimensions of the things in the pictures.**



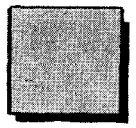
92.3 **Contradict the speaker in the sentences below. Look at the example first.**

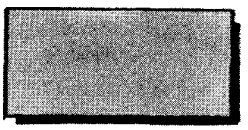
Example: A: Is it a long film?
B: No, it's quite short.

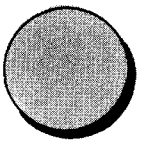
1 A: Is he a bit fat?
B: No, he's .....
2 A: The water's quite deep, isn't it?
B: No, ...
3 A: Their office is in quite a low building, isn't it?
B: No, ...
4 A: Is the road very wide at that point?
B: No, ...
5 A: It's a fairly boring place, isn't it?
B: No, ...
6 A: He's quite tall, isn't he?
B: No, ...
7 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?
B: No, it's .....

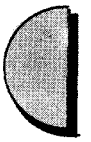
93 Shapes, colours and patterns

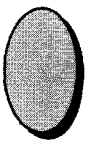
A Shapes

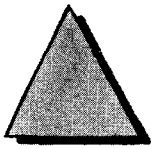

a **square** (n)
square (adj)

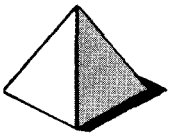

a **rectangle** (also **oblong**) (n)
rectangular (adj)

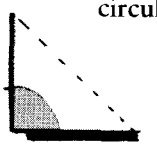

a **circle** (n)
round (adj)
circular (adj)


a **semi-circle**


an **oval** (n)
oval (adj)


a **triangle** (n)
triangular (adj)


a **pyramid**


a **right angle**

a **point** (n)
pointed (adj)

a **star**

a **square** box, a **round** table, a **pointed** end, a **rectangular** field, an **oval** shape

Note: We can also form adjectives to describe shapes in this way:

The ball was **egg-shaped**; a **heart-shaped** wedding cake; a **diamond-shaped** bag.

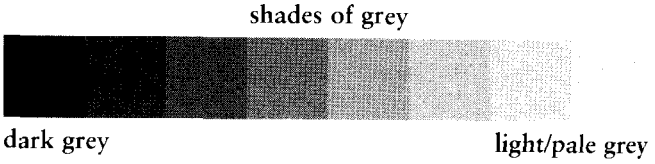
B Colours

You will already know most of the common colours. Here are some that are less common:

Mix black and white to form **grey**. Mix red and blue to form **purple**.
Mix green and blue to form **turquoise**. **Pink** is a colour between red and white.
Beige is a very light brown with some yellow in it.

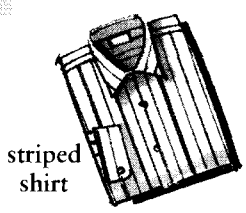
C Shades of colour (= degrees and variation of colour)

She bought a **dark** green skirt.
He was wearing **light** blue jeans.
My new shirt is **pale** yellow.

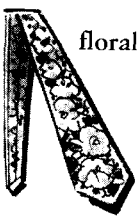


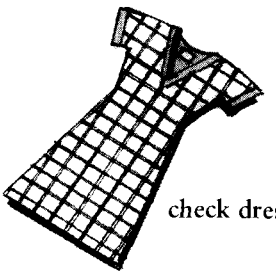
Note: With some colours, we use **pale** rather than **light**, e.g. pale yellow, pale pink.

D Patterns (also called 'designs')


striped shirt

tartan skirt


floral tie

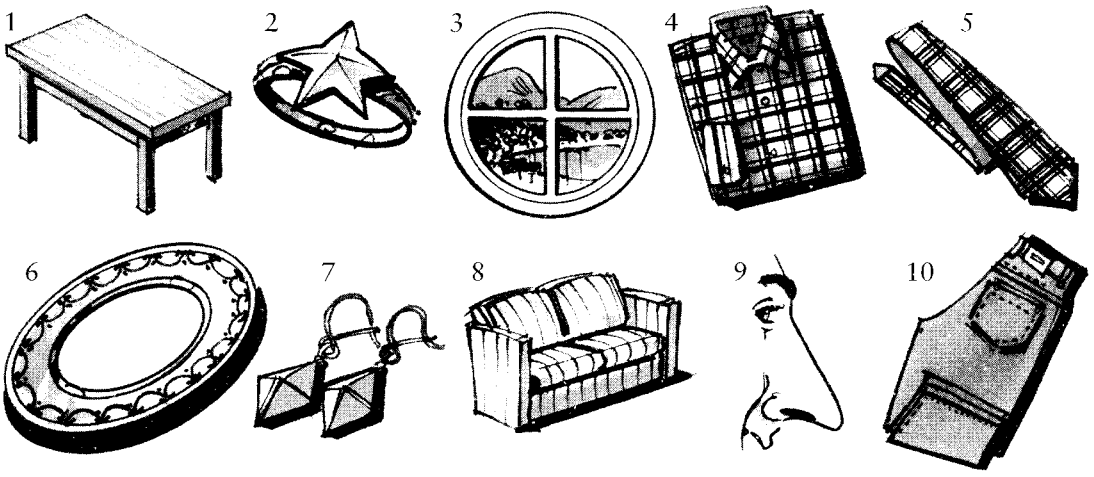

check dress

E Use of the suffix -ish

When we want to say that a shape is almost round or a colour nearly green, we can express this idea by adding the suffix **-ish**: a roundish face; a greenish tie; a yellowish colour.

Exercises

93.1 **Describe these pictures using the correct noun and a suitable adjective.**



93.2 **What object is being described in each of these sentences?**

1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you use to write with.
2 It's greyish on the outside, pink on the inside, it swims and you eat it.
3 The shape is rectangular and it's usually green. There are lots of other lines on it, and people play on it.
4 It's a reddish-orange in colour, quite long and usually pointed at one end, and you eat it.
5 At certain times of the month it's completely round; at other times, it's closer to a semi-circle but not quite.
6 It can look pale blue, more often dark blue, and sometimes a greenish blue. It really depends where it is and whether the sun is shining on it.
7 It's oval-shaped, white or beige or light brown in colour, hard on the outside, and you eat it usually when it is cooked.
8 It is triangular, and in some countries you have to carry one in the boot of your car.
9 The bottom part is triangular, and at the top there is another bit in the shape of a semi-circle. You put things on the triangular part and hang them using the semi-circular part.
10 It has four sides and four right angles.

93.3 **What are you wearing? Write down a detailed description of what you are wearing, including the exact colour of everything. If there is a colour or design you cannot describe, try to find it using a bilingual dictionary.**

70.4
1 false (they are the crowd/spectators)
2 true
3 true
4 true
5 true
6 false (it is played on a court)
7 true
8 false (they wear a swimming costume)

Unit 71

71.1

Infinitive	*Past tense*	*Past participle*
win	won	won
lose	lost	lost
beat	beat	beaten
lead	led	led
catch	caught	caught
draw	drew	drawn

71.2 1 nil–nil two–one four all 2 fifteen love forty thirty deuce

71.3
1 beat
2 penalty
3 score
4 extra time
5 lost
6 won
7 lost
8 won
9 set
10 lost
11 set
12 tie-break
13 match
14 score

71.4
1 true
2 false (it has a referee)
3 false (it is only decided on a tie-break if the score reaches 6–6)
4 true
5 true
6 false (it is still in progress)
7 true
8 false (if you lose you are out of the competition)

71.5
1 rugby
2 football
3 tennis
4 basketball
5 motor racing
6 football
7 swimming
8 athletics

Unit 72

72.1 1 stalls 2 C 3 yes 4 no

72.2
1 musical
2 the cast
3 the audience
4 clap
5 director
6 critics
7 reviews
8 subtitles
9 to book
10 stars

72.3
1 *Dirty Harry* could be described as an action film or a thriller.
2 *Blade Runner* is a science fiction film.
3 *Four Weddings and a Funeral* is a comedy.
4 *Schindler's List* could be described as a war film or a thriller.
5 *Dances with Wolves* is a western.

Unit 73

73.1
1 Tolstoy – novelist
2 Wordsworth – poet
3 Ibsen – dramatist
4 Mishima – novelist
5 Chekhov – dramatist
6 Mozart – composer
7 Verdi – composer
8 Mick Jagger – singer and songwriter
9 Nascimento – singer-songwriter
10 Paul Tortelier – cellist
11 Paul Simon – singer and songwriter
12 Mark Knopfler – singer, songwriter, guitarist

13 Henry Moore – sculptor
14 Borges – novelist and short story writer
15 Picasso – painter
16 Saki – short story writer
17 Bernstein – composer and conductor
18 Giacometti – sculptor

73.2 pianist; guitarist; drummer; violinist; cellist; flautist

73.3 1 a landscape 2 a portrait 3 an abstract

73.4
1 orchestra
2 group/band; solo artist
3 classical; composer
4 exhibition; gallery
5 write; performs/plays
6 opera
7 novel
8 play

Unit 74

74.2
Minister to leave his job / resign
Government reduces spending ...
New attempt/try to reduce ...
Bad weather has a terrible effect on farmers
Germany supports ...
Minister in argument about tax
Police discover important witness
Japan and US enter fresh discussions

Unit 75

75.1
1 Could you turn it up, please?
2 Could you turn/switch over?
3 Could you turn it down?
4 Could you turn/switch it off?

75.2
Documentary: Cutting Edge and World in Action
Game show: Bruce's Price is Right (The Krypton Factor is also a game show)
Quiz show: Telly Addicts
Drama series: Cracker
Current affairs: World in Action
The soap operas are: Coronation Street and EastEnders.
The comedy series is Two Point Four Children.

Unit 76

76.1 *Possible answers*

phone number; phone card; phone box; telephone directory; answerphone; on the phone

76.2
A 1 My name is 2 message 3 out / not here
4 ring you / call you back 5 number
B 6 Is that 7 afraid 8 be back 9 leave (a) message
10 phone me / ring me / ring me back
C 11 Is that 12 it's 13 rang 14 get through 15 engaged 16 on

Unit 77

77.1 *Possible answers*

1 software
2 a word processor
3 floppy disk
4 user-friendly
5 computer-literate
6 keyboard
7 a computer program/programmer/game
8 CD-ROM
9 laser printer
10 laptop
11 spreadsheet
12 e-mail

77.2

1 cut
2 print
3 save the data in this document
4 open a new document
5 open an existing document
6 copy
7 paste

77.3

1 computer
2 printed
3 down
4 save
5 back-up
6 graphics
7 cut
8 graphics
9 save
10 back-up

Unit 78

78.1

1 Maths
2 History
3 Science
4 English
5 Technology
6 Geography
7 Art
8 Music
9 French
10 Economics

78.2

1 3
2 5
3 comprehensive
4 16
5 French and German
6 12
7 They leave
8 Go to university or get a job

78.4

1 to school
2 into hospital
3 to bed
4 to university
5 to church

Unit 79

79.1

1 medicine
2 architecture
3 agriculture
4 psychology
5 business studies
6 history of art
7 politics
8 law

79.2

1 a grant
2 degree
3 undergraduates
4 lecturers
5 graduates
6 postgraduates
7 research
8 lecture

79.3

1 doing
2 get
3 get
4 go to
5 doing
6 doing/conducting
7 make
8 lasts

Unit 80

80.1 3, 9, 7, 8, 2, 6, 4, 1, 5

80.2

1 the police
2 the judge
3 prisoners
4 the jury
5 barristers (lawyers)
6 criminals

80.3

1 broken; committed
2 against
3 fine
4 prove
5 guilty
6 evidence
7 convicted; sentence
8 offence

80.4

1 Yes
2 Visit the people who were broken into and take fingerprints if possible.
3 Probably not
4 burglary
5 No, not at 15.
6 Probably a suspended sentence (= the boys are free but if they commit another crime in the next year or two years, they will receive a much tougher punishment) unless the boys already have a record for burglary. In this case, they could be sent to a centre for young offenders.

Unit 81

81.1

Crimes	*People*	*Places*
murder	thief	prison
robbery	barrister	cell
rape	burglar	court
manslaughter	judge	police station
shoplifting	criminal	
	prisoner	
	jury	

81.2

1 burglary
2 with murder
3 charged with shoplifting
4 with manslaughter
5 charged with theft

81.4

1 carry
2 allowed/able
3 punishment
4 spray
5 defence
6 reduce/cut

Unit 82

82.1

Abstract noun	*Person*	*Adjective*
politics	politician	political
democracy	democrat	democratic
dictatorship	dictator	dictatorial
socialism	socialist	socialist
conservatism	conservative	conservative
liberalism	liberal	liberal

82.2

1 elections
2 Prime
3 votes
4 parliament
5 system
6 party
7 majority
8 form
9 power

Possible reasons to justify this system are:

One single party has power, so there is little compromise which produces a strong government; there is a single set of policies; the government has a majority and so is relatively stable and does not need to call elections often.

Unit 83

83.1

1 identity/landing card
2 birth/marriage/exam certificate
3 driving/TV licence
4 application/enrolment/registration form

83.2

1 get/obtain
2 checked
3 fill in
4 sign
5 runs out / expires; renew
6 queues
7 enrolment/registration

83.4

1 when were you born?
2 Where do you come from?
3 Are you single or married?
4 When did you arrive?
5 When are you leaving?

83.5 *Problems mentioned were:*

1 long queues
2 waiting in one queue, then you discover you should be in another queue
3 delays e.g. in getting a new passport
4 officials putting the wrong information on documents, which then need to be changed, e.g. driving licence
5 officials losing information you have given them

6 being asked to explain the same information over and over again to different officials, especially over the telephone
7 spending a long time getting a document in one country, then you discover that nobody is interested in it when you arrive in another country
8 officials who act like policemen

Unit 84

84.1
1 ally = friendly country
2 release = permit to go free
3 conflict = strong disagreement
4 troops = large group of soldiers
5 invade = enter another country by force and in large numbers
6 wound = injure from fighting
7 territory = land controlled by a country
8 ceasefire = stop fighting

84.2
1 carry on fighting / continue to fight
2 they will retreat
3 run out of food
4 mostly civilians
5 release them

84.3

First mention	*repeated as ...*
ordinary people	civilians
soldiers	troops
shelling	firing
hit	wounded
allow them to enter	let anyone in
captured	take control of
soldiers	army

84.4 *Possible answers*
1 Terrorists use hostages for bargaining, e.g. they release hostages if governments give them money or release political prisoners. Hostages also give the terrorists protection.
2 Some governments refuse on moral grounds, i.e. they believe it is wrong to bargain with hostages. Some governments believe that if you agree to terrorists demands on one occasion, terrorists will attack again.

Unit 85

85.1
1 the ozone layer
2 global warming
3 acid rain
4 exhaust fumes
5 industrial or human waste
6 tropical rainforests
7 a bottle bank
8 natural or human resources

85.2

Noun	*Verb*	*Noun*	*Adjective*
waste	waste	damage	damaging
protection	protect	environment	environmental
destruction	destroy	harm	harmful (≠ harmless)
pollution	pollute	danger	dangerous
damage	damage	safety	safe

85.3
1 plants and animals
2 smoke from factories
3 the earth
4 carbon dioxide
5 destroys the ozone layer

85.4 We should: recycle paper etc.; save/keep/protect tropical rainforests; plant more trees; save water and energy
We shouldn't: throw away paper etc.; destroy the ozone layer; waste water and energy; cut down tropical rainforests

85.5 1 false 2 true 3 true 4 true 5 true

Unit 86

86.1
1 boarding card
2 baggage reclaim
3 excess baggage
4 passport control
5 hand luggage
6 duty free
7 overhead locker
8 take-off
9 departure lounge
10 check-in

86.2
1 check-in
2 boarding card
3 excess baggage
4 departure lounge
5 hand luggage
6 overhead locker
7 runway
8 stewards (or cabin crew)
9 terminal building
10 baggage reclaim

86.3
1 took off
2 captain/pilot
3 fasten
4 flew
5 landed
6 get off
7 flight

Unit 87

87.1 7, 9, 2, 4, 12, 8, 5, 6, 10, 11, 1, 3

87.2 *Possible answers*
1 I'd like to book a double room for two nights for next Thursday and Friday, please? *or* Do you have a double room free for next Friday and Saturday?
2 Could I have my bill, please? *or* Could you order a taxi for me, please?
3 Could I have a call tomorrow morning at 7 a.m., please?
4 Could you put it on my bill, please?
5 I'm afraid there's something wrong with the shower in my room. *or* I'm afraid the shower in my room isn't working very well.
6 How do I get to the nearest bank from here? *or* Could you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please?

Unit 88

88.1
1 great/lovely time
2 sightseeing
3 packed
4 a look
5 souvenirs
6 galleries
7 lost
8 market
9 go out
10 spent
11 taken

88.3 *Possible answers*
1 Yes, it's a great place.
2 Yes, it's very cosmopolitan.
3 Yes, it was absolutely packed.
4 Yes, the night-life is fantastic.
5 Yes, we had a great time.

Unit 89

89.1 *Possible answers*

sunshine; suntan; suntan lotion; sun cream; sunburn; sunglasses; sunbed; sunbathe; sunlight; sunblock; sunset; sunrise; sunshade; sunstroke

89.2

1 sandy beach	3 beach umbrella	5 sunbathe	7 big waves
2 suntan lotion	4 rough sea	6 seaside	8 steep cliff

1 to spend time on the beach
2 because they want a suntan
3 to protect yourself from the sun
4 to protect themselves and also help to get a suntan
5 very painful
6 surfing

89.3

1 get away	3 quiet	5 walk/stroll
2 country/countryside	4 lie/sunbathe	6 picnic

89.4

1 resort	3 lying/sunbathing	5 picnic
2 different/various	4 rent	6 quiet

Unit 90

90.1

1 at	3 at	5 on	7 on	9 on	11 in
2 in	4 in	6 at	8 at	10 at	12 on

90.2

1 by	3 since	5 during	7 in	9 throughout
2 until	4 for	6 for	8 during	10 for

90.3

1 two	3 1963	5 ten
2 17th	4 12 hours 30 minutes	6 1960s

90.4

1 a few days ago	4 for ages
2 for the time being	5 a long time ago
3 recently/lately	

Unit 91

91.1

1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 two and a half
3 two thousand three hundred and forty-five
4 six point seven five
5 nought point two five
6 three and a third
7 one million two hundred and fifty thousand
8 ten point oh four
9 forty-seven per cent
10 the tenth of September *or* September the tenth
11 the third of July *or* July the third
12 six oh two eight four seven seven *or* double seven
13 five degrees below zero *or* minus five degrees centigrade
14 nineteen oh three *or* nineteen hundred and three
15 eighteen seventy six

91.2
1 thousand
2 the tenth of September
3 two hundred and twenty
4 twenty-five out of forty
5 the thirty-first of August
6 seven two three six oh nine

91.3 1 59 2 192 3 60 4 5 5 8 6 15

Unit 92

92.2 *Possible questions*

How tall is she?
What size shoes does she take?
How high is the mountain? / What's the height of the mountain?
How far is it from one side of the lake to the other?
How big is the lake? / What's the size of the lake?
How deep is it? / What's the depth of the lake?
How long is the pitch? / What's the length of the pitch?
How wide is the pitch? / What's the width of the pitch?

92.3
1 No, he's quite thin.
2 No, it's very shallow.
3 No, it's a tall building, actually.
4 No, it's quite narrow.
5 No, it's a great place.
6 No, he's fairly short.
7 No, it's a great big place.

Unit 93

93.1
1 a rectangular table
2 a star-shaped ring
3 a round window
4 a check shirt
5 a tartan tie
6 an oval-shaped plate
7 diamond-shaped earrings
8 a striped sofa
9 a pointed nose
10 light grey jeans

93.2
1 pencil/pen
2 salmon
3 football/rugby/hockey pitch or tennis court
4 carrot
5 moon
6 the sea
7 an egg
8 a 'warning' triangle
9 a coat hanger
10 a square

Unit 94

94.1
1 bottle 3 bowl 5 packet 7 tin
2 jug 4 box 6 bag 8 jar

94.2 *Probable answers*

The most surprising and unlikely are: a vase of coffee; a tube of cigarettes; a carton of toothpaste
It may also be quite unusual to have a 'glass of soup'.

94.3
1 bunch (also 'bouquet')
2 gang
3 slices (also pieces and bits)
4 piece (also bit)
5 bit
6 sheet (also piece and bit)
7 group
8 team
9 piece (also bit)
10 drop (also bit)
11 pair
12 bit

94.4 *Wrong answers*

1 none
2 sheet
3 gang (gang would be appropriate if you have a negative view of journalists)
4 group
5 none
6 piece

Unit 95

95.1

1 ripe	4 water	7 photo	10 washing powder
2 new	5 sore	8 donkey	11 doorbell
3 horrible	6 fresh	9 cod	12 silk

95.2 *Possible answers*

1 looks sad.
2 looks/feels soft.
3 tastes horrible.

95.3

1 listening to; heard
2 heard
3 hear
4 look at
5 watch
6 listening
7 touch
8 press
9 hold
10 watch ('look' is also possible here but less likely); see

Unit 96

96.1 *Possible answers*

Please queue other side
Beware of pickpockets
Mind the step
Mind your head
Sold-out
Please do not disturb; Please do not feed the animals
Out of order
No exit; No smoking; No parking
Keep right; Keep off the grass

96.2 *Possible answers*

1 In a Bed & Breakfast (cheap hotel)
2 On the underground
3 Customs at an airport or port
4 Bank or post office
5 Public telephone
6 Theatre or cinema
7 On the outside of a parcel/package
8 In a park

96.3

1 Please do not feed the animals
2 Do not leave bags unattended
3 Please do not disturb
4 No parking
5 Do not lean out of the window
6 No smoking
7 Keep right; No smoking; No exit
8 Mind your head

Unit 97

97.1 *Possible answers*

1 a type of perfume or after shave
2 the key
3 whisky
4 knife and fork
5 flour
6 programme
7 clothes or belongings
8 a type of toy
9 a suitcase
10 shampoo or conditioner

97.2 *Possible additions*

A: How many people were at the conference?
B: Roughly 400.
A: Did you enjoy it?
B: Yes, sort of.
A: You don't seem very sure.
B: Well, there were some good things, but it was a bit too long.
A: And did you go to John's talk?
B: Naturally.
A: How did it go?
B: Well he was sort of nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.
A: Did he have a big audience?
B: About 75.
A: That's good, isn't it?
B: I think John was a bit disappointed – he wanted at least a hundred.

97.3 *Possible answers*

1 more or less
2 a bit
3 sort of
4 more or less/roughly
5 sort of
6 a bit / sort of

Unit 98

98.1

1 American (because of vacation): fall
2 American (because of high school): semester
3 British (because of biscuits): sweets
4 American (because of garbage): trashcan
5 British (because of trousers): waistcoat
6 American (because of truck): highway
7 Probably American (because of apartment): elevator
8 British (because of fortnight): holiday
9 American (because of subway with this meaning): parking lot
10 British (because of trainers): wardrobe

98.2

British	*American*
holiday	vacation
trousers	pants
flat	apartment
trainers	sneakers
secondary school	high school
biscuits	cookies
rubbish	garbage
main road	highway
fortnight	two weeks / fourteen days
underground (tube)	subway

98.3
1 gas/petrol
2 freeway/motorway
3 gas station / petrol station or garage
4 parking lot / car park
5 cab/taxi
6 sidewalk/pavement
7 truck driver / lorry driver

98.4 1 queue 2 curtains 3 reverse charge call 4 barrister 5 bill

Unit 99

99.1

Formal	*Informal*
purchase	handy
resume	loo
thus	terrific
commence	quid
apprehend	reckon
	guy

purchase/buy; handy/convenient; loo/toilet; resume / start again; thus/therefore; terrific/fantastic; quid/pounds; commence/start; apprehend/catch; reckon/think; guy/man

99.2
1 When are you going to pick up your bike?
2 Most of the kids are very bright.
3 I reckon it'll start pretty soon.
4 Do you fancy going out for a meal?
5 My flat is five minutes from where I work, so it's very handy.
6 What's up?
7 The guy in the market wanted 20 quid for this ring.
8 Where did you buy/get that book?
9 They'll never catch him.
10 I'm just going to the loo.

99.3 We regret to inform you that we are unable to lend you the sum of £500 that you require, but it may be possible to grant you a loan for part of the sum.

If you are still interested, would you like to contact our main office to arrange an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to discuss the matter further.

99.4
1 attend (*fml*) = go to
2 a drag (*infml*) = boring
3 pinched (*infml*) = stolen
4 bloke (*infml*) = man
5 permitted (*fml*) = allowed

Unit 100

100.1
1 British Broadcasting Corporation
2 Member of Parliament
3 European Union
4 Value Added Tax
5 Prime Minister
6 United Nations
7 United Kingdom
8 Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

100.2 Michael
Pete had a maths exam this afternoon and then he had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he'll probably a bit late home. You can watch TV while you're waiting for him and please help yourself to anything from the fridge. If there's a problem (e.g. Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination) my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about 5 p.m.
Margaret (Peter's mum)

100.3 1 e.g. 2 etc. 3 St. 4 i.e. 5 Mr 6 Dr

100.4

1 e.g.	3 lab	5 etc.	7 ad(vert)	9 i.e.	
2 bike	4 board	6 flu	8 fridge	10 case	

100.5 PTO stands for 'please turn over' at the bottom of a page.
RSVP means 'please reply' (from the French 'respondez, si'il vous plait') and is found at the bottom of formal invitations e.g. to a reception or wedding. The French do not use this expresssion or abbreviation however.
c/o stands for 'care of'. You put this on an envelope when the person you write to does not live at the address on the letter but can be reached there.
asap stands for 'as soon as possible' and is commonly used in faxes; the letters are read individually a-s-a-p.

Phonetic symbols

Vowel sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/iː/	sleep me
/i/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/uː/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜː/	turn bird work
/ɔː/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑː/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

Symbol	*Examples*
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/ʧ/	catch church
/ʤ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

Pronunciation problems

when 'a' is /eɪ/	when 'u' is /ʌ/	when 'i' is /aɪ/	when 'o' or 'oo' is /ʌ/
patient	punctual	pilot	gloves
Asia	luggage	virus	oven
dangerous	hungry	dial	month
pavement	discuss	hepatitis	front
bacon	function	minus	monkey
phrase	publish	licence	government
engaged	customs	diet	worry
sunbathe	luck	striped	flood
lately	bankrupt	tiny	blood

When ow is /əʊ/ e.g. row (= line), throw, blow, show, know, elbow
When ou or ow is /aʊ/ e.g. lounge, drought, row (= argument), towel, allowed, blouse, shower
When ou is /uː/ e.g. soup, group, through, wound, souvenir, routine
When ou is /ʌ/ e.g. cousin, couple, trouble, tough, rough, enough
When a, au or aw is /ɔː/ e.g. draw, raw, law, stall, fall, cause, audience, launch, exhausted
When a or au is /ɑː/ e.g. vase, calm, laugh, draughty, half
When a or u is /ɪ/ e.g. busy, business, minute, lettuce, purchase, surface, orange, damage
When o is /uː/ e.g. move, prove, improve, lose
When or or ur is /ɜː/ e.g. purple, burn, burglary, worth, work, curtain
When ea is /e/ e.g. dreadful, jealous, health, dead, bread, instead, pleasant, weather, weapon

Silent letters (the underlined letters are silent):
island, knee, knife, know, knock, knowledge, wrong, wrist, muscle, castle, whistle, fasten, listen, bomb, lamb, thumb, comb, scissors, psychology, honest, hour, cupboard, answer, guess, handsome, aisle, half, calm, christmas, mortgage

Short syllables (the underlined letters often disappear or are only a /ə/):
fattening; miserable; comfortable; fashionable; restaurant; strawberry, eventually, parliament, actually occasionally, prisoner, medicine, favourite, temperature, literature

Problem pairs:
quite /kwaɪt/ and quiet /'kwaɪət/ desert /'dezət/ and dessert /də'zɜːt/
soup /suːp/ and soap /səʊp/

Note: The pronunciation of these letters at the end of words is often like this:
-ous /əs/ e.g. famous, dangerous, unconscious, ambitious, cautious, jealous
-age /ɪʤ/ e.g. luggage, baggage, village, damage, cabbage, bandage, message, manage, garage
-able /əbl/ e.g. comfortable, reliable, suitable, unbreakable, vegetable, fashionable, miserable
-are /eə/ e.g. care, spare, square, beware, stare, fare, aware, rare(ly), barely
-ile /aɪl/ e.g. fragile, mobile, file, while
-tory/tary /təri/ e.g. directory, history, secretary, documentary
-ture /ʧə/ e.g. picture, signature, departure, capture, temperature, literature, feature
-ate /eɪt/ at the end of verbs e.g. educate, operate, communicate
-ate /ət/ at the end of nouns and adjectives e.g. graduate, approximate, certificate

Index

a bit 32, 97
accent 5 /'æksənt/
a long time ago 90
a long way 92
a sort of 97
about 97 /ə'baʊt/
above 31 /ə'bʌv/
absolutely 30 /æbsə'luːtli/
abstract 73 /'æbstrækt/
academic ability 78 /ækə'demɪk/
accident 61 /'æksɪdənt/
according to 25, 74 /ə'kɔːdɪŋ tuː/
accountant 64 /ə'kaʊntənt/
ache (n, v) 54 /eɪk/
acid rain 85 /'æsɪd reɪn/
across 31 /ə'krɒs/
action film 72 /'ækʃən/
actor 8 /'æktə/
ad/advert 100 /æd/ /'ædvɜːt/
addition 91 /ə'dɪʃən/
adjective 4 /'ædʒɪktɪv/
admit 28 /əd'mɪt/
adolescence 47 /ædəl'esəns/
adolescent 47 /ædəl'esənt/
adverb 4 /'ædvɜːb/
advertising 68 /'ædvətaɪzɪŋ/
advice 3, 27 /əd'vaɪs/
advise 3, 29, 63 /əd'vaɪz/
afford 53 /ə'fɔːd/
afraid (of) 14, 45 /ə'freɪd/
after (+ -ing) 33 /'ɑːftə/
afterwards 33 /ɑːftəwədʒ/
against the law 80, 81 /ə'genst/
agree (with) 14 /ə'griː/
agriculture 39, 79 /'ægrɪkʌltʃə/
AIDS 100 /eɪdz/
air force 64 /eə fɔːs/
air steward(ess) 86 /'eə stjuːwəd/
aisle 72 /aɪl/
alarm clock 11 /ə'lɑːm/
alive 84 /ə'laɪv/
allow (sb. to do sth.) 28 /ə'laʊ/
allowed (to) 81
ally/allies 84 /'ælaɪ/ /'ælaɪz/
almost 32 /'ɔːlməʊst/
alone 48 /ə'ləʊn/
along 31 /ə'lɒŋ/
also 34 /'ɔːlsəʊ/
although 34 /ɔːl'ðəʊ/
altitude 86 /'æltɪtjuːd/
always 32 /'ɔːlweɪz/
ambitious 44 /æm'bɪʃəs/
ambulance 55 /'æmbjələns/
American /ə'merɪkən/
and so on 100
anger 45 /'æŋgə/
angry 45 /'æŋgri/
ankle 42 /'æŋkl/
answer (n, v) 10 /'ɑːnsə/
answering machine 76
ant 40 /ænt/
antiques 69 /æn'tiːks/
anyway 33 /'eniweɪ/
apart from 35 /ə'pɑːt/
apartment 89 /ə'pɑːtmənt/
aperitif 59 /əperə'tiːf/
apologise (for) 14, 23, 29 /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/
apology 23 /ə'pɒlədʒi/
appear 7 /ə'pɪə/
apple 58 /'æpəl/
application (form) 83 /æplɪ'keɪʃən/
apply (for) 14, 65 /ə'plaɪ/
apprehend 99 /æprɪ'hend/
approximately 97 /ə'prɒksəmetli/
Arabic 41 /'ærəbɪk/
arable 39 /'ærəbəl/
architect 64 /'ɑːkɪtekt/
architecture 79 /'ɑːkɪtektʃə/
Argentina 41 /ɑːdʒən'tiːnə/
Argentinian 41 /ɑːdʒən'tɪnɪən/
arithmetic 91 /ə'rɪθmətɪk/
armchair 50 /ɑːm'tʃeə/
armed forces 64 /ɑːmd fɔːsɪz/
army 64 /'ɑːmi/
arrest 80 /ə'rest/
arrival 62, 86 /ə'raɪvəl/
art 73 /ɑːt/
art gallery 73 /ɑːt gæləri/
article (definite/indefinite) 4 /'ɑːtɪkəl/
artist 73 /'ɑːtɪst/
as 33, 36
as a result 36
as far as I'm concerned 25
as long as 35
as soon as 33
as well 34
ask 29 /ɑːsk/
assemble 66 /ə'sembəl/
assembly line 66 /ə'sembli laɪn/
asthma 54 /'æsθmə/
astonished/astonishing 30 /əs'tɒnɪʃt/ /əs'tɒnɪʃɪŋ/
at (a time) 90 /ət/
at (the bus stop) 31
at Christmas / Easter / the weekend 90
at least 1, 15
at night 15, 90
at the end 15
at the moment 15
athletics 70 /æθ'letɪks/
attack 84 /ə'tæk/
attend 63, 99 /ə'tend/
attorney (US) 80 /ə'tɜːni/
attractive 9 /ə'træktɪv/
aubergine 58 /'əʊbəʒiːn/
audience 72 /'ɔːdiəns/
aunt 46 /ɑːnt/
Australia 41 /ɒs'treɪlɪə/
Australian 41 /ɒs'treɪlɪən/
automation 66 /ɔːtə'meɪʃən/
avoid 28 /ə'vɔɪd/
aware (of) 14 /ə'weə/
awful 2, 30 /'ɔːfəl/

BA 79 /biː eɪ/
baby-sitter 11 /beɪbisɪtə/
back (v) 74 /bæk/
back-up copy 77
backache 54 /'bækeɪk/
badly- 12, 61

badminton 70 /'bædmɪntən/
bag 94 /bæg/
baggage reclaim 86 /'bægɪdʒ/
bake 59 /beɪk/
balcony 49 /'bælkəni/
banana 58 /bə'nɑːnə/
band 73 /bænd/
bandage 55 /'bændɪdʒ/
barely 32 /'beəli/
barrister 80 /'bærɪstə/
baseball 70 /'beɪsbɔːl/
basket 94 /'bɑːskɪt/
basketball 70 /'bɑːskɪtbɔːl/
bat 70 /bæt/
bathroom 50, 98 /'bɑːθrʊm/
batteries 52 /bætəriːz/
BBC 100 /biː biː siː/
be back 76
be down 67
be in power 82
be unable to 99
be up 67
be/get delayed / held up 23
beach /biːtʃ/ ~ umbrella 89
bear 40 /beə/
beard 43 /bɪəd/
beat 71 /biːt/
beautiful 43 /'bjuːtɪfəl/
because (of) 36 /bɪ'kɒz/
bed & breakfast 87
bedroom 50 /'bedrʊm/
bedside table 51 /'bedsaɪd/
bee 40 /biː/
beef 58 /biːf/
before (+ -ing) 33 /bɪ'fɔː/
behind 31 /bɪ'haɪnd/
beige 93 /beɪʒ/
belongs to 14, 49 /bɪ'lɒŋz tuː/
below 31 /bɪ'ləʊ/
belt 56 /belt/
bend (n, v) 42, 61 /bend/
besides 33 /bɪ'saɪdz/
best friend 46
between 31 /bɪ'twiːn/
beware of 96 /bɪ'weə əv/
bicycle 62 /'baɪsɪkəl/
bid 74 /bɪd/
bike 100 /baɪk/
bill 59, 87 /bɪl/
billion 91 /'bɪlɪən/
birth certificate 83 /bɜːθ sə'tɪfɪkət/
bit 94 /bɪt/
bite your nails 42 /baɪt/
bitter 59 /'bɪtə/
blame (sb. for) 29 /bleɪm/
bland 59 /blænd/
bleed 55 /bliːd/
bless you 26 /bles juː/
block of flats 49 /blɒk/
bloke 99 /bləʊk/
blond(e) 43 /blɒnd/
blood test 55 /blʌd test/
blouse 56 /blaʊz/
blow your nose 42
board (black/white) 6, 100 /bɔːd/
board (v) 86 /bɔːd/
board games 69
board pen 6
boarding card 86 /'bɔːdɪŋ kaːd/
boil 59 /bɔɪl/
boiling 30, 38 /'bɔɪlɪŋ/
bon appetit 26 /bɒn æpəti/
book (v) 59, 72, 87 /bʊk/
bookcase 50 /'bʊkkeɪs/
boots 56 /buːts/
born (be born) 47 /bɔːn/
borrow 6, 53 /'bɒrəʊ/
both 35 /bəʊθ/
bother 48 /'bɒðə/
bottle 94 /'bɒtəl/
bottom 42 /'bɒtəm/
boutique 57 /buː'tiːk/
bowl 94 /bəʊl/
box 94 /bɒks/
box office 11
boxing 70 /'bɒksɪŋ/
boyfriend 47 /'bɔɪfrend/
brackets 1, 4 /'brækɪts/
brake (n, v) 10, 61 /breɪk/
branch (e.g. of a tree) 39 /brɑːntʃ/
brand-new 12 /bræ'njuː/
Brazil 41 /brə'zɪl/
Brazilian 41 /brə'zɪlɪən/
break (n) 78 /breɪk/
break a record 20
break down 17, 61
break even 67
break in(to) 17, 81
break one's arm 55
break the ice 20
break the law 20, 80
break up 47
breathe 42 /briːð/
breathing 54 /'briːðɪŋ/
breeze 38 /briːz/
bricklayer 64 /'brɪkleɪə/
bridge 61 /brɪdʒ/
briefcase 6, 66 /'briːfkeɪs/
bright (clever) 44, 99 /braɪt/
bring 22 /brɪŋ/
Britain 41 /'brɪtən/
British 41 /'brɪtɪʃ/
broad shoulders 43 /brɔːd/
broadsheet 74 /'brɔːdʃiːt/
broker 64 /'brəʊkə/
brother-in-law 11, 46
bruise (n, v) 55 /bruːz/
brush one's teeth 48, 51
BSc 79 /biː əs siː/
build 43 /bɪld/
bullet/knife wound 55
bunch (of flowers) 94 /bʌntʃ/
bureaucracy 83 /bjʊə'rɒkrəsi/
bureaucrat 83 /'bjʊərəʊkræt/
burglar 81 /'bɜːglə/ ~ alarm 81
burglary 81 /'bɜːgləri/
burgle 81 /'bɜːgəl/
burn 52 /bɜːn/
bus station/stop 62
business studies 79
butcher 57 /'bʊtʃə/
butterfly 40 /'bʌtəflaɪ/
button 56 /'bʌtən/
by (e.g. Dickens, Spielberg, etc.) 15
by accident 15
by car/train/bus/plane 15
by chance 15
by hand 15
by mistake 15
by myself 15, 48 /baɪ/
by 90

cab (US) 98 /kæb/
cabbage 58 /'kæbɪdʒ/

cabin crew 86 /'kæbɪn kruː/
cable TV 75 /'keɪbəl/
calculator 66 /'kælkjəleɪtə/
calendar 66 /'kælәndə/
calf 58 /kɑːf/
call (n) 76 /kɔːl/
calm 5, 60 /kɑːm/
camel 40 /'kæməl/
camping 69 /'kæmpɪŋ/
campsite 89 /'kæmpsaɪt/
can (n) 94 /kæn/
can't stand 28
cancel(led) 23 /'kænsəld/
candy (US) 98 /'kændi/
capital punishment 81 /'kæpɪtəl 'pʌnɪʃmənt/
captain 70 /'kæptɪn/
capture 84 /'kæptʃə/
car park 60, 61 /kɑː pɑːk/
careful 9 /'keəfəl/
careless 9 /'keələs/
carpenter 64 /'kɑːpəntə/
carpet 50 /'kɑːpɪt/
carrot 58 /'kærət/
carry 81 /'kæri/
carry on 16
carry out research (in/into) 79
carton 94 /'kɑːtən/
case 100 /keɪs/
cash desk 57 /kæʃ desk/
cassette 6 /kə'set/
cassette recorder 6
cast 72 /kɑːst/
castle 88 /'kɑːsəl/
catch (a ball) 20, 70 /kætʃ/
catch a bus/train 13, 20, 62
catch a cold 20
catch fish 39
cathedral 88 /kə'θiːdrəl/
cauliflower 58 /'kɒlɪflaʊə/
cause 36 /kɔːz/
CD-ROM 77 /siː diː rɒm/
ceasefire 84 /'siːsfaɪə/
cell 80 /sel/
cellist 73 /'tʃelɪst/
cello 73 /'tʃeləʊ/
central heating 49 /'sentrəl/
century 90 /'sentʃəri/
cereal 39 /'sɪərɪəl/
certificate 83 /sə'tɪfɪkət/
chalk 6 /tʃɔːk/
chambermaid 87 /'tʃeɪmbəmeɪd/
championship 71 /'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp/
changing room 57
channel 75 /'tʃænəl/
charge 53 /tʃɑːdʒ/
charge sb. (with a crime) 80
chat 48 /tʃæt/
chat show 75
cheap 53 /tʃiːp/
check (adj) 93 /tʃek/
check (US) 59 /tʃek/
check (v) 66, 83 /tʃek/
check in (v) 87
check-in (desk) 86
cheeks 42 /tʃiːks/
cheerful 44 /'tʃɪəfəl/
cheerio 26 /tʃɪəri'əʊ/
cheers 26 /'tʃɪəz/
chemist 54, 57 /'kemɪst/
cheque book 11 /tʃek bʊk/
cherry 58 /'tʃeri/
chess 69 /tʃes/
chest 42, 54 /tʃest/
chest of drawers 51 /tʃest əv drɔːz/
childhood 47 /'tʃaɪldhʊd/
chilly /'tʃɪli/
chin 42 /tʃɪn/
China 41 /'tʃaɪnə/
Chinese 41 /tʃaɪ'niːz/
chips 98 /tʃɪps/
choice 3 /tʃɔɪs/
choose 3 /tʃuːz/
chronological 1 /krɒnə'lɒdʒɪkəl/
cinema 5, 72 /'sɪnəmə/
circle (theatre) 72 /'sɜːkəl/
circle 93 /'sɜːkəl/
circulation 74 /sɜːkjə'leɪʃən/
civilian 84 /sɪ'vɪlɪən/
clap 45, 72 /klæp/
classical music 73 /'klæsɪkəl/
clean (v, adj) 6, 10 /kliːn/
clean one's teeth 51
cleaner 48 /'kliːnə/
clever 44 /'klevə/
click 77 /klɪk/
clients 63 /klaɪənts/
close friend 46
closet (US) 98 /'klɒzɪt/
cloud 38 /klaʊd/
cloudy 38 /'klaʊdi/
clubs 70 /klʌbz/
coach (person) 70 /kəʊtʃ/
coach (transport) 62 /kəʊtʃ/
coal 39 /kəʊl/
coffee table 50
coin 53, 69 /kɔɪn/
cold (adj, n) 10 /kəʊld/
cold (illness) 54 /kəʊld/
collar 56 /'kɒlə/
colleague 46 /'kɒliːg/
college (US) 98 /'kɒlɪdʒ/
collide 55 /kə'laɪd/
colour 93 /'kʌlə/
comb (your hair) 5, 42 /kəʊm/
come 22 /kʌm/
come in 17
come into power 82
come out (publish) 74
come round (become conscious) 55
come round (visit) 48
comedy 72, 75 /'kɒmədi/
comfortable 9 /'kʌmftəbəl/
comma 4 /'kɒmə/
commence 99 /kə'mens/
commercial centre 60 /kə'mɜːʃəl sentə/
commercials 75 /kə'mɜːʃəlz/
commit a crime 80, 81 /kə'mɪt/
common sense 44 /'kɒmən sens/
communism 82 /'kɒmjʊnɪzəm/
communist 82 /'kɒmjʊnɪst/
compare 35 /kəm'peə/
compared with/to 35
comparison 35 /kəm'pærɪsən/
competition 68, 71 /kɒmpə'tɪʃən/
competitor 68 /kəm'petɪtə/
complain (to sb. about sth.) 14, 29 /kəm'pleɪn/
composer 73 /kəm'pəʊzə/

comprehensible 9
/kɒmprɪ'hentsəbəl/
comprehensive 78
/kɒmprɪ'hensɪv/
computer 66 /kəm'pju:tə/
computer-literate 77
/-'lɪtərət/
conductor 73 /kən'dʌktə/
confirm 29 /kən'fɜ:m/
conflict 84 /'kɒnflɪkt/
confused/confusing 30
/kən'fju:zd/ /kən'fju:zɪŋ/
congratulations 26
/kəngrætʃʊ'leɪʃənz/
consequently 36
/kɒnsəkwəntli/
conservation 85
/kɒnsə'veɪʃən/
conservatism 82
/kən'sɜ:vətɪzəm/
conservative 82
/kən'sɜ:vətɪv/
consumer 68 /kən'sju:mə/
continent 37 /'kɒntɪnənt/
convict sb. (of a crime) 80
/kən'vɪkt/
cooker 50 /'kʊkə/
cookies (US) 98 /kʊki:z/
copper 39 /'kɒpə/
copy 77 /'kɒpi/
correct (v) 6 /kə'rekt/
cosmopolitan 88
/kɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/
cost 53 /kɒst/
cost of living 53
cough 5, 54 /kɒf/
Could I speak to ...? 76
Could I/you (possibly) ...?
24
country 37 /'kʌntri/
country of origin 83
country(side) 89
/kʌntri:saɪd/
courgette 58 /kɔ:'ʒet/
course (training) 19, 65
/kɔ:s/
course (food) 59 /kɔ:s/
court (justice) 80 /kɔ:t/
court (sport) 70 /kɔ:t/
cousin 46 /'kʌzən/
cowboy 72 /'kaʊbɔɪ/
crab 58 /kræb/
crash helmet 70
/kræʃ 'helmət/
crash into 61
creative 9 /kri'eɪtɪv/
creature 40 /'kri:tʃə/
credit card 11
cricket 70 /'krɪkɪt/
crime prevention 81 /kraɪm/
critic 72, 74 /'krɪtɪk/
crop 39 /krɒp/
crowd 70 /kraʊd/
crowded 30, 60 /'kraʊdɪd/
cruise 86 /kru:z/
cry 42 /kraɪ/
cucumber 58 /'kju:kʌmbə/
cupboard 50 /'kʌbəd/
curly 43 /'kɜ:li/
currency 53 /'kʌrənsi/
current 75 /'kʌrənt/
~ affairs 75
curtain (theatre) 72 /'kɜ:tən/
curtains 50 /'kɜ:tənz/
cut 55, 74, 77 /kʌt/
cut down 85

daily 74 /'deɪli/
dairy 39 /'deəri/
damage 85 /'dæmɪʤ/
damaging 85 /'dæmɪʤɪŋ/
dangerous 9 /'deɪnʤərəs/
dark 8, 43, 49, 93 /dɑ:k/
darkness 8 /'dɑ:knəs/
date 91 /deɪt/
date of arrival/departure 83
date of birth 83
deaf 22 /def/
deal with 63 /di:l/
decade 90 /'dekeɪd/
decide 28 /dɪ'saɪd/
decimal 91 /'desɪməl/
deep 92 /di:p/
defeat 71 /dɪ'fi:t/
defend 84 /dɪ'fend/
defendant 80 /dɪ'fendənt/
degree 79 /dɪ'gri:/
degrees (e.g. centigrade) 38
/dɪ'gri:z/
delay(ed) 23 /dɪ'leɪd/
deliver 66 /dɪ'lɪvə/
democracy 82 /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/
democrat 82 /'deməkræt/
dentist 64 /'dentɪst/
deny 28 /dɪ'naɪ/
department store 57
/dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ:/
departure 86 /dɪ'pɑ:tʃə/
~ lounge 86
depend (on) 14 /dɪ'pend/
depressed/depressing 30
/dɪ'prest/ /dɪ'presɪŋ/
depth 92 /depθ/
desert 37 /'dezət/
design 64 /dɪ'zaɪn/
desk 66 /desk/
despite 34 /dɪ'spaɪt/
dessert 59 /dɪ'zɜ:t/
destroy 85 /dɪ'strɔɪ/
dial 76 /daɪəl/
diarrhoea 54 /daɪə'rɪə/
diary 66 /'daɪəri/
dictator 82 /dɪk'teɪtə/
dictatorship 82 /dɪk'teɪtəʃɪp/
diet (v, n) 10 /daɪət/
different (from) 14, 35
/'dɪfərənt/
dimension 92 /daɪ'menʃən/
dining room 11, 50
director 72 /dɪ'rektə/
directory enquiries 76
/dɪ'rektəri ɪŋkwaɪri:z/
dirt 9 /dɜ:t/
dirty (≠ clean) 3, 9 /'dɜ:ti/
disagree 7 /dɪsə'gri:/
disappear 7 /dɪsə'pɪə/
disappointed/disappointing
30 /dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/
/dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/
disaster 37 /dɪ'zɑ:stə/
discuss 8, 29 /dɪ'skʌs/
discussion 8 /dɪ'skʌʃən/
disease 54 /dɪ'zi:z/
dishonest 7, 44 /dɪ'sɒnɪst/
dishwasher 50 /'dɪʃwɒʃə/
disk 77 /dɪsk/
dislike 7 /dɪ'slaɪk/
dismiss 65 /dɪ'smɪs/
distance 92 /'dɪstəns/
distribution 68
/dɪstrɪ'bju:ʃən/
divide (arithmetic) 91
/dɪ'vaɪd/

division 91 /dɪ'vɪʒən/
Do you think you could ...? 24
do/don't 96
do (a bit of / lots of) hiking, etc. 69
do (the) housework 19
do a course 19, 65
do a subject 19, 78
do homework 3, 19
do overtime 63
do research (in/into) 19, 79
do something/nothing 19
do the ironing 48
do the shopping 19, 48, 57
do the washing 48
do the washing-up 48
do well 67
do-it-yourself (DIY) 69
document 77, 83 /'dɒkjəmənt/
documentary 75 /dɒkjə'mentəri/
don't worry 23
doorbell 49 /'dɔ:bel/
double room 87 /'dʌbəl ru:m/
down (the computer's down) 77 /daʊn/
down 31 /daʊn/
down in the dumps 18
downmarket 68 /daʊn'mɑ:kɪt/
Dr 100 /'dɒktə/
drag 99 /dræg/
drama series 75 /'drɑ:mə/
dramatic 67 /drə'mætɪk/
dramatist 73 /'dræmətɪst/
drapes (US) 50 /dreɪps/
draughty 49 /'drɑ:fti/
draw (n, v) 71 /drɔ:/
drawers 66 /drɔ:z/
drawing 73 /'drɔ:ɪŋ/
dreadful 30 /'dredfəl/
dream (n, v) 10 /dri:m/
drinkable 9 /'drɪŋkəbəl/
driving licence 83 /'draɪvɪŋ laɪsəns/
drop (n) 94 /drɒp/
drop (v) 52
drought 37, 39 /draʊt/
drummer 73 /'drʌmə/
drums 73 /drʌmz/
dry weather 13
dubbed 72 /dʌbd/
due to 36, 62 /dju: tu:/
dumping 85 /'dʌmpɪŋ/
during 90 /'djʊərɪŋ/
Dutch 41 /dʌtʃ/
duty-free 86 /dju:ti fri:/
duvet 51 /'dju:veɪ/

e-mail 77 /'i: meɪl/
e.g. 100 /i: ʤi:/
eagle 40 /'i:gəl/
earache 54 /'ɪəreɪk/
early morning call 87
early twenties/thirties etc. 47
earn 63 /ɜ:n/
earrings 11, 56 /'ɪərɪŋz/
earth 37 /ɜ:θ/
earthquake 37 /'ɜ:θkweɪk/
easy-going 12 /'i:zi: gəʊɪŋ/
economic policy 82 /i:kə'nɒmɪk/
economic stability 67
economical 9 /i:kə'nɒmɪkəl/
economics 78 /i:kə'nɒmɪks/
economist 8 /i:'kɒnəmɪst/
editor 74 /'edɪtə/
education 5, 78, 79 /eʤʊ'keɪʃən/
effective 1 /ɪ'fektɪv/
Egypt 41 /'i:ʤɪpt/
Egyptian 41 /ɪ'ʤɪpʃən/
elbow 42 /'elbəʊ/
elderly 47 /'eldəli/
elect 8, 82 /ɪ'lekt/
election 8, 82 /ɪ'lekʃən/
electrical appliances 57 /ɪ'lektrɪkəl ə'plaɪənsɪz/
electrician 64 /elɪk'trɪʃən/
elephant 40 /'elɪfənt/
elevator (US) 98 /'elɪveɪtə/
embarrassed/embarrassing 30, 45 /ɪm'bærəst/ /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/
embarrassment 45 /ɪm'bærəsmənt/
emergency services 64 /ɪ'mɜ:ʤəntsi/
emotional 44 /ɪ'məʊʃənəl/
employer 65 /ɪm'plɔɪə/
employment 65 /ɪm'plɔɪmənt/
engaged 76 /ɪŋ'geɪʤd/
engineer 64 /enʤɪ'nɪə/
engineering 79 /enʤɪ'nɪərɪŋ/
enjoy 28 /ɪn'ʤɔɪ/
enjoyable 9 /ɪn'ʤɔɪəbəl/
enormous 30, 49 /ɪ'nɔ:məs/
enough 5, 56 /ɪ'nʌf/
enrol 83 /ɪn'rəʊl/
enrolment form 83
environment 85 /ɪn'vaɪərənmənt/
equator 37 /ɪ'kweɪtə/
equipment 27, 70 /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/
etc. 100 /ɪt'setərə/
EU 100 /i: ju:/
even 91 /'i:vən/
even though 34
eventually 33 /ɪ'ventʃuəli/
evidence 80 /'evɪdəns/
ex- 46 /eks/
exam 100 /ɪg'zæm/
examine 66 /ɪg'zæmɪn/
except (for) 35 /ɪk'sept/
excess baggage 86 /ekses 'bægɪʤ/
excited/exciting 30, 68 /ɪk'saɪtəd/ /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/
excuse 23 /ɪk'skju:s/
excuse me 26 /ɪk'skju:z mi/
exhaust fumes 85 /ɪg'zɔ:st fju:mz/
exhausted/exhausting 30 /ɪg'zɔ:stəd/ /ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ/
exhibition 73 /eksɪ'bɪʃən/
expand 67 /ɪk'spænd/
expecting (a baby) 47 /ɪkspekɪŋ/
expect (think) 28 /ɪk'spekt/
expenditure 67 /ɪk'spendɪʧə/
expensive 53 /ɪk'spensɪv/
expire 83 /ɪk'spaɪə/
explain 29 /ɪk'spleɪn/
extent 25 /ɪk'stent/
extra time 71 /'ekstrə taɪm/
extract 39 /'ekstrækt/
extreme 82 /ɪk'stri:m/

extremely 32 /ɪkˈstriːmli/
eyebrows 42 /ˈaibraʊz/

factory 60, 85 /ˈfæktəri/
fair 43 /feə/
fairly 32 /ˈfeəli/
fall (n, v) 67 /fɔːl/
fall asleep 48 /fɔːl/
fall in love 47 /fɔːl/
fall over 16 /fɔːl/
fall slowly/sharply 2 /fɔːl/
fall (n) (US) 98 /fɔːl/
falls 37 /fɔːlz/
family name 46
famous 9 /ˈfeɪməs/
fancy 99 /ˈfænsi/
far 92 /fɑː/
fare 62 /feə/
farewell 26 /feəˈwel/
farmer 8 /ˈfɑːmə/
farming 39 /ˈfɑːmɪŋ/
fascinated/fascinating 30 /ˈfæsɪneɪtəd/ /fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/
fascism 82 /ˈfæʃɪzəm/
fascist 82 /ˈfæʃɪst/
fashion 68 /ˈfæʃən/
fashionable 68 /ˈfæʃənəbəl/
fasten 5 /ˈfɑːsən/
fasten your seat belt 61, 86
fat 43, 92 /fæt/
father-in-law 11, 46
fattening 5, 59 /ˈfætənɪŋ/
fatty 59 /ˈfæti/
faucet (US) 98 /ˈfɔːsɪt/
favourite 75 /ˈfeɪvərɪt/
fear 45 /fɪə/
features 74 /ˈfiːʧəz/
feel (n, v) 95 /fiːl/
feel like ... 18, 28
feel sick 54
feels + adj; feels like + noun 95
fence 49 /fens/
field 60 /ˈfiːld/
fifteen-minute (drive) 12
fifty-pence piece 53
fight crime 81 /faɪt/
file (for papers) (n, v) 6 /faɪl/
files 66 /faɪəlz/
filing cabinet 66 /ˈfaɪlɪŋ ˈkæbɪnət/
fill in (a form) 83
film star 11 /fɪlm stɑː/
final score 71 /ˈfaɪnəl skɔː/
finally 33 /ˈfaɪnəli/
finance (v) 67 /ˈfaɪnæns/
find out 16
fine (n) 80 /faɪn/
finger 2, 42 /ˈfɪŋgə/
finish 28 /ˈfɪnɪʃ/
fire (v) 84 /faɪə/
fire brigade 64 /faɪə brɪgeɪd/
firefighter 64 /ˈfaɪəfaɪtə/
first aid 11
first class 12
first name 46
first of all 33
first(ly) 33 /fɜːstli/
fishermen 39 /fɪʃəmən/
fishing 39 /ˈfɪʃɪŋ/
fishing boat 39
fit 56, 64, 66 /fɪt/
fitting room 57 /ˈfɪtɪŋ rʊm/
five-pound (note) 12
fix up 99 /fɪks/
flats 49 /flæts/
flexi-time 63 /ˈfleksitaɪm/
flexible 44 /ˈfleksɪbəl/
flight 62, 86 /flaɪt/
flood 37 /flʌd/
floor 49 /flɔː/
floppy disk 77 /ˈflɒpi dɪsk/
floral 93 /ˈflɔːrəl/
flu (influenza) 54, 100 /fluː/
fly 40, 62 /flaɪ/
fog 38 /fɒg/
foggy 38 /ˈfɒgi/
fold your arms 42
food mixer 50
foot 42 /fʊt/
football 70 /ˈfʊtbɔːl/
footpath 60 /ˈfʊtpɑːθ/
for 90 /fɔː/
for a start 18
for a walk/swim/drive/run 15
for ages 90
for another thing 33
for example 100
for good 18
for one thing 33
for the time being 90
force (sb. to do sth.) 28 /fɔːs/
forehead 42 /ˈfɒrɪd/
foreign news 74 /ˈfɒrɪn/
foreign policy 82
forest 37 /ˈfɒrɪst/
forget 28 /fəˈget/
form (a government) 82 /fɔːm/
fortnight 90 /ˈfɔːtnaɪt/
fortunately 48 /ˈfɔːʧənətli/
fountain 88 /ˈfaʊntɪn/
fraction 91 /ˈfrækʃən/
fragile 96 /ˈfrædʒaɪl/
France 41 /frɑːns/
freelance 74 /ˈfriːlɑːns/
freeway (US) 98 /ˈfriːweɪ/
freezing 30, 38 /ˈfriːzɪŋ/
French 41, 78 /frenʧ/
french fries (US) 98
frequently 32 /ˈfriːkwəntli/
fresh 59 /freʃ/
fridge (refrigerator) 50, 100 /frɪdʒ/
friendly 44 /ˈfrendli/
frightened/frightening 30 /fraɪtənd/ /fraɪtənɪŋ/
front door 49
front garden 49
fruit 58 /fruːt/
fry 59 /fraɪ/
frying pan 50
full (of) 14 /fʊl/
full board 87
full name 46
full stop 4
full up 62
full-time 12
fully aware 13
fully-booked 87
furniture 27 /ˈfɜːnɪʧə/
further 99 /ˈfɜːðə/
furthermore 34 /fɜːðəˈmɔː/

gain (weight) 3 /geɪn/
gale 38 /geɪl/
game 71 /geɪm/
gang 94 /gæŋ/
garage 49 /ˈgærɪdʒ/

garbage (US) 98 /'gɑ:bɪʤ/
gas(oline) (US) 98 /'gæsəli:n/
gate 49, 60 /geɪt/
generous 44 /'ʤenərəs/
geography 78 /ʤi'ɒgrəfi/
German 41 /'ʤɜ:mən/
Germany 41 /'ʤɜ:məni/
get (arrive/become/fetch/obtain/buy/receive) 21
get a move on 18
get away 89
get better/worse/hot, etc. 21
get by 17
get changed 21
get divorced 21
get dressed 7, 21, 56
get home 48
get in 62
get in touch with 99
get in(to) a car 13, 61
get into bed 51
get lost 21, 88
get married (to) 14, 21, 47
get off/on (a bus) 13, 62
get on (make progress) 21
get on (with sb.) 16, 21
get out (of a car) 62
get over (an illness) 16
get ready 21
get rid of 21
get through (make contact) 76
get through (finish) 16
get through (pass an exam) 16
get to know 21
get to sleep 48
get to work 48
get undressed 7, 21
get up 21, 48
giraffe 40 /ʤɪ'rɑ:f/
girlfriend 47 /'gɜ:lfrend/
give (a lecture) 79 /gɪv/
give one's regards to sb. 20
give sb. a hand 20
give sb. a push 10
give sb. a ring 10, 20, 76
give sb. the sack 65
give up sth. 16, 28, 69
glamour 68 /'glæmə/
glamorous 68 /'glæmərəs/
glance (at) (n, v) 45 /glɑ:ns/
global warming 85 /'gləʊbəl wɔ:mɪŋ/
gloves 2 /glʊvz/
go (travel) 22
go (leads to / takes you) 22
go (out) for a walk/meal/drink etc. 22
go ahead 18
go along here 61
go bald/deaf/grey/mad 22
go bankrupt 22
go into hospital 78
go off (explode / go bad / ring) 16
go on a (training) course 65
go on a diet 10
go on a tour of ... 88
go on holiday 89
go out 88
go out with sb. 47
go shopping/sightseeing etc. 22, 57
go to bed 48
go to church/school/college 78
go to sleep 51
go to university 47, 78, 79
go up (increase) 16
go upmarket/downmarket 68
goat 40 /gəʊt/
gold 39 /gəʊld/
golf /gɒlf/ ~ course 70
good (at) 14
good fun 72
good-looking 12, 43
good luck 26
good morning/afternoon/evening/night 26
good value 68
goods 66 /gʊdz/
gorilla 40 /gə'rɪlə/
government 82 /'gʌvənmənt/
gradual(ly) 67 /grædʒʊəl/
graduate 79 /'grædʒʊət/
grammar school 78
grandfather 46 /'grændfɑ:ðə/
grandmother 46 /'grændmʌðə/
grant 79 /grɑ:nt/
grapes 58 /greɪps/
graphics 77 /'græfɪks/
grass 39 /grɑ:s/
great 13, 30, 92 /greɪt/
Greece 41 /gri:s/
Greek 41 /gri:k/
green beans 58
greengrocer 57 /'gri:ngrəʊsə/
greens 85 /gri:nz/
greetings 26 /gri:tɪŋz/
grey 93 /greɪ/
grill 59 /grɪl/
gripping 72 /'grɪpɪŋ/
ground 39 /graʊnd/
ground floor 49
group (collection) 94 /gru:p/
group (pop group) 73
grow 39, 67 /grəʊ/
grow up 17, 47 /grəʊ/
guess (n, v) 10 /ges/
guest house 87 /gest/
guidebook 88 /'gaɪdbʊk/
guilty 80 /'gɪlti/
guitar 69, 73 /gɪ'tɑ:/
guitarist 73 /gɪ'tɑ:rɪst/
guns 84 /gʌnz/
guy 99 /gaɪ/
guys (US) 98 /gaɪz/

hair 27 /heə/
hairy (chest) 43 /'heəri/
half 91 /hɑ:f/
half board 87
hand 42 /hænd/
hand luggage 86
handsome 43 /'hændsəm/
handy 99 /'hændi/
hang on 18
hang sth. up 56
hangover 54 /'hæŋəʊvə/
happiness 8, 45 /'hæpɪnəs/
Happy Birthday / Christmas / New Year 26
hard disk 77
hard luck 26
hard work 13
hardly 32 /'hɑ:dli/
hardly ever 32
hardware 77 /'hɑ:dweə/

hardworking 44 /hɑːd'wɜːkɪŋ/
harmful 85 /'hɑːmfəl/
harvest 39 /'hɑːvɪst/
hate 28 /heɪt/
have a baby 19
have a break 48
have a dream 10
have a drink 19
have a go 22
have a good/great time 19, 88
have a lie-in 48
have a look 10, 50
have a nice weekend 26
have a party 19
have a rest 10, 19, 48
have a shower/bath/wash/shave 19, 48
have a word (with) 99
have a(n) early/late night 48
have breakfast 48
have friends for dinner 48
have something to eat 19
have something/nothing in common 35
hay fever 54 /heɪ fiːvə/
head (v) 70 /hed/
headache 54 /'hedeɪk/
headline 74 /'hedlaɪn/
headphones 27 /'hedfəʊnz/
health 54 /helθ/
healthy (economy) 67 /'helθi/
hear 95 /hɪə/
hearing 95 /'hɪərɪŋ/
heart 54 /hɑːt/
heart attack 54
heat (v) 49 /hiːt/
heat (n) 38 /hiːt/
heavy rain 13, 38
heavy smoker 13
heavy traffic 13
Hebrew 41 /'hiːbruː/
hedge 60 /hedʒ/
heel 42 /hiːl/
height 43, 92 /haɪt/
held up 23 /held/
help yourself 24
helpful 9 /'helpfəl/
hepatitis 54 /hepə'taɪtɪs/
high 92 /haɪ/
high school (US) 98
highlighter pen 6 /'haɪlaɪtə/
highlights 75 /'haɪlaɪts/
highly (unlikely) 13 /'haɪli/
highway (US) 98 /'haɪweɪ/
hijacking 84 /haɪdzækɪŋ/
hiking 69, 89 /'haɪkɪŋ/
hips 42 /hɪps/
hire 86 /haɪə/
historical monuments 88
history 78 /'hɪstəri/
history of art 79
hit 70 /hɪt/
hit (affect badly) 74 /hɪt/
hobby 69 /'hɒbi/
hockey 70 /'hɒki/
hold (an election) 82 /həʊld/
hold 95 /həʊld/
hole punch (n, v) 6 /həʊl/
holiday pay 63 /'hɒlədeɪ/
Holland 41 /'hɒlənd/
home news 74
homeless 9 /'həʊmləs/
homesick 3 /'həʊmsɪk/
homework 27 /'həʊmwɜːk/
honest 44 /'ɒnɪst/
hoover 51 /'huːvə/
hope 28 /həʊp/
horror film 72 /'hɒrə/
hospitality 23 /hɒspɪ'tæləti/
hostage 84 /'hɒstɪdʒ/
household (goods) 57 /'haʊshəʊld/
housework 3, 27, 51 /'haʊswɜːk/
How about ...? 24
How are you getting on? 21
How are you? 26
How do I get to ...? 87
How do you do? 26
How do you feel about ...? 25
How do you pronounce ...? 6
How do you spell ...? 6
How do you use ...? 6
How long/tall/wide is ...? 92
How much does he/she weigh? 43
How tall is he/she? 43
How's it going? 22
however 34 /haʊ'evə/
huge 30, 49 /hjuːdʒ/
human resources 85 /'hjuːmən rɪzɔːsɪz/
humid 38 /'hjuːmɪd/
humidity 38 /hjuː'mɪdəti/
hundred 91 /'hʌndrəd/
hunting 69 /'hʌntɪŋ/
hurricane 37, 38 /'hʌrɪkən/
hurry up 16 /'hʌri/
hurt (oneself) 54 /hɜːt/
hyphen 4 /'haɪfən/

I agree with you 25
I beg your pardon 23, 26
I don't mind 24
I don't think ... 25
I regret to inform you 99
I think you're right 25
I was wondering if ...? 24
I won't be long 23
I'd love to 24
I'd prefer to / I'd rather ... 24
I'll clear it up 23
I'll leave it 57
I'll sort it out 23
I'll take it/them 57
I'm (terribly/very/so) sorry 23
I'm afraid I can't 24
I'm afraid not 24
I'm being served 57
I'm just looking 57
I'm looking for a ... 57
I'm sorry I'm late 23
i.e. 100 /aɪ iː/
ic(e)y 38 /aɪsi/
ice 38 /aɪs/
ice hockey 70 /aɪs/
icons 77 /'aɪkɒnz/
identity card 83 /aɪ'dentəti kɑːd/
idiom 4 /'ɪdiəm/
if you like 24 /ɪf/
illegal 7, 80, 81 /ɪ'liːgəl/
illegible 7 /ɪ'ledʒəbəl/
illness 54 /'ɪlnəs/
image 68 /'ɪmɪdʒ/

imagine 28 /ɪ'mædʒɪn/
impatient 7 /ɪm'peɪʃənt/
impolite 3, 7 /ɪmpəl'aɪt/
impossible 7 /ɪm'pɒsəbəl/
improve 8 /ɪm'pru:v/
improvement 8 /ɪm'pru:vmənt/
in (a period) 90
in (Africa) 31
in a good mood 52
in a mess 7
in a moment 15
in a newspaper/magazine 15
in addition 34
in advance 59, 72, 87
in business 15
in case 35
in charge of 63, 65
in front of 31
in good/bad condition 49
in my opinion 25
in other words 100
in power 82
in recession 67
in short supply 39
in spite of 34
in the countryside 60
in the dark suit / red dress 15
in the end 15, 33
in the long term 18
in the morning/afternoon/evening 15
in the short term 18
in the wild 40
in time 15
in your twenties/thirties etc. 47
income 63 /'ɪŋkʌm/
income tax 11, 63
incomprehensible 9 /ɪnkɒmprɪ'hensəbəl/
incorrect 7 /ɪnkər'ekt/
increase (n, v) 10 /'ɪnkri:s/ /ɪn'kri:s/
incredibly 32, 53 /ɪn'kredɪbli/
industrial 9 /ɪn'dʌstriəl/
infinitive 4 /ɪn'fɪnətɪv/
inflation 67 /ɪn'fleɪʃən/
inflexible 9, 44 /ɪn'fleksəbəl/
inform 8 /ɪn'fɔ:m/
information 8, 27 /ɪnfə'meɪʃən/
information technology 78
inherit 46 /ɪn'herɪt/
initiative 44 /ɪ'nɪʃətɪv/
injection 54 /ɪn'dʒekʃən/
injure 54 /'ɪndʒə/
injury 55 /'ɪndʒəri/
innocent 80 /'ɪnəsənt/
insect 40 /'ɪnsekt/
insensitive 44 /ɪn'sentsətɪv/
insist (on) 29 /ɪn'sɪst/
inspect 66 /ɪn'spekt/
instead 48 /ɪn'sted/
interest 67 /'ɪntrəst/
interest rate 67
interested (in) 5, 14, 30 /'ɪntrəstɪd/
interesting 30 /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/
internet 77 /'ɪntənet/
into 31 /'ɪntu/
invade 84 /ɪn'veɪd/
investigate 80 /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/
investment 67 /ɪn'vestmənt/
invisible 7 /ɪn'vɪzəbəl/
invoice 66 /'ɪnvɔɪs/
involve 63, 65 /ɪn'vɒlv/
iron 39, 51 /aɪən/
ironing 48 /'aɪənɪŋ/
irregular (verbs) 7 /ɪ'regjələ/
Is that ...? (phone) 76
island 37 /'aɪlənd/
Israel 41 /'ɪzreɪl/
Israeli 41 /ɪz'reɪli/
it doesn't matter 23
Italian 41 /ɪ'tæliən/
Italy 41 /'ɪtəli/
item 94 /'aɪtəm/

jacket 56 /'dʒækɪt/
Japan 5, 41 /dʒə'pæn/
Japanese 5, 41 /dʒæpə'ni:z/
jar 94 /dʒɑ:/
jealous 45 /'dʒeləs/
jealousy 45 /'dʒeləsi/
jeans 27, 56 /dʒi:nz/
jobless 9 /'dʒɒbləs/
jog 8 /dʒɒg/
jogging 8, 69 /dʒɒgɪŋ/
join (a club) 69 /dʒɔɪn/
join (the army/the police) 64
journalist 74 /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/
joystick 77 /'dʒɔɪstɪk/
judge 80 /dʒʌdʒ/
jug 94 /dʒʌg/
jumper 56 /'dʒʌmpə/
junction 61 /'dʒʌŋkʃən/
jungle 37 /'dʒʌŋgəl/
jury 80 /'dʒʊəri/
just as 33
just round the corner 92

keen (on) 14 /ki:n/
keep (going/getting/losing) 20, 61 /ki:p/
keep + noun/pronoun + adjective 20
keep a record 20
keep an eye on sth./sb. 18
keep in touch 20
keep off the grass 96
keep right/left 96
kettle 50 /'ketəl/
key (adj) 74 /ki:/
keyboard 66, 77 /'ki:bɔ:d/
kick 70 /kɪk/
kids 99 /kɪdz/
kind 44 /kaɪnd/
kitchen 50 /'kɪtʃɪn/
knee 5, 42 /ni:/
knitting 69 /'nɪtɪŋ/
knock (on a door) 45 /nɒk/
knock oneself unconscious 55
knock-out 71 /'nɒkəʊt/
knowledge 27 /'nɒlɪdʒ/
knowledgeable 9 /'nɒlɪdʒəbəl/
Korea 41 /kə'rɪə/
Korean 41 /kə'rɪən/

lab 100 /læb/
labour 67 /'leɪbə/
lake 37 /leɪk/
lamb 40, 58 /læm/
lamp 50, 51 /læmp/
land (v) 86 (n) 39 /lænd/
landing card 83, 86
landlord 49 /'lændlɔ:d/
landscape (painting) 73 /'lændskeɪp/

lane 61 /leɪn/
language lab 100 /'læŋgwɪʤ læb/
laptop 77 /'læptɒp/
laser printer 77 /'leɪzə/
last (v) 79 /lɑːst/
last 90 /lɑːst/
late arrival 62
late at night 81 /leɪt/
late twenties/thirties etc. 47
lately 90 /'leɪtli/
latest 71 /'leɪtɪst/
laugh (n, v) 10, 42 /lɑːf/
launch 68 /lɔːnʧ/
law 79 /lɔː/
law and order 3, 80
lawyer 64 /'lɔɪə/
lazy 44 /'leɪzi/
lead 71 /liːd/
lead (electrical) 6 /liːd/
lead to 36
league 71 /liːg/
lean 59 /liːn/
leave a job (resign) 65 /liːv/
leave a message 76
leave home/work (depart) 48
leave lights on 81
leave out (omit) 17
leave sb. (permanent separation) 47
leave sth. behind (forget sth.) 52
leaves (on a tree) 39 /liːvz/
lecture 79 /'lekʧə/
lecturer 64, 79 /'lekʧərə/
left-wing 82 /leftwɪŋ/
lemon 58 /'lemən/
lend 53 /lend/
length 92 /leŋkθ/
leopard 40 /'lepəd/
lesson 78 /'lesən/
let (sb. do sth.) 28 /let/
lettuce 58 /'letɪs/
liberal 82 /'lɪbərəl/
liberalism 82 /'lɪbərəlɪzəm/
library 60 /'laɪbrəri/
licence 75 /'laɪsəns/
lie (on the beach) 89 /laɪ/
lie down 16, 17
lie in bed 48
lift 49, 87, 98 /lɪft/
light (colour) 93 /laɪt/
lightning 38 /'laɪtnɪŋ/
like 28, 95 /laɪk/
line (phone) 76 /laɪn/
line (US) 62 /laɪn/
line judge 70
lion 40 /laɪən/
lips 42 /lɪps/
listen (to) 14, 95 /'lɪsən/
literature 73 /'lɪtrəʧə/
live (adj) 75 /laɪv/
lively 88 /'laɪvli/
liver 54 /'lɪvə/
living room 50 /'lɪvɪŋ/
loan 67 /ləʊn/
lobster 58 /'lɒbstə/
local call 76 /'ləʊkəl/
lock 7 /lɒk/
long 92 /lɒŋ/
long distance call 76
loo 99 /luː/
look (at) 95 /lʊk/
look after sth./sb. 16, 64
look round (e.g. the shops) 88
look up (a word) 6, 16
looks + adj; looks like + noun 95
lorry 61, 62 /'lɒri/
lose (a game) 3, 71 /luːz/
lose sth. (e.g. money) 52
lose weight 3
loss 67 /lɒs/
lounge 50 /laʊnʤ/
love (tennis) 71, 91 /lʌv/
love 28 /lʌv/
luggage 27, 86 /'lʌgɪʤ/
lung 54 /lʌŋ/
lung cancer 54
luxury 68 /'lʌkʃəri/
luxurious 68 /lʌg'ʒʊərɪəs/

MA 79 /em eɪ/
machine 5 /mə'ʃiːn/
mad about sb./sth. 69
main course 59
main road 61
maintain 1 /meɪn'teɪn/
majority 82, 91 /mə'ʤɒrəti/
make a decision 2, 19 /meɪk/
make a loss 67
make a meal of 19
make a mess 2
make a mistake 2, 13, 19
make a profit 67
make coffee 50
make do (with) 18
make friends 19
make it 18
make money 19
make my own breakfast/dinner 48
make my own clothes 69
make notes 79
make (sb. do sth.) 28
make up (a story) 17
make up your mind 18
manage (be able to) 28 /'mænɪʤ/
manage (a shop) 8 /'mænɪʤ/
management 8 /'mænɪʤmənt/
manager (sport) 70 /'mænɪʤə/
Mandarin (also Cantonese) 41 /'mændərɪn/
manslaughter 81 /'mænslɔːtə/
manual 64 /'mænjuəl/
manufacture 66 /mænjə'fækʧə/
Many Happy Returns 26
map 88 /mæp/
march (walk) (n, v) 45 /mɑːʧ/
marital status 83 /'mærɪtəl steɪtəs/
market 88 /'mɑːkɪt/
marketing /'mɑːkɪtɪŋ/ ~mix 68
market leader/research/share 68 /'mɑːkɪt/
marriage 47 /'mærɪʤ/
marvellous 30 /'mɑːvələs/
mass-produced 68 /mæsprə'ʤuːst/
match 71 /mæʧ/
maths (mathematics) 78, 100 /mæθs/

maybe 25 /'meɪbi/
mean (adj) 44 /mi:n/
mean (v) (intend/plan) 28 /mi:n/
mechanic 64 /mɪ'kænɪk/
medicine 79 /'medsən/
medium (meat) 59 /'mi:dɪəm/
medium-height 43
meetings 63 /'mi:tɪŋz/
melon 58 /'melən/
menu 59 /'menju:/
message 76 /'mesɪʤ/
metal 39 /'metəl/
Mexican 41 /'meksɪkən/
Mexico 41 /'meksɪkəʊ/
mice 40 /maɪs/
mid twenties/thirties etc. 47
middle age 47
middle name 46
middle of the road 82
million 91 /'mɪljən/
mind 28 /maɪnd/
mind the step / your head 96
mining 39 /'maɪnɪŋ/
minor (offence) 80 /'maɪnə/
minority 91 /maɪ'nɒrəti/
minus 38, 91 /'maɪnəs/
mirror 51 /'mɪrə/
miserable 44 /'mɪzrəbəl/
misread 7 /mɪs'ri:d/
miss a lesson 13 /mɪs/
miss a person 13
miss the bus 13, 52, 62
misunderstand 7 /mɪsʌndə'stænd/
mobile (phone) 76 /'məʊbaɪl/
modem 77 /'məʊdem/
monarchy 82 /'mɒnəki/
money belt 81 /'mʌni belt/
monitor 66, 77 /'mɒnɪtə/
monkey 40 /'mʌŋki/
monthly 74 /'mʌnθli/
moon 37 /mu:n/
more or less 97
moreover 34 /mɔ:r'əʊvə/
mortgage 49 /'mɔ:gɪʤ/
mosquito 40 /mɒs'ki:təʊ/
mother tongue 11 /'mʌðə/
mother-in-law 46
motor racing 70 /'məʊtə/
motorbike 62 /'məʊtəbaɪk/
motorway 61 /'məʊtəweɪ/
mountain 37 /'maʊntɪn/
mountain range 37
mouse (computer) ~ mat 77 /maʊs/
mouse (animal) 40 /maʊs/
moustache 43 /mə'stɑ:ʃ/
moving 72 /'mu:vɪŋ/
MP 100 /em pi:/
MPhil 79 /em fɪl/
Mr 100 /mɪstə/
Mrs 100 /mɪsɪz/
Ms. 100 /məz/
multiplication 91 /mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/
multiply 91 /'mʌltɪplaɪ/
murder (n, v) 10, 81 /'mɜ:də/
murderer 81 /'mɜ:dərə/
muscular 43 /'mʌskjələ/
mushroom 58 /'mʌʃrʊm/
music 73 /'mju:zɪk/
musical 9, 72 /'mju:zɪkəl/
musical instrument 69, 73
mussels 58 /'mʌsəlz/

narrow 92 /'nærəʊ/
natural (resources) 85 /'næʧərəl/
navy 64 /'neɪvi/
near 31 /nɪə/
nearly 32 /'nɪəli/
necessary 5 /'nesəsəri/
neck 42 /nek/
necklace 56 /'nekləs/
neither 35 /'naɪðə/
nephew 46 /'nefju:/
net 70 /net/
never 32 /'nevə/
never mind 18, 23
newsagent 57 /'nju:zeɪʤənt/
nice to meet you 26
niece 46 /ni:s/
night life 60, 88
nil 71, 91 /nɪl/
nine-to-five job 63
no exit/parking/smoking/ vacancies 96
nod 42 /nɒd/
noisy 49, 60 /'nɔɪzi/
north-east/west 12
north/south pole 37
notebook 6 /'nəʊtbʊk/
notes (money) 53 /nəʊts/
notice (n) 96 /'nəʊtɪs/
noticeboard 66 /'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d/
nought 91 /nɔ:t/
noun 4 /naʊn/
novel 73 /'nɒvəl/
novelist 73 /'nɒvəlɪst/
nurse 64 /nɜ:s/
nursery school 78 /'nɜ:səri/

occasionally 32 /ə'keɪʒənli/
ocean 37 /'əʊʃən/
odd 91 /ɒd/
of course 24
off-hand 18
offence 80 /ə'fens/
offer 28 /'ɒfə/
often 32 /'ɒfən/
oh 91 /əʊ/
OHT 6 /əʊ eɪʧ ti:/
oil 58 /ɔɪl/
old age 47
old friend 46
on (a day) 90
on (the table) 31
on business 15
on condition that 35
on foot 15
on holiday 15
on one's own 15, 48, 81
on purpose 15
on strike 15
on the ground/first floor 49
on the left/right 82
on the other hand 34
on the phone 15, 76
on the radio 15
on the sofa 50
on time 15
on TV 15
only child 46
OPEC 100 /'əʊ pek/
opera 73 /'ɒpərə/
operate (on) 64 /'ɒpəreɪt/
operator 76 /'ɒpəreɪtə/
opposite 4 /'ɒpəzɪt/

optimistic 44 /ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/
orange 58 /'ɒrɪndʒ/
orchestra 73 /'ɔ:kɪstrə/
order 29, 66, 87 /'ɔ:də/
ordinary-looking 43
otherwise 35 /'ʌðəwaɪz/
out loud 1
out of 31
out of order 52, 96
out of work 15, 65
outbreak 84 /'aʊtbreɪk/
oval 93 /'əʊvəl/
oven 50 /'ʌvən/
over 31 /'əʊvə/
overcharge 7 /əʊvə'ʧɑ:dʒ/
overcoat 56 /'əʊvəkəʊt/
overdo 7 /əʊvə'du:/
overhead locker 86
oversleep 7, 48 /əʊvə'sli:p/
overtake 61 /əʊvə'teɪk/
overtime 63 /'əʊvətaɪm/
overweight 43 /əʊvə'weɪt/
owing to 36 /'əʊɪŋ tu/
own 49 /əʊn/
ozone layer 85 /'əʊzəʊn leɪə/

pack (a suitcase) 7 /pæk/
package (v) 66 /'pækɪdʒ/
packed 30, 88 /pækt/
packet 94 /'pækɪt/
pain 54 /peɪn/
painful 9, 54, 55 /'peɪnfəl/
painless 9 /'peɪnləs/
painter 73 /'peɪntə/
painting 73 /'peɪntɪŋ/
pair (of) 94 /peə/
palace 88 /'pælɪs/
pale 43, 93 /peɪl/
pants (US) 98 /pænts/
paperwork 63, 66 /'peɪpəwɜ:k/
park (v) 61 /pɑ:k/
parking lot (US) 98
parking meter 11
part-time 12, 65
partly 25 /'pɑ:tli/
partner 46 /'pɑ:tnə/
pass a ball 70 /pɑ:s/
pass an exam 79
pass through customs 86
passenger 62 /'pæsənʤə/
passport 83 /'pɑ:spɔ:t/
passport control 86
past 31 /pɑ:st/
paste 77 /peɪst/
path 49 /pɑ:θ/
pattern 93 /'pætən/
pavement 61 /'peɪvmənt/
pay (for) 53 /peɪ/
pay back 67
pay by cheque/credit card 57
pay interest 67
pay rise 65
PC 100 /pi: si:/
peace 84 /pi:s/
peace and quiet 89
peace settlement 84
peace talks 84
peaceful 60 /'pi:sfəl/
peach 58 /pi:ʧ/
pear 58 /peə/
peas 58 /pi:z/
pedestrian 61 /pɪ'destriən/
pedestrian crossing 11, 61
penalty 71 /'penəlti/
pepper 59 /'pepə/
peppers 58 /'pepəz/
percentage 91 /pə'sentɪdʒ/
perform 72 /pə'fɔ:m/
performance 72 /pə'fɔ:məns/
perhaps 25 /pə'hæps/
permit 99 /'pɜ:mɪt/
personally 25 /'pɜ:sənəli/
persuade 29 /pə'sweɪd/
pessimistic 44 /pesɪ'mɪstɪk/
pet 40 /pet/
petrol station 61 /'petrəl/
PhD 79 /pi: eɪʧ di:/
philosophy 79 /fɪ'lɒsəfi/
phone 100 /fəʊn/
phone book/box/card/number 76
phone sb. back 76
photo 100 /'fəʊtəʊ/
photocopier 6 /'fəʊtəʊkɒpiə/
photocopy 6 /'fəʊtəʊkɒpi/
photography 69 /fə'tɒgrəfi/
phrasal verb 4
physical education 78 /'fɪzɪkəl/
pianist 73 /'pi:ənɪst/
piano 73 /pi'ænəʊ/
pick 39 /pɪk/
pick sth./sb. up (collect) 16, 99
pick sth. up (gather) 16
picnic 89 /'pɪknɪk/
piece 94 /pi:s/
pig 40 /pɪg/
pillow 51 /'pɪləʊ/
pilot 62, 64 /'paɪlət/
pinch (steal) 99 /pɪnʧ/
pineapple 58 /'paɪnæpəl/
pink 93 /pɪŋk/
piss 99 /pɪs/
pitch 70 /pɪʧ/
place 88 /pleɪs/
plain 43 /pleɪn/
plane 100 /pleɪn/
plant (n, v) 39 /plɑ:nt/
plaster 55 /'plɑ:stə/
platform 62 /'plætfɔ:m/
play (n) 72, 73
play a game 71 /pleɪ/
play a musical instrument 69
play cards 48, 69
player 70 /'pleɪə/
playroom 50 /'pleɪrʊm/
playwright 73 /'pleɪraɪt/
pleasant 44 /'plezənt/
please do not disturb 96
please do not feed the animals 96
please queue other side 96
plenty 60 /'plenti/
plug 6 /plʌg/
plug sth. in 6, 75
plumber 5, 64 /'plʌmə/
plural noun 4 /'plʊərəl/
plus 91 /plʌs/
PM 100 /pi: em/
pocket 56 /'pɒkɪt/
poem 73 /'pəʊɪm/
poet 73 /'pəʊɪt/
point (at sth.) 45 /pɔɪnt/
point (decimal) 91 /pɔɪnt/
police force 64 /pə'li:s/
police officer 64
policy 82 /'pɒləsi/
polish 51 /'pɒlɪʃ/
polite 3 /pə'laɪt/

political 9 /pə'lɪtɪkəl/
political leader/party 82
political stability 67
politics 78, 79, 82 /'pɒlətɪks/
pollution 60, 85 /pə'luːʃən/
pond 2 /pɒnd/
pool 70 /puːl/
pop music 73
pop star 11
popular press 74
pork 58 /pɔːk/
porter 87 /'pɔːtə/
portrait 73 /'pɔːtrɪt/
Portugal 41 /'pɔːʧəgəl/
Portuguese 41 /pɔːʧə'giːz/
post office 11
postgraduate 79 /pəʊst'grædʒuət/
potato 5, 58 /pə'teɪtəʊ/
pour (with rain) 38 /pɔː/
powerful 72 /'paʊəfəl/
precious 39 /'preʃəs/
prefer 5, 24, 28 /prɪ'fɜː/
prefix 4 /'priːfɪks/
pregnant 47 /'pregnənt/
preposition 4 /prepə'zɪʃən/
prescription 54 /prɪ'skrɪpʃən/
press (a button) 45, 95
prestige 68 /pres'tiːʒ/
prestigious 68 /pres'tɪʤəs/
pretty 32, 99 /'prɪti/
prevent 29, 61 /prɪ'vent/
prevent sth. (from) 81
pride 45 /praɪd/
price 68 /praɪs/
primary (school) 78 /'praɪməri/
Prime Minister 82
print 77 /prɪnt/
printer 77 /'prɪntə/
prison 80 /'prɪzən/
product 68 /'prɒdʌkt/
profession 64 /prə'feʃən/
profit 67 /'prɒfɪt/
promise 28 /'prɒmɪs/
promote 65 /prə'məʊt/
promotion 65, 68 /prə'məʊʃən/
pronoun 4 /'prəʊnaʊn/
properly 52 /'prɒpəli/
property 81 /'prɒpəti/
propose 29 /prə'pəʊz/
prospects 65 /'prɒspekts/
protect (oneself) 81, 89 /prə'tekt/
protection 85 /prə'tekʃən/
proud 45 /praʊd/
prove 80 /pruːv/
psychology 79 /saɪ'kɒləʤi/
public expenditure 67
public school 78
publish 74 /'pʌblɪʃ/
pull (n, v) 10 /pʊl/
pull sb.'s leg 18
pullover 56 /'pʊləʊvə/
punch sb. 45 /pʌnʧ/
punctual 8, 44, 62 /'pʌŋktʃuəl/
punctuality 8 /pʌnktʃu'æləti/
punishment 80, 81 /'pʌnɪʃmənt/
pupil 78 /'pjuːpəl/
purchase 99 /'pɜːʧəs/
purple 93 /'pɜːpəl/
purpose 36 /'pɜːpəs/
push (n, v) 10 /pʊʃ/
put on the brakes 10
put on weight 59
put on (clothes) 2, 17, 51, 56
put one's feet up 89
put sb. through (connect) 76
put sth. back (return) 50
put sth. out (extinguish) 16
pyjamas 27, 51 /pə'ʤɑːməz/
pyramid 93 /'pɪrəmɪd/

quality 68 /'kwɒləti/
quality press 74
quarter 91 /'kwɔːtə/
question (v) 80 /'kweʃʧən/
question mark 4
queue (n, v) 10, 62, 83 /kjuː/
quid 99 /kwɪd/
quit 65, 74 /kwɪt/
quite 32, 92 /kwaɪt/
quiz show 75 /kwɪz ʃəʊ/

rabbit 40 /'ræbɪt/
racket 70 /'rækɪt/
railway station 62 /'reɪlweɪ/
rain (n, v) 10 /reɪn/
rainforest 37 /'reɪnfɒrɪst/
rape 81 /reɪp/
rapist 81 /reɪpɪst/
rare (meat) 59 /reə/
rarely 32 /'reəli/
rather 24, 32 /'rɑːðə/
raw 59 /rɔː/
raw material 67
reasonable 53 /'riːzənəbəl/
recently 90 /'riːsəntli/
reception 87 /rɪ'sepʃən/
recession 67 /rɪ'seʃən/
reckon 99 /'rekən/
recommend 29 /rekə'mend/
recorded highlights 75
rectangle 93 /'rektæŋgəl/
recycle 85 /riː'saɪkəl/
redo (homework) 7 /riː'duː/
reduce 67, 81 /rɪ'djuːs/
referee 70 /refə'riː/
refuse 28 /'refjuːs/
registration (form) 83 /reʤɪ'streɪʃən/
regularly 32 /'regjələli/
relaxed 44 /rɪ'lækst/
release 84 /rɪ'liːs/
reliable 44, 68 /rɪ'laɪəbəl/
religious (education) 78 /rɪ'lɪʤəs/
remember 28 /rɪ'membə/
remind 86 /rɪ'maɪnd/
renew 83 /rɪ'njuː/
rent (v, n) 49, 86 /rent/
reopen 7 /riː'əʊpən/
repair 64 /rɪ'peə/
repeat 6 /rɪ'piːt/
reply (n, v) 10 /rɪ'plaɪ/
reporter 74 /rɪ'pɔːtə/
republic 82 /rɪ'pʌblɪk/
republican 82 /rɪ'pʌblɪkən/
require 99 /rɪ'kwaɪə/
research 79 /rɪ'sɜːʧ/
reserved 44 /rɪ'zɜːvd/
resign 65 /rɪ'zaɪn/
resignation 65 /rezɪg'neɪʃən/
resort 89 /rɪ'zɔːt/
resources 85 /rɪ'zɔːsɪz/

responsibilities 63 /rɪspɒnsɪ'bɪlɪtiːz/
responsible (for) 63, 65 /rɪ'spɒntsəbəl/
result (in) 36 /rɪ'zʌlt/
resume 99 /rɪ'zjuːm/
retailer 66 /'riːteɪlə/
retake (an exam) 7 /'riːteɪk/
retired 47 /rɪ'taɪəd/
retirement 47, 65 /rɪ'taɪəmənt/
reverse charge call 76
review 72, 74 /rɪ'vjuː/
revise 1 /rɪ'vaɪz/
revision 1 /rɪ'vɪʒən/
ride (a bike) 62 /raɪd/
right angle 93 /raɪt æŋgəl/
right-wing 82 /raɪtwɪŋ/
ring (boxing) 70 /rɪŋ/
ring (v, n) 10
rise (n, v) 67 /raɪz/
rise slowly/sharply 2
river 37 /'rɪvə/
roadworks 61 /'rəʊdwɜːks/
roast 59 /rəʊst/
rob 81 /rɒb/
robber 81 /'rɒbə/
robbery 81 /'rɒbəri/
rock climbing 69 /rɒk/
rock star 11 /rɒk/
rocks 89 /rɒks/
romance 47 /rəʊ'mæns/
root 39 /ruːt/
rough (sea) 89 /rʌf/
roughly 97 /'rʌfli/
round (adj) 93 /raʊnd/
round (preposition) 31
round trip (US) 98
routine 1, 63 /ruː'tiːn/
row (argument) 47, 74 /raʊ/
row (line) 72 /rəʊ/
rub sth. off (the board) 6 /rʌb/
rub sth. out 1, 6
rubber 6 /'rʌbə/
rugby 70 /'rʌgbi/
ruin 52 /'rʊɪn/
run (a shop/company) 13, 63
run (frequency) 62
run out (of sth.) 16, 52, 83, 84
runny nose 54 /'rʌni/
runway 86 /'rʌnweɪ/
rushed (to hospital) 55 /rʌʃt/
rush-hour 61 /rʌʃaʊə/
Russia 41 /'rʌʃə/
Russian 41 /'rʌʃən/

sack 65 /sæk/
sadness 45 /'sædnəs/
safe (n) 81 /seɪf/
sailor 64 /'seɪlə/
salad 58 /'sæləd/
salary 63 /'sælәri/
sales 68 /seɪlz/
sales figures/forecast/ manager/target 68
sales rep 68, 100
salmon 58 /'sæmən/
salt 59 /sɔːlt/
salty 59 /'sɔːlti/
same to you 26
sand 89 /sænd/
satellite 75 /'sætəlaɪt/
satellite dish 75
saucepan 50 /'sɔːspən/
Saudi Arabia 41 /saʊdi ə'reɪbɪə/
Saudi Arabian 41 /saʊdi ə'reɪbɪən/
save (data) 77 /seɪv/
save (up) 16, 53 /seɪv/
saxophone 69, 73 /'sæksəfəʊn/
saxophonist 73 /sæk'sɒfənɪst/
say (the paper / TV says that ...) 25 /seɪ/
say cheese 26
scales 27 /skeɪlz/
scar 43 /skɑː/
scarce 39 /skeəs/
scarf 56 /skɑːf/
science 78 /saɪəns/
science fiction 11, 72
scissors 27 /'sɪzəz/
score 71 /skɔː/
screen (computer) 77 /skriːn/
screen (cinema) 72 /skriːn/
sculptor 73 /'skʌlptə/
sculpture 73 /'skʌlptʃə/
sea 37 /siː/
seafood 58 /'siːfuːd/
seaside 89 /'siːsaɪd/
season 87 /'siːzən/
seat 3 /siːt/
seats (in parliament) 82
second (n) 90 /'sekənd/
second(ly) 33 /'sekəndli/
second-hand 12
secondary (school) 78 /'sekəndəri/
see 95 /siː/
see (understand / find out) 20
see you later/soon 26 /siː/
seem 28 /siːm/
seldom 32 /'seldəm/
self-confident 44
self-defence 81
self-portrait 73
self-study 1
semester (US) 98 /sɪ'mestə/
semi-circle 93
send off (a letter) 16 /send/
senses 95 /'sensɪz/
sensible 44 /'sentsɪbəl/
sensitive 44 /'sentsɪtɪv/
sentence (prison) 80 /'sentəns/
series 75 /'sɪəriːz/
serious (illness) 13 /'sɪərɪəs/
set 71 /set/
set the alarm 51
shade 93 /ʃeɪd/
shake 42 /ʃeɪk/
shake hands 42
shallow 92 /'ʃæləʊ/
shape 93 /ʃeɪp/
shark 40 /ʃɑːk/
sharp(ly) 67 /'ʃaːpli/
sheet (of paper) 94 /ʃiːt/
shelling 84 /'ʃelɪŋ/
shiftwork 63 /'ʃɪftwɜːk/
shirt 56 /ʃɜːt/
shoot 55 /ʃuːt/
shop assistant 57
shop window 57
shoplift 81 /'ʃɒplɪft/

shoplifter 81 /'ʃɒplɪftə/
shoplifting 81
shopping centre 57, 60
shopping list 57
short 43, 92 /ʃɔːt/
short story 73
short-cut 18
short-sleeved 12
shorts 27 /ʃɔːts/
shoulders 42 /'ʃəʊldəz/
shout (at sb. / to sb.) 14, 45 /ʃaʊt/
show 29 /ʃəʊ/
show sb. (a)round 66 /ʃəʊ/
shower (rain) 38 /ʃaʊə/
shower (wash) 51 /ʃaʊə/
showery 38 /'ʃaʊəri/
shrimps 58 /ʃrɪmps/
shy 44 /ʃaɪ/
sick pay 63
sidewalk (US) 98 /'saɪdwɔːk/
sight 95 /saɪt/
sightseeing 88 /'saɪtsiːɪŋ/
sightseeing tour 88
sign 83 /saɪn/
signature 83 /'sɪgnətʃə/
silence: exam in progress 96
silent(ly) 1 /'saɪlənt(li/
silver 39 /'sɪlvə/
similar (to) 8, 14, 35 /'sɪmɪlə/
similarity 8 /sɪmɪ'lærəti/
since 36 /sɪns/
since 90 /sɪns/
singer 73 /'sɪŋə/
single room 87
single-parent family 46
sink 50 /sɪŋk/
sister-in-law 11, 46
sit down 16 /sɪt/
sitting room 11
size 56 /saɪz/
skiing 70 /'skiːɪŋ/
skilled 64 /skɪld/
skinny 43 /'skɪni/
skirt 56 /skɜːt/
slang 99 /slæŋ/
slaughter 39 /'slɔːtə/
sleeves 56 /sliːvz/
slice 94 /slaɪs/
slightly 32 /'slaɪtli/
slim 43 /slɪm/
sling 55 /slɪŋ/
slopes 70 /sləʊps/
slow (boring) 72 /sləʊ/
slow(ly) 67
small talk 18
smell (n, v) 10, 95 /smel/
smells + adj; smells like + noun 95
smile (n, v) 2, 10, 42 /smaɪl/
smoke 85 /sməʊk/
snack 48 /snæk/
snail 40 /sneɪl/
snake 40 /sneɪk/
sneakers (US) 98 /'sniːkəz/
sneeze 54 /sniːz/
so (that) 36
soap 51 /səʊp/
soap opera 75
soccer (US) 70 /'sɒkə/
socialism 82 /'səʊʃəlɪzəm/
socialist 82 /'səʊʃəlɪst/
sociology 79 /səʊsi'ɒlədʒi/
socket 6 /'sɒkɪt/
sofa 50 /'səʊfə/
soft drink/voice 13
software 77 /'sɒftweə/
soil 39 /sɔɪl/
sold out 96
soldier 64 /'səʊldʒə/
solo artist 73
something wrong (with) 14
sometimes 32 /'sʌmtaɪmz/
songwriter 73 /'sɒŋraɪtə/
sore throat 54 /sɔːr θrəʊt/
sorry 26 /'sɒri/
sorry to keep you waiting 23
sort of 97
sort sth. out 17
sound (n, v) 95 /saʊnd/
sounds + adj; sounds like + noun 95
south-east/west 12
souvenir 88 /suːvən'ɪə/
Spain 41 /speɪn/
Spanish 41 /'spænɪʃ/
spare room 50
speak up 97
spectators 70 /spek'teɪtəz/
speed limit 61
spell (e.g. of hot weather) 38
spell 8
spelling 8 /'spelɪŋ/
spend (money) on 14, 53, 88
spicy 59 /'spaɪsi/
spider 40 /'spaɪdə/
spikes 70 /spaɪks/
spill 52 /spɪl/
split (up) 47 /splɪt/
spray 81, 85 /spreɪ/
spreadsheet 77 /'spredʃiːt/
square 93 /skweə/
squash 70 /skwɒʃ/
St. 100 /striːt/ /seɪnt/
stab 55 /stæb/
stability 67 /stə'bɪləti/
stadium 70 /'steɪdɪəm/
stage 72 /steɪdʒ/
stain 52 /steɪn/
stairs 27, 49 /steəz/
stalls 72 /stɔːlz/
stamp (v) 83 /stæmp/
stamps 69 /stæmps/
stand up 16 /stænd/
standard 66 /'stændəd/
standard of living 53
stare (n, v) 45 /steə/
star (film) 72 /stɑː/
star (in the sky) 37 /stɑː/
start a car 13 /stɑːt/
start a family 13
starter 59 /'stɑːtə/
starving 30 /'stɑːvɪŋ/
state system 78 /steɪt/
station (TV) 75 /'steɪʃən/
stationery 57 /'steɪʃənəri/
statue 88 /'stætʃuː/
status 68 /'steɪtəs/
stay (at school) 78 /steɪ/
stay in 17, 48 /steɪ/
steady/steadily 67 /'stedi/ /'stedɪli/
steal 81 /stiːl/
steel 39 /stiːl/
steep 89 /stiːp/
stepfather/mother 46
steps 49 /steps/
sterling 53 /'stɜːlɪŋ/
sticks 70 /stɪks/

still 34 /stɪl/
stocks and shares 64
stomach 54 /'stʌmək/
stomache-ache 54 /'stʌməkeɪk/
stool 50 /stu:l/
store 66 /stɔ:/
straight 43 /streɪt/
strawberry 58 /'strɔ:bəri/
stress 4 /stres/
stressful 60 /'stresfʊl/
striped 93 /straɪpt/
stroll (n, v) 45, 89 /strəʊl/
strong 44 /strɒŋ/
strong accent/coffee 13
strong economy 67
study (n) 50 /'stʌdi/
stuff 97 /stʌf/
stupid 8 /'stju:pɪd/
stupidity 8 /stju:'pɪdəti/
subject 78 /'sʌbʤɪkt/
subtitles 72 /'sʌbtaɪtəlz/
subtraction 91 /səb'trækʃən/
suburbs 60 /'sʌbɜ:bz/
subway (US) 98 /'sʌbweɪ/
suffer (from) 14 /'sʌfə/
suffix 4 /'sʌfɪks/
suggest 29 /sə'ʤest/
suggestion 24 /sə'ʤestʃən/
suit (v) 3 /su:t/ (n) 56
suitable 9 /'su:təbəl/
sunbathe 89 /'sʌnbeɪð/
sunblock 89 /'sʌnblɒk/
sunburn 89 /'sʌnbɜ:n/
sunglasses 11, 27 /'sʌnglɑ:sɪz/
sunny 38 /'sʌni/
suntan lotion 89 /'sʌntæn ləʊʃən/
supermarket 57 /'su:pəmɑ:kɪt/
supervisor 66 /'su:pəvaɪzə/
supplies 84 /sə'plaɪz/
surgeon 64 /'sɜ:ʤən/
surname 46 /'sɜ:neɪm/
surprised (at/by) 14, 30 /sə'praɪzd/
surprising 30 /sə'praɪzɪŋ/
swap (places) 6 /swɒp/
Sweden 41 /'swi:dən/
Swedish 41 /'swi:dɪʃ/
sweet 59 /swi:t/
swimming 70 /'swɪmɪŋ/ ~ costume 70
Swiss 41 /swɪs/
switch sth. on/off/over 75 /swɪʧ/
Switzerland 41 /'swɪtzələnd/
swollen 55 /'swəʊlən/
syllable 4 /'sɪləbəl/
symptom 54 /'sɪmptəm/
synonym 4 /'sɪnənɪm/

T-shirt 11
table tennis 11, 70 /'teɪbl/
tabloid 74 /'tæblɔɪd/
take 22, 90 /teɪk/
take a bus/train/taxi 19
take a decision 2, 19
take a photograph 2, 19
take a shower 2, 19
take an exam 19
take control (of) 84
take it in turns 18
take notes 79
take off (leave the ground) 16, 17, 86
take off (remove) 16, 56
take over 65
take photographs 88
take place 82
take the first/second turning on the left/right 61
take time 2
take up (a hobby) 69
take-off (n) 86 /'teɪkɒf/
talks 74 /tɔ:ks/
tall 43, 92 /tɔ:l/
tan 89 /tæn/
tartan 93 /'tɑ:tən/
taste (n, v) 10, 95 /teɪst/
tastes + adj; tastes like + noun 95
tasty 59 /'teɪsti/
tax cut 67
taxi (v) 86 /'tæksi/
taxi rank 62
team 70 /ti:m/
teenager 47 /'ti:neɪʤə/
telephone directory 76 /'telɪfəʊn dɪ'rektri/
tell 29 /tel/
tell a joke/story 13
tell the truth 13
telly 100 /'teli/
temperature 38 /'temprəʧə/
temple 88 /'tempəl/
ten-pound note 53
ten-year-old (boy) 12
tender 59 /'tendə/
tennis 70 /'tenɪs/
tense 44 /tens/
tent 89 /tent/
term 78 /tɜ:m/
terminal building 86 /'tɜ:mɪnəl bɪldɪŋ/
terrible (pain) 54 /'terəbəl/
terribly (sorry) 13 /'terɪbli/
terrific 30, 99 /tə'rɪfɪk/
terrified/terrifying 30 /'terɪfaɪd/ /'terɪfaɪɪŋ/
territory 84 /'terɪtəri/
terrorism 84 /'terərɪzəm/
terrorist 84 /'terərɪst/
text book 6
Thai 41 /taɪ/
Thailand 41 /'taɪlænd/
thank you (very much) 23
thanks 23 /θæŋks/
that's a good idea 24
that's to say (i.e.) 100
that's true 25
that's very kind of you 23
theft 81 /θeft/
therefore 36 /'ðeəfɔ:/
thick (stupid) 44, 99 /θɪk/
thick 92 /θɪk/
thief 81 /θi:f/
thin 43, 92 /θɪn/
thing(s) 97
third 91 /θɜ:d/
though 34 /ðəʊ/
thoughtful 9 /'θɔ:tfəl/
thoughtless 9 /'θɔ:tləs/
thousand 91 /'θaʊzənd/
three-quarters 91 /θri:'kwɔ:təz/
thriller 72 /'θrɪlə/
through 5, 31 /θru:/
throughout 90 /θru'aʊt/
throw 70 /θrəʊ/
throw away 85

throw sth. (at sb. / to sb.) 14
thumb 2, 42 /θʌm/
thunder and lightning 38 /ˈθʌndə ənd ˈlaɪtnɪŋ/
thunderstorm 38 /ˈθʌndəstɔːm/
thus 99 /ðʌs/
ticket office 11
tidy 51 /ˈtaɪdi/
tie 56 /taɪ/
tie-break 71 /ˈtaɪbreɪk/
tied-up 18 /ˈtaɪdʌp/
tiger 40 /ˈtaɪgə/
tights 56 /taɪts/
times 91 /taɪmz/
timetable 78 /ˈtaɪmteɪbəl/
tin 39, 94 /tɪn/
tin opener 11 /tɪn/
tiny 30, 49 /ˈtaɪni/
tip (n, v) 59, 87 /tɪp/
tired (of) 14, 30 /taɪəd/
tiring 30 /ˈtaɪərɪŋ/
to a certain/large extent 25
to begin with 33
to make matters worse 18
to start with 33
toddler 47 /ˈtɒdlə/
toe 42 /təʊ/
toilet 51 /ˈtɔɪlət/
tomato 58 /təˈmɑːtəʊ/
too (+ adj) 56
too (as well) 34
too (far) to (walk) 92
toothache 54 /ˈtuːθeɪk/
touch (v) 95 /tʌʧ/
tough 59, 81 /tʌf/
touristy 88 /ˈtʊərɪsti/
towards 31 /təwɔːdz/
towel 51 /taʊəl/
toys 57 /tɔɪz/
track 70 /træk/
tractor 60 /ˈtræktə/
traffic 60 /ˈtræfɪk/
traffic jam 11, 61
traffic lights 11, 61
traffic warden 11
trainee 65 /treɪˈniː/
training /ˈtreɪnɪŋ/ ~ course 65
training shoes 70
transitive/intransitive verb 4
translator 8 /træns'leɪtə/
trash (US) 98 /træʃ/
treat 64 /triːt/
trial 80 /traɪl/
triangle 93 /ˈtraɪæŋgəl/
trip (over) 52 /trɪp/
troops 84 /truːps/
tropical (rainforest) 85 /ˈtrɒpɪkəl/
truck (US) 98 /trʌk/
trunks 70 /trʌŋks/
try (sth.) on 56
tube /tjuːb/
tuition 79 /tjuˈɪʃən/
Turkey 41 /ˈtɜːki/
Turkish 41 /ˈtɜːkɪʃ/
turn left/right 61 /tɜːn/
turn sth. down 75
turn sth. off 75
turn sth. on 17, 50, 75
turn sth. up 6, 75
turnover 67 /ˈtɜːnəʊvə/
turquoise 93 /ˈtɜːkwɑːz/
twin room 87
twist one's ankle 55
two-hour (delay) 12

ugly 2, 43 /ˈʌgli/
UK 100 /juː keɪ/
ulcer 54 /ˈʌlsə/
umpire 70 /ˈʌmpaɪə/
UN 100 /juː en/
unbreakable 9 /ʌnˈbreɪkəbəl/
uncle 46 /ˈʌŋkɛl/
unconscious 55 /ʌnˈkɒnʃəs/
uncountable (noun) 4 /ʌnˈkaʊntəbəl/
under 31 /ˈʌndə/
under sb. (under their authority) 65
undergraduate 79 /ʌndəˈgrædʒuət/
underpass (US) 98 /ˈʌndəpɑːs/
undershirt (US) 98 /ˈʌndəʃɜːt/
undrinkable 9 /ʌnˈdrɪŋkəbəl/
unemployed 7, 65 /ʌnɪmˈplɔɪd/
unfriendly 44 /ʌnˈfrendli/
unhappy 7 /ʌnˈhæpi/
unkind 44 /ʌnˈkaɪnd/
unless 35 /ənˈles/
unlike 35 /ʌnˈlaɪk/
unlock 7 /ʌnˈlɒk/
unpack (a suitcase) 7 /ʌnˈpæk/
unpleasant 44 /ʌnˈplezənt/
unreliable 9, 44 /ʌnrɪˈlaɪəbəl/
unsuitable 9 /ʌnˈsuːtəbəl/
untidy 7, 51 /ʌnˈtaɪdi/
until 90 /ənˈtɪl/
up 31 /ʌp/
upright 86 /ˈʌpraɪt/
USA 100 /juː es eɪ/
useful 9 /ˈjuːsfəl/
useless 9 /ˈjuːsləs/
user-friendly 77
utility room 50

vacation (US) 98 /vəˈkeɪʃən/
vague 97 /veɪg/
vague idea/memory 97
valley 60 /ˈvæli/
valuables 81 /ˈvæljuəbəlz/
value 53 /ˈvælju:/
van 62 /væn/
various 89 /ˈveəriəs/
vase 50, 94 /vɑːz/
VAT 100 /viː eɪ tiː/
veal 58 /viːl/
vegetable 5, 58 /ˈveʤtəbəl/
vehicle 62 /ˈvɪəkəl/
verb 4 /vɜːb/
vest (US) 98 /vest/
vet 64, 100 /vet/
video (n, v) /ˈvɪdɪəʊ/
view 49 /vjuː/
villa 89 /ˈvɪlə/
village 60 /ˈvɪlɪʤ/
vinegar 58 /ˈvɪnɪgə/
violent 72 /ˈvaɪələnt/
violin 73 /vaɪəˈlɪn/
violinist 73 /vaɪəˈlɪnɪst/
virus 54 /ˈvaɪərəs/
visa 83 /ˈviːzə/
vitally (important) 13 /ˈvaɪtəli/
vocational 78 /vəʊˈkeɪʃənəl/
volcanic 37 /vɒlˈkænɪk/

volcano 37 /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/
volleyball 70 /'vɒlibɔːl/
vomit 54 /'vɒmɪt/
vote (for) 82 /vəʊt/

waist 42 /weɪst/
wait (for) 14 /weɪt/
waiting room 11
wake up 16, 17, 48
want 28, 29 /wɒnt/
war /wɔː/ ~ zone 84
war film 72
wardrobe 51 /'wɔːdrəʊb/
warehouse 66 /'weəhaʊs/
warn 29 /wɔːn/
warning 96 /'wɔːnɪŋ/
wash 48 /wɒʃ/
washable 9 /wɒʃəbəl/
washbasin 51 /'wɒʃbeɪsən/
washing machine 11, 50
washing-up 48
waste 53, 85 /weɪst/
wastepaper basket 66
watch 95 /wɒʧ/
watch out 26
water (v) 39 /'wɔːtə/
wave 45 /weɪv/
waves 89 /weɪvz/
wavy 43 /'weɪvi/
weak 8, 44 /wiːk/
weakness 8 /'wiːknəs/
weapon 55, 81 /'wepən/
weather 27 /'weðə/
weather forecast 74
weekly 74 /'wiːkli/
weigh 86 /weɪ/
well done 26 /wiːl/
well-directed/known/made/off/written 12
well-done (meat) 59
western 72 /'westən/
whale 40 /weɪl/
what about ...? 24
what do you do? 63
what do you think of ...? 25
what does he/she look like? 43
what does X mean? 6
what shall we do? 24
what size are you?
what size do you take? 92
what do you do for a living? 63
what's on? 75
what's the difference between X and Y? 6
what's the height/width of ...? 92
what's up? 18, 99
what's more 34
when 33 /wen/
whereas 34 /weə'ræz/
while 33 /'waɪl/
whisper (n, v) 45 /'hwɪspə/
who's calling? 76
why don't we ...? 24
wide 92 /waɪd/
wide range 60
widow 46 /'wɪdəʊ/
widower 46 /'wɪdəʊə/
width 92 /wɪtθ/
win 71 /wɪn/
wind 38 /wɪnd/
window shopping 57
windy 38 /'wɪndi/
wonderful 30 /'wʌndəfəl/
wood 60 /wʊd/
word processing 77
word processor 77
work (function) 87 /wɜːk/
work 63
work out (calculate) 91
work overtime 63
working hours 63
worry (about) 14 /'wʌri/
worth (+ -ing) 53, 88 /wɜːθ/
would you like to ...? 24
wound 55, 84 /wuːnd/
wrist 2, 42 /rɪst/
write (sth. down) 6 /raɪt/
writer 73 /'raɪtə/
writing paper 11
wrong 5, 14, 76 /rɒŋ/
wrong number 76

yacht 89 /jɒt/
yawn 42 /jɔːn/

zebra 40 /'zebrə/
zero 91 /'zɪərəʊ/
zoo 40 /zəʊ/

Acknowledgements

I owe a great debt to Gillian Lazar for the extremely meticulous and valuable comments she has made on every single unit in the book, and also for her continued support and encouragement. Others have reported on parts of the manuscript, and for their valuable and supportive feedback I would also like to thank: Phillip N. Hewitt, Mike McCarthy, Geraldine Mark, Karl E. Schuhmacher, Roy Sprenger, Liz Walter.

Much of the material has been piloted in different parts of the world. I would like to thank Mark Appleby (Barcelona, Spain), Helen Barnes (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Frank Carney (British Council, Pozan, Poland), Cliff Parry (British Council, Athens, Greece), Chris Powell (International House, Pisa, Italy), Sean Power (ELCRA Bell S.A., Geneva, Switzerland), Pat Rich (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Karen Williams (British Council, Barcelona, Spain). Sean Power and Mark Appleby have not only given me very useful feedback but also valuable suggestions for improving the material.

Geraldine Mark has not only commented on the material, she has also edited it, and with remarkable incisiveness, efficiency, and constant good humour. My thanks to her.

At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank Jeanne McCarten for the inspiration behind this project; Nóirín Burke for all her work in organising reports and piloting; and Isabella Wigan for her work in collating the final stages of the project.

On the production side, I would like to thank Randell Harris and Nick Newton for their design, Peter Byatt for his illustrations, and the rest of the team at Cambridge University Press.

Finally my thanks, as always, to Ruth Gairns for her support, advice and encouragement.